



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### **Usage guidelines**

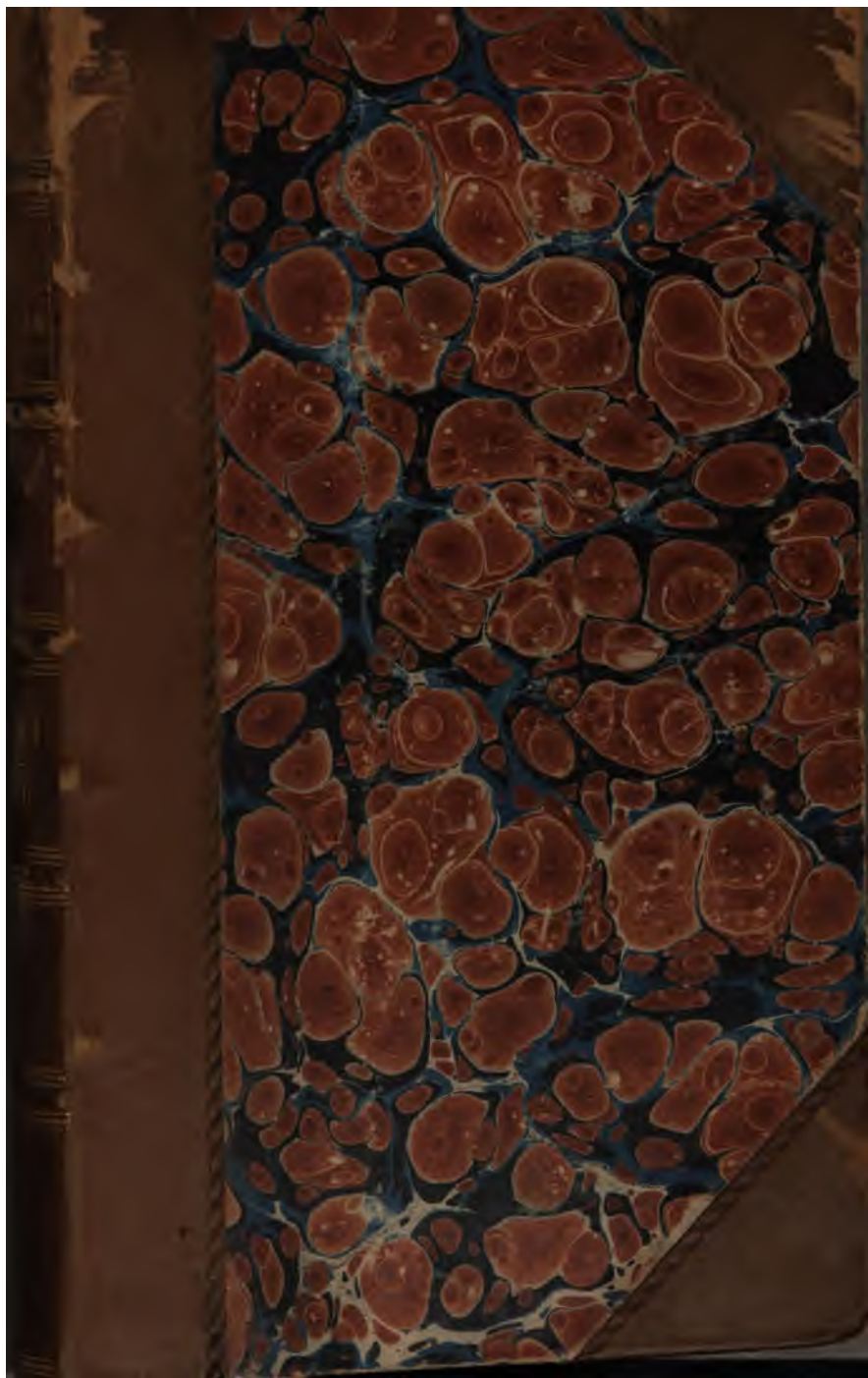
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### **About Google Book Search**

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



41.

280.

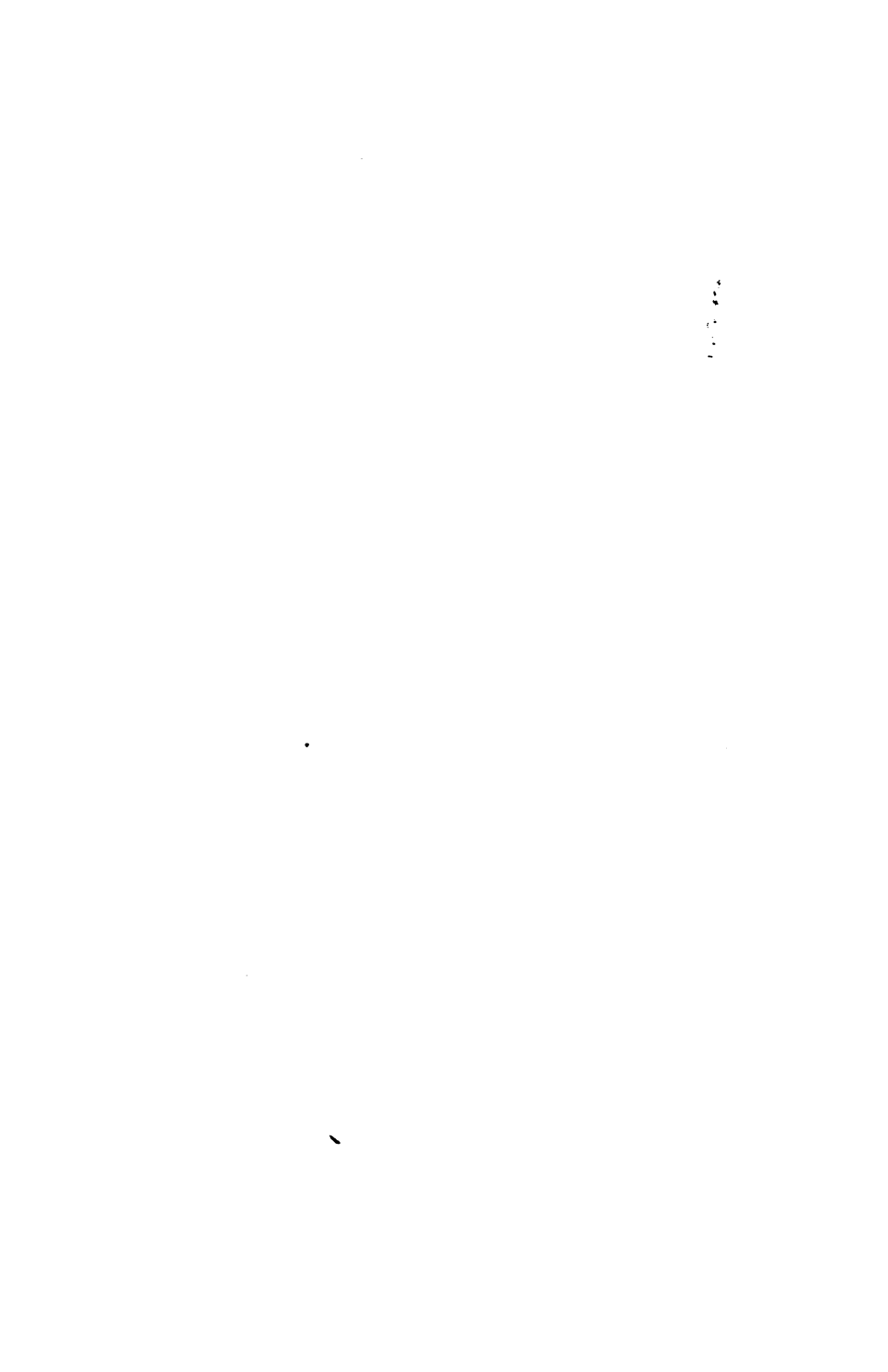


600034046N











LATINÆ GRAMMATICÆ  
RUDIMENTA;

OR

AN INTRODUCTION

TO

THE LATIN TONGUE;

FOR

THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

---

LONDINI:  
APUD JOANNEM MURRAY,

MDCCCXXI.

280.

# PRÉFACE



Le but de ce manuel est de servir de guide à ceux qui ont  
 l'honneur d'être admis dans les écoles de l'Université de  
 Liège, et de leur fournir les notions fondamentales de  
 la mécanique, de la physique, et de la chimie. Il est  
 rédigé dans une langue simple et claire, et se compose  
 de plusieurs parties, qui traitent successivement de  
 la statique, de la dynamique, de l'acoustique, de l'optique,  
 de l'électricité, et de la chimie. Les notions de  
 mécanique sont traitées avec plus de détail que les  
 autres, car c'est la base de toutes les sciences  
 physiques. Les notions de chimie sont aussi  
 traitées avec plus de détail que les autres, car c'est  
 la base de toutes les sciences chimiques.



Ce manuel est destiné à servir de guide à ceux qui  
 ont l'honneur d'être admis dans les écoles de  
 l'Université de Liège, et de leur fournir les notions  
 fondamentales de la mécanique, de la physique, et  
 de la chimie. Il est rédigé dans une langue simple  
 et claire, et se compose de plusieurs parties, qui  
 traitent successivement de la statique, de la  
 dynamique, de l'acoustique, de l'optique, de  
 l'électricité, et de la chimie. Les notions de  
 mécanique sont traitées avec plus de détail que  
 les autres, car c'est la base de toutes les sciences  
 physiques. Les notions de chimie sont aussi  
 traitées avec plus de détail que les autres, car  
 c'est la base de toutes les sciences chimiques.

Le but de ce manuel est de servir de guide à ceux qui  
 ont l'honneur d'être admis dans les écoles de  
 l'Université de Liège, et de leur fournir les notions  
 fondamentales de la mécanique, de la physique, et  
 de la chimie. Il est rédigé dans une langue simple  
 et claire, et se compose de plusieurs parties, qui  
 traitent successivement de la statique, de la  
 dynamique, de l'acoustique, de l'optique, de  
 l'électricité, et de la chimie. Les notions de  
 mécanique sont traitées avec plus de détail que  
 les autres, car c'est la base de toutes les sciences  
 physiques. Les notions de chimie sont aussi  
 traitées avec plus de détail que les autres, car  
 c'est la base de toutes les sciences chimiques.

## PRÆFATIO.

---

QUOD in re civili committendum negabat magnus ille Philosophiæ Instaurator, Franciscus Verulamiensis, ut vel novitati temerè studeretur, vel ita serviretur antiquitati ut nihil in eâ vel manci suppleretur vel emendaretur vitiosi; et quod ille probabat vehementer, ut nova antiquis sensim et prudenter attemperata in unum quasi corpus coalescerent; id de Grammaticâ quoque scientiâ verissimè prædicari, et de illâ præsertim, quâ puerorum imbuuntur ingenia, ut quisque est in eâ paulò exercitior, ita confitetur libentiùs.

Nam, quòd docendi quidem officio parum erit satisfactum, nisi optima tradantur præcepta, sic crebrâ præceptorum mutatione fatigari discentium animos, sanè est perniciosissimum.

Jam verò, ut ad hanc quæstionis partem mentes paulisper advertamus, Grammaticarum formularum vulgò apud nos a longo tempore receptarum, propriæ sunt commendationes quædam minimè contemnendæ. Primum, quis ingenio adeò est inhumano, ut librum a majoribus suis traditum, et a quo ii prima cultiorum litera-

rum hauserint elementa, non cum quodam sensu pietatis complectatur? Cui quidem cogitationi non leve accedit ab auctorum ipsorum nominibus patrocinium. Nam Græcam quidem Grammaticam illam, quæ in Angliæ scholis inveteravit, a GULIELMO CAMDENO, Regiæ Scholæ Westmonasteriensis Præposito, Viro antiquitatis peritissimo, adornatam fuisse; Latinam vero ab ingeniiis illis capitalibus, JOANNE COLETO, GULIELMO LILIO, DESIDERIO ERASMO, profuxisse accepimus. Quis tantorum Virorum memoriam obsolescere, quis eorum voces eruditas obmutescere non quereretur? Quis non summo cum studio eorum labores conservari, foveri, honore affici, fructuosiores reddi, lætaretur?

Equidem liberrimè fateor me indignari animo, quòd magnam novarum grammaticarum turbam in horum locum irruentem vïdeo, nullâ eorum habitâ ratione; non sine summo docentium et discentium incommodo, cum gravi temporis dispendio, et literarum optimarum injuriâ; et diem illum vehementer soleo desiderare, cùm Conventus Ecclesiasticus, ex universo regno Anglicano evocatus, rem suâ deliberatione non indignam esse censuerit, ut UNA SOLA GRAMMATICA, cùm Græca tum Latina, omnibus Angliæ Scholis ediscenda traderetur, et ejus concinnandæ munus Viro in humanis divinisque literis sæculi sui eruditissimo, JOANNI PEARSONO, Episcopo Cestriensi, demandaverit.

Quod consilium cùm temporum infortunio fuerit interruptum, symbolam hanc nostram quantulamcunque,



tanto operi feliciter inchoato, et aliquando, si volēt Deus, post longam jam duorum ferè sæculorum intercapedinem, retractando, liceat contulisse. Interim sciant velim lectores hujusce nostri laboris hanc esse rationem unicam, ut, quod hodiè ipsi auctores, Cœletus, Lilius, Erasmus, si in vivis essent, viderentur facturī, id nos pro virili efficerē enteremur; id nobis persuadentes, nos eorum mentes fidelissimè representaturos, si opus ipsorum, quantum per nos quidem fieri posset, et quantum ejus propositum ferret et flagitaret, quàm locupletissimum et emendatissimum exhiberemus.

*Kalendis Septembris,*

**MDCCCXLI.**

# INDEX

184	INDEX	184
185	INDEX	185
186	INDEX	186
187	INDEX	187
188	INDEX	188
189	INDEX	189
190	INDEX	190
191	INDEX	191
192	INDEX	192
193	INDEX	193
194	INDEX	194
195	INDEX	195
196	INDEX	196
197	INDEX	197
198	INDEX	198
199	INDEX	199
200	INDEX	200
201	INDEX	201
202	INDEX	202
203	INDEX	203
204	INDEX	204
205	INDEX	205
206	INDEX	206
207	INDEX	207
208	INDEX	208
209	INDEX	209
210	INDEX	210
211	INDEX	211
212	INDEX	212
213	INDEX	213
214	INDEX	214
215	INDEX	215
216	INDEX	216
217	INDEX	217
218	INDEX	218
219	INDEX	219
220	INDEX	220
221	INDEX	221
222	INDEX	222
223	INDEX	223
224	INDEX	224
225	INDEX	225
226	INDEX	226
227	INDEX	227
228	INDEX	228
229	INDEX	229
230	INDEX	230
231	INDEX	231
232	INDEX	232
233	INDEX	233
234	INDEX	234
235	INDEX	235
236	INDEX	236
237	INDEX	237
238	INDEX	238
239	INDEX	239
240	INDEX	240
241	INDEX	241
242	INDEX	242
243	INDEX	243
244	INDEX	244
245	INDEX	245
246	INDEX	246
247	INDEX	247
248	INDEX	248
249	INDEX	249
250	INDEX	250
251	INDEX	251
252	INDEX	252
253	INDEX	253
254	INDEX	254
255	INDEX	255
256	INDEX	256
257	INDEX	257
258	INDEX	258
259	INDEX	259
260	INDEX	260
261	INDEX	261
262	INDEX	262
263	INDEX	263
264	INDEX	264
265	INDEX	265
266	INDEX	266
267	INDEX	267
268	INDEX	268
269	INDEX	269
270	INDEX	270
271	INDEX	271
272	INDEX	272
273	INDEX	273
274	INDEX	274
275	INDEX	275
276	INDEX	276
277	INDEX	277
278	INDEX	278
279	INDEX	279
280	INDEX	280
281	INDEX	281
282	INDEX	282
283	INDEX	283
284	INDEX	284
285	INDEX	285
286	INDEX	286
287	INDEX	287
288	INDEX	288
289	INDEX	289
290	INDEX	290
291	INDEX	291
292	INDEX	292
293	INDEX	293
294	INDEX	294
295	INDEX	295
296	INDEX	296
297	INDEX	297
298	INDEX	298
299	INDEX	299
300	INDEX	300

# INDEX.

	Page		Page
TABLE OF EXAMPLES . . . . .	x	Demonstrative . . . . .	22
PRÆCATIO . . . . .	xi	Relative . . . . .	23
ORTHOGRAPHY.		Interrogative . . . . .	23
Letters and Syllables . . . . .	1	Prefixes and Affixes to Pronouns . . . . .	25
Parts of Speech . . . . .	2	VERBS . . . . .	26
NOUNS. . . . .	2	Voices . . . . .	26
Numbers . . . . .	3	Verbs Transitive and In- transitive . . . . .	26
Cases . . . . .	3	Impersonals . . . . .	27
Genders . . . . .	4	Moods . . . . .	27
NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE . . . . .	5	Tenses . . . . .	28
General Rules . . . . .	5	Absolute and Relative Tenses . . . . .	29
<i>First Declension</i> . . . . .	5	Numbers and Persons . . . . .	29
Greek Words of . . . . .	6	Gerunds and Supines (Cp. p. 61) . . . . .	29
Observations on the Cases of <i>First Declension</i> . . . . .	6	Participles . . . . .	30
<i>Second Declension</i> . . . . .	7	Verb <i>Esse</i> . . . . .	32
Observation on Cases of . . . . .	8	Observations on . . . . .	34
Greek Words of . . . . .	8	Verbs Regular in <i>Active</i> <i>Voice</i> . . . . .	35
General Rule . . . . .	9	First Conjugation . . . . .	35
<i>Third Declension</i> . . . . .	9	Formation of Tenses . . . . .	38
Observations on Cases of . . . . .	10	Second Conjugation . . . . .	39
Greek Words of . . . . .	12	Third Conjugation . . . . .	42
<i>Fourth Declension</i> . . . . .	12	Fourth Conjugation . . . . .	45
Observations on Cases of . . . . .	12	Observations on the Tenses in the <i>Active Voice</i> . . . . .	48
<i>Fifth Declension</i> . . . . .	13	Periphrastic Conjugation . . . . .	48
NOUNS ADJECTIVE . . . . .	14	<i>Passive Voice</i> . . . . .	49
Comparison of . . . . .	17	First Conjugation . . . . .	49
NUMERALS . . . . .	19.	Second Conjugation . . . . .	52
Temporal Numerals . . . . .	20	Third Conjugation . . . . .	54
PRONOUNS . . . . .	21	Fourth Conjugation . . . . .	57
Personal . . . . .	21		
Possessive . . . . .	22		

# INDEX

1	Introduction	1
2	Chapter I	2
3	Chapter II	3
4	Chapter III	4
5	Chapter IV	5
6	Chapter V	6
7	Chapter VI	7
8	Chapter VII	8
9	Chapter VIII	9
10	Chapter IX	10
11	Chapter X	11
12	Chapter XI	12
13	Chapter XII	13
14	Chapter XIII	14
15	Chapter XIV	15
16	Chapter XV	16
17	Chapter XVI	17
18	Chapter XVII	18
19	Chapter XVIII	19
20	Chapter XIX	20
21	Chapter XX	21
22	Chapter XXI	22
23	Chapter XXII	23
24	Chapter XXIII	24
25	Chapter XXIV	25
26	Chapter XXV	26
27	Chapter XXVI	27
28	Chapter XXVII	28
29	Chapter XXVIII	29
30	Chapter XXIX	30
31	Chapter XXX	31
32	Chapter XXXI	32
33	Chapter XXXII	33
34	Chapter XXXIII	34
35	Chapter XXXIV	35
36	Chapter XXXV	36
37	Chapter XXXVI	37
38	Chapter XXXVII	38
39	Chapter XXXVIII	39
40	Chapter XXXIX	40
41	Chapter XL	41
42	Chapter XLI	42
43	Chapter XLII	43
44	Chapter XLIII	44
45	Chapter XLIV	45
46	Chapter XLV	46
47	Chapter XLVI	47
48	Chapter XLVII	48
49	Chapter XLVIII	49
50	Chapter XLIX	50
51	Chapter L	51
52	Chapter LI	52
53	Chapter LII	53
54	Chapter LIII	54
55	Chapter LIV	55
56	Chapter LV	56
57	Chapter LVI	57
58	Chapter LVII	58
59	Chapter LVIII	59
60	Chapter LIX	60
61	Chapter LX	61
62	Chapter LXI	62
63	Chapter LXII	63
64	Chapter LXIII	64
65	Chapter LXIV	65
66	Chapter LXV	66
67	Chapter LXVI	67
68	Chapter LXVII	68
69	Chapter LXVIII	69
70	Chapter LXIX	70
71	Chapter LXX	71
72	Chapter LXXI	72
73	Chapter LXXII	73
74	Chapter LXXIII	74
75	Chapter LXXIV	75
76	Chapter LXXV	76
77	Chapter LXXVI	77
78	Chapter LXXVII	78
79	Chapter LXXVIII	79
80	Chapter LXXIX	80
81	Chapter LXXX	81
82	Chapter LXXXI	82
83	Chapter LXXXII	83
84	Chapter LXXXIII	84
85	Chapter LXXXIV	85
86	Chapter LXXXV	86
87	Chapter LXXXVI	87
88	Chapter LXXXVII	88
89	Chapter LXXXVIII	89
90	Chapter LXXXIX	90
91	Chapter LXXXX	91
92	Chapter LXXXXI	92
93	Chapter LXXXXII	93
94	Chapter LXXXXIII	94
95	Chapter LXXXXIV	95
96	Chapter LXXXXV	96
97	Chapter LXXXXVI	97
98	Chapter LXXXXVII	98
99	Chapter LXXXXVIII	99
100	Chapter LXXXXIX	100
101	Chapter LXXXXX	101

# INDEX.

	Page		Page
TABLE OF EXAMPLES . . . . .	x	Demonstrative . . . . .	22
PRÆCATIO . . . . .	xi	Relative . . . . .	23
ORTHOGRAPHY.		Interrogative . . . . .	23
Letters and Syllables . . . . .	1	Prefixes and Affixes to	
Parts of Speech . . . . .	2	Pronouns . . . . .	25
NOUNS. . . . .	2	VERBS . . . . .	26
Numbers . . . . .	3	Voices . . . . .	26
Cases . . . . .	3	Verbs Transitive and In-	
Genders . . . . .	4	transitive . . . . .	26
NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE . . . . .	5	Impersonals . . . . .	27
General Rules . . . . .	5	Moods . . . . .	27
<i>First Declension</i> . . . . .	5	Tenses . . . . .	28
Greek Words of . . . . .	6	Absolute and Relative	
Observations on the Cases		Tenses . . . . .	29
of <i>First Declension</i> . . . . .	6	Numbers and Persons . . . . .	29
<i>Second Declension</i> . . . . .	7	Gerunds and Supines (Cp.	
Observation on Cases of . . . . .	8	p. 61) . . . . .	29
Greek Words of . . . . .	8	Participles . . . . .	30
General Rule . . . . .	9	Verb <i>Esse</i> . . . . .	32
<i>Third Declension</i> . . . . .	9	Observations on . . . . .	34
Observations on Cases of . . . . .	10	Verbs Regular in <i>Active</i>	
Greek Words of . . . . .	12	<i>Voice</i> . . . . .	35
<i>Fourth Declension</i> . . . . .	12	First Conjugation . . . . .	35
Observations on Cases of . . . . .	12	Formation of Tenses . . . . .	38
<i>Fifth Declension</i> . . . . .	13	Second Conjugation . . . . .	39
NOUNS ADJECTIVE . . . . .	14	Third Conjugation . . . . .	42
Comparison of . . . . .	17	Fourth Conjugation . . . . .	45
NUMERALS . . . . .	19.	Observations on the Tenses	
Temporal Numerals . . . . .	20	in the Active <i>Voice</i> . . . . .	48
PRONOUNS . . . . .	21	Periphrastic Conjugation . . . . .	48
Personal . . . . .	21	<i>Passive Voice</i> . . . . .	49
Possessive . . . . .	22	First Conjugation . . . . .	49
		Second Conjugation . . . . .	52
		Third Conjugation . . . . .	54
		Fourth Conjugation . . . . .	57

	<i>Page</i>		<i>Page</i>
Observations on the Tenses in the Passive Voice . . . . .	60	Inceptives, Desideratives, Frequentatives . . . . .	89
Periphrastic Conjugation . . . . .	61	Diminutives . . . . .	89
Examples of . . . . .	61	Compounded Verbs . . . . .	89
Gerunds and Supines . . . . .	61	Forming of Adverbs . . . . .	90
Irregular Verbs . . . . .	62	Figures in Etymology . . . . .	90
Observations on . . . . .	66	THE THREE CONCORDS EX- PLAINED . . . . .	91
Defective Verbs . . . . .	67	PROPRIA QUÆ MARIBUS, or The Genders of Nouns . . . . .	95
Impersonal Verbs . . . . .	69	QUÆ GENUS, or Irregular Nouns . . . . .	100
ADVERBS . . . . .	69	AS IN PRÆSENTI, or the Per- fects and Supines of Verbs . . . . .	103
Adverbs of Place . . . . .	70	SYNTAXIS . . . . .	113
Adverbs of Time . . . . .	71	Concordantia Prima, Nom- inativus et Verbum . . . . .	113
Adverbs of Quantity . . . . .	72	Exceptiones . . . . .	115
Adverbs Interrogative, Af- firmative, Negative, and Examples of . . . . .	72	Concordantia Secunda, Sub- stantivum et Adjectivum . . . . .	116
Comparison of Adverbs . . . . .	74	Concordantia Tertia, Rela- tivum et Antecedens . . . . .	117
CONJUNCTIONS . . . . .	74	Nominum Constructio . . . . .	120
Examples of . . . . .	75	Genitivus post Nomen . . . . .	122
PREPOSITIONS . . . . .	76	Genitivus post Verbum . . . . .	123
Observations on . . . . .	77	Dativus post Nomen . . . . .	126
Peculiar Meanings of Pre- positions . . . . .	78	Dativus post Verbum . . . . .	127
INTERJECTIONS . . . . .	80	Accusativus post Nomen . . . . .	132
ETYMOLOGY . . . . .	81	Accusativus post Verbum . . . . .	132
Classing of Letters . . . . .	81	Ablativus post Nomen . . . . .	135
Interchange of Vowels . . . . .	81	Comparativa . . . . .	136
Interchange of Consonants . . . . .	82	Superlativa . . . . .	137
Assimilation . . . . .	82	Ablativus post Verbum . . . . .	138
Insertion of Letters . . . . .	83	Ablativus Absolutus . . . . .	140
Omission of Letters . . . . .	83	Pronominum Constructio . . . . .	141
Forming of Words . . . . .	83	Verba Passiva . . . . .	144
Substantives . . . . .	83	Verba Infinita . . . . .	145
Patronymics . . . . .	83	Gerundia . . . . .	147
Gentile Nouns . . . . .	84	Gerundiva . . . . .	148
Diminutives . . . . .	85	Supina . . . . .	148
Appellatives . . . . .	85	Peculiaris Usus Tempo- rum . . . . .	149
Abstractions . . . . .	86	Consecutio Temporum . . . . .	152
Change of Noun from Male to Female . . . . .	86	Oratio Obliqua . . . . .	153
Forming of Adjectives . . . . .	87	De Mensurâ et Tempore . . . . .	154
Forming of Verbs . . . . .	88		

INDEX.

	Page		Page
De Loco . . . . .	155	Pedes . . . . .	181
Verba Impersonalia . . . . .	156	Cæsurae in Hexametro . . . . .	181
Participiorum Constructio . . . . .	158	Pentametri Regulae . . . . .	182
Adverbiorum Constructio . . . . .	159	Alcaici Versus . . . . .	183
Conjunctionum Constructio . . . . .	161	Sapphici . . . . .	185
Qui cum Subiunctivo . . . . .	163	Alii Versus . . . . .	185
Præpositionum Constructio . . . . .	165	Metra . . . . .	185
Interjectionum Constructio . . . . .	166	Mixti Versus . . . . .	185
PROSODIA . . . . .	169	Asynarteti . . . . .	186
Definitiones . . . . .	169	Plautini et Terentiani Versus . . . . .	186
Priorum et Penultimarum Syllabarum Quantitas . . . . .	171	Accentus . . . . .	187
Ultimarum Syllabarum Quantitas . . . . .	175	Pedes finales in Soluta . . . . .	187
		Oratione . . . . .	187
		Differentia Vocum . . . . .	187

APPENDIX.

	Page		Page
Auctores Classici Latini . . . . .	189	Notatio Temporis . . . . .	191
Siglarium Romanum . . . . .	190	Signa Zodiaci et Tempestates . . . . .	191
Affinitas et Cognatio . . . . .	191	Kalendarium Romanum . . . . .	192
Sextertium, Sestertius, As . . . . .	191		

Accidence construed . . . . .	193
Propria quæ Maribus construed . . . . .	199
Quæ Genus construed . . . . .	206
As in Præsenti construed . . . . .	209

TRANSLATION AND EXERCISE-BOOK.

Syntaxis translated . . . . .	219
Prosodia translated . . . . .	251
Differentia Vocum translated . . . . .	265



## TABLE OF EXAMPLES.

### SUBSTANTIVES.

1st Declension . . . . .	<i>Musa.</i>
2nd ————— . . . . .	<i>Magister, Dominus, Regnum.</i>
3rd ————— . . . . .	<i>Nubes, Lapis, Opus, Parens.</i>
4th ————— . . . . .	<i>Gradus.</i>
5th ————— . . . . .	<i>Facies.</i>

### ADJECTIVES.

1st Declension . . . . .	<i>Bonus, Tener.</i>
2nd ————— . . . . .	<i>Tristis, Melior.</i>
3rd ————— . . . . .	<i>Felix.</i>

### VERBS.

1st Conjugation . . . . .	<i>Amo.</i>
2nd ————— . . . . .	<i>Moneo.</i>
3rd ————— . . . . .	<i>Rego.</i>
4th ————— . . . . .	<i>Audio.</i>

## PRECATIO,

(ANTIQUIS EDITIONIBUS ET RECENTIORUM PLURIMIS  
PRÆMISSA.)

DOMINE PATER, *cæli et terræ Effector, qui liberaliter tribuis sapientiam omnibus cum fiduciâ abs Te petentibus, exorna ingenii mei bonitatem, quam cum cæteris naturæ viribus mihi infudisti, lumine Gratiæ Tuæ, ut non modò quæ ad cognoscendum Te et Servatorem nostrum Dominum Jesum valeant, intelligam, sed etiam totâ mente et voluntate persequar, et indiès benignitate tuâ, tum doctrinâ tum pietate proficiam, ut Qui efficis omnia in omnibus, in me resplendere dona tua facias ad gloriam sempiternam immortalis Majestatis Tuæ. AMEN.*

## PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

---

N. B. 1. The English Translation of the Syntax and Prosody at the end of this Volume is intended to serve not only as a Translation and as an English Syntax and Prosody, but also as an EXERCISE BOOK; the Latin being read off, *visâ voce*, from the English.

2. The references in this book made by the sign § are to the sections in the GRÆCÆ GRAMMATICÆ RUDIMENTA: Londini, ed. 3, 1841.

---

## ADDENDA ET CORRIGENDA.

---

- Page* 4, l. 8 *from bottom*—For two articles, *read* hic and hæc.  
 — l. 2 *from bottom*—For one article, *read* hic or hæc.  
 11, l. 5—For *navis*, *read* ravis.  
 14, l. 3—For *pulcher -a -um*, *read* pulch-er -ra -rum.  
 79, l. 4 *from bottom*—For *proviso*, *read* improviso.  
 94, l. 3 *from bottom*—For *cytusus* *read* calamus.  
 116, l. 6 *from bottom*—Insert *et* between *Rex* and *Regina*.  
 134, l. 2 *from bottom*—For *qualitatem*, *read* quantitatem.  
 143, l. 3 *from bottom*—For *que*, *read* qui.

# L A T I N   G R A M M A R .

---

THE Latin Letters are twenty-four, and are thus written :

*Capitals.*—A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z.

*Small, or 'Common.*—a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v x y z.

*U* and *V* being written as *V* in Latin MSS., are considered as one Letter.

The Romans wrote in CAPITAL LETTERS (*litteræ unciales*). The smaller ones (*litteræ cursivæ*) were not in use before A. D. 500.

The letter *Q* is the Phœnician (κόππα). *F* is the Æolic Digamma, *F*. *W* is not a Latin letter ; it first appears in an inscription A. D. 500.

Of these letters, six are *Vowels*—*a, e, i, o, u, y*. The rest are *Consonants*.

A *vowel* makes a full sound of itself, as *e*.

A *consonant* cannot sound without a vowel, as *b(e)*.

*Consonants* are divided into *mutes, liquids, and double letters*.

The *liquids* are *l, m, n, r*.

The *double letters* are *j, x, z*.

*J* is made of *ii* ; *X* of *cs* or *gs* ; *Z* of *ds* or *es*. Words from the Greek never begin with *J*, but with *I*—as, *Iason* (from *Ἰάσων*), not *Jason*.

The remaining letters are *mutes*.

*K, Y, Z*, are found only in words originally Greek.

A *syllable* is a distinct sound of one or more letters pronounced in a breath.

A *diphthong* is the sound of two vowels in one syllable.

Of diphthongs there are *five* in number, *au, eu, ei, ae, oe*.

These *two last* are commonly pronounced as the vowel *e*, and are often joined, and written thus: *æ, œ*.

When *ae* and *oe* are two syllables, they are generally marked by two points (*puncta diæreseos*) thus: *æ̇r, Typhoëus*.

This mark – over a syllable shews that it is to be pronounced long: and this ˇ, that it is to be pronounced short, as *hūjūs*.

### THE PARTS OF SPEECH are Eight:

1. Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle, *declined*.
2. Adverb, Conjunction, Preposition, Interjection, *undeclined*.

## OF A NOUN.

A NOUN is the name (*nomen*) of whatsoever Thing, or Being, we see, or discourse of.

*Nouns* are of two kinds: *Substantives* and *Adjectives*.

A Noun *Substantive* declares its own meaning, and requires not another word to be joined with it, to show its signification: as *homo*, a man; *liber*, a book.

A Noun *Adjective* always requires to be joined to (*adjecti*) a Substantive, which stands under (*sub stat*) and supports it, and of which it shows the nature or quality; as *bonus homo*, a *good man*.

## NUMBERS OF NOUNS.

NOUNS in Latin have *two numbers*: the Singular and the Plural.

The *Singular* speaks but of one, as *pater*, a father.

The *Plural* speaks of more than one, as *patres*, fathers.

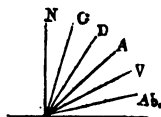
## CASES OF NOUNS.

NOUNS have *six Cases* (*casus* or *fallings*) in each number:

The Nominative, the Genitive, the Dative, the Accusative, the Vocative, and the Ablative.

To *decline* a noun, is to make it pass through these *cases* or *fallings*; and the shewing of them is called a *Declension*.

A Noun in the Nominative Case (*casus rectus*) was considered by ancient Grammarians as a line perpendicular; and in the other cases (*casus obliqui*) as gradually *declining* or *falling* from the perpendicular.



The *Nominative* (or *naming*) case comes before the verb, and answers the question *who?* or *what?* as, *who teaches?* *magister docet*, the master teaches.

The *Genitive* (or *getting*) case (from *gigno* to *beget*) is known by the sign *of*, and answers the question *whose?* or *whereof?* as, *whose learning?* *doctrina magistri*, the learning of the master, or, the master's learning.

The *Dative* (or *giving*) case (from *do* to *give*) is known by the signs *to* or *for*, and answers the question *to whom?* or *to* or *for what?* as, *to whom do I give the book?* *do librum magistro*, I give the book *to* the master.

The *Accusative* (or *aiming at*) case (from *accuso* to *accuse*) follows the verb, and answers the question *whom?* or *what?* as, *whom do you love?* *amo magistrum*, I love the master.

The *Vocative* (or *calling*) case (from *voco* to *call*) is known by calling or speaking to; as, *O magister*, O master.

The *Ablative* (or *taking away*) case (from *ab*, *from*, and *fero*, *latus*, to *take*) is known by prepositions, expressed or understood, serving to the ablative case; as, *de magistro*, of the master; *coram magistro*, before the master.

Also, the prepositions *in*, *with*, *from*, *by*, and the word *than* after the comparative degree, are signs of the ablative case.

---

### GENDERS.

GENDERS of nouns are three: the Masculine, the Feminine, and the Neuter.

The Pronoun *hic*, *hæc*, *hoc*, he, she, it, is used in Grammar to denote the Gender of Nouns, and is thus declined:

	<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>		
	Masc.	Fœm.	Neut.		Masc.	Fœm.	Neut.
Nominative	<i>Hic</i> ,	<i>hæc</i> ,	<i>hoc</i> ,	Nom.	<i>Hi</i> ,	<i>hæ</i> ,	<i>hæc</i> ,
Genitive	<i>Hujus</i> ,			Gen.	<i>Horum</i> ,	<i>harum</i> ,	<i>horum</i> ,
Dative	<i>Huic</i> ,			Dat.	<i>His</i> ,		
Accusative	<i>Hunc</i> ,	<i>hanc</i> ,	<i>hoc</i> ,	Acc.	<i>Hos</i> ,	<i>has</i> ,	<i>hæc</i> ,
Vocative	—			Voc.	—		
Ablative	<i>Hoc</i> ,	<i>hæc</i> ,	<i>hoc</i> .	Abl.	<i>His</i> .		

Nouns declined with two articles are called *Common*, that is, are of the Masculine and Feminine Gender: as, *hic* and *hæc parens*, a parent, father or mother.

Nouns are called *Doubtful*, when declined with either *hic* or *hæc*: as, *hic dama*, a deer; *hæc dama*, a doe.

Some nouns are also called *Epicæne*: that is, when under one article both sexes are signified; as, *hic passer*, a sparrow; *hæc aquila*, an eagle: both male and female.



## DECLENSION OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

THERE are FIVE Declensions of Substantives, which are distinguished by the ending of the Genitive Case.

GENERAL RULES (*Compare GREEK GRAMMAR, § 12.*)

*Obs. 1.* The Vocative and Nominative Singular are alike in all words except those in *us* of the Second Declension: as Nom. *Musa*, Voc. *Musa*; Nom. *Dominus*, Voc. *Domine*. In the Plural they are always alike.

*Obs. 2.* The Accusative Singular of Masculine and Feminine Nouns ends in *m* (Greek  $\nu$ ); and the Accusative Plural in *s* (Greek  $\varsigma$ ): as, Acc. Sing. *Musam*, *Dominum*, *Nubem*, &c.; and Acc. Plur. *Musas*, *Dominos*, *Nubes*, &c.

*Obs. 3.* The Genitive Plural always ends in *um* (Greek  $\omega\nu$ ).

*Obs. 4.* The Dative and Ablative Plural end in *s* (Greek  $\varsigma$ ).

*Obs. 5.* The Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural of all Neuters are alike, and end in the Plural in *ä*.

## FIRST DECLENSION

Makes the Genitive and Dative Cases Singular to end in *æ*; as,

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. <i>hæc</i>	Mus-ä, <i>a song,</i>	N. <i>hæ</i>	Mus-æ, <i>songs,</i>
G. <i>hujus</i>	Mus-æ, <i>of a song,</i>	G. <i>harum</i>	Mus-ärum, <i>of songs,</i>
D. <i>huic</i>	Mus-æ, <i>to a song,</i>	D. <i>his</i>	Mus-is, <i>to songs,</i>
A. <i>hanc</i>	Mus-am, <i>a song,</i>	A. <i>has</i>	Mus-äs, <i>songs,</i>
V. <i>o</i>	Mus-ä, <i>o song,</i>	V. <i>o</i>	Mus-æ, <i>o songs,</i>
A. <i>ab hæc</i>	Mus-ä, <i>from a song.</i>	A. <i>ab his</i>	Mus-is, <i>from songs.</i>

Cp.  $\mu\upsilon\sigma\alpha$ , § 16.

So are declined the Masculines in *a*, as *Poeta*, a Poet; Gen. *Poetæ*, &c.

*Obs. 1.* The Latin Poets use both Greek and Latin Forms of Words; the Prose Writers, for the most part, only Latin.

*Obs. 2.* To this Declension belong certain words from the GREEK, in *ē*, *ās*, and *ēs*.

Feminines in *e* (like *τιμή*, § 16) :

N. Musīcē,	A. Musicēn,
G. Musicēs,	V. Musicē,
D. Musicæ,	A. Musicē.

Masculines in *ās* (like *ταμία*, § 15), and *ēs* (like *κριτής*, § 15) :

N. Ænēas,	A. Ænean, or am,
G. Æneæ,	V. Ænea,
D. Æneæ,	A. Ænea.
N. Anchīses,	A. Anchisen, or am,
G. Anchisæ,	V. Anchise (ā or ē, rare),
D. Anchisæ,	A. Anchise (ā, less common).

In the Plural all these are declined like *Musa*.

#### OBSERVATIONS ON THE CASES OF FIRST DECLENSION.

*Obs. 1.* The Old Genitive Singular ended in *ās* and *ēs* (Greek, *-ας, -ης*), e. g. *Familia* (like *φιλία*, § 16) made in Genitive *Familias*. Hence *Paterfamilias*, a father of a family.

The *s* being thrown off, another genitive arose by the addition of *i*—*familai*; and this, by contraction, became *familiaē*.

*Obs. 2.* The Accusative of Greek words in *ā*, in Poetry, sometimes *ān*, as *Ossān*, *Cyllān*, *Electrān*.

*Obs. 3.* The Genitive Plural had two endings, *um* and *arum* (*μουσῶν, μουσάφων*). That in *um* remains in Patronymics, as *Dardanidum*, and *Arachnidum*, *amphorum* (with numerals); and in compounds of *colo* and *gigno*, as *cælicolum*, *terrigenum*.

*Obs. 4.* The Dative Plural had also two endings, *is* and *ābus* (*μουσαις, μουσάφεις*). That in *abus* remains in *Deabus*, *filiabus*, *equabus*, *mula-bus*; and in the adjectives *ambabus*, *duabus*: and a like one remains in all the other declensions, as *nudibus*, *gradibus*, *faciēbus*.

## THE SECOND DECLENSION

Makes the Genitive Case Singular to end in *i*; as,

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. <i>hic</i>	Magist-ēr, a master,	N. <i>hi</i>	Magistr-I, masters, [ters,
G. <i>hujus</i>	Magistr-I, of a master,	G. <i>horum</i>	Magistr-ōrum, of mas-
D. <i>huic</i>	Magistr-ō, to a master,	D. <i>his</i>	Magistr-is, to masters,
A. <i>hunc</i>	Magistr-um, a master,	A. <i>hos</i>	Magistr-ōs, masters,
V. <i>o</i>	Magist-ēr, o master,	V. <i>o</i>	Magistr-i, o masters,
A. <i>ab hoc</i>	Magistr-ō, by a master.	A. <i>ab his</i>	Magistr-is, by masters.

*Obs.* Certain Words in *ēr* make *ēri* in the Genitive Singular, and *ērō* in the Dative; and so throughout: as

Adulter dat adultēri  
*In genitivo singulari.*  
 Sic puer, vesper, gener, socer,  
 Asper, miser, tener, lacer;  
 Sic prosper, Liber (*wine and free*),  
 Sic presbyter, *compostaque*  
 Duobus verbis—gero, fero,  
 Ut armiger, dant ēri, ēro.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. <i>hic</i>	Domin-ūs, a lord,	N. <i>hi</i>	Domin-I, lords,
G. <i>hujus</i>	Domin-I, of a lord,	G. <i>horum</i>	Domin-ōrum, of lords,
D. <i>huic</i>	Domin-ō, to a lord,	D. <i>his</i>	Domin-is, to lords,
A. <i>hunc</i>	Domin-um, a lord,	A. <i>hos</i>	Domin-ōs, lords,
V. <i>o</i>	Domin-ē, o lord,	V. <i>o</i>	Domin-i, o lords,
A. <i>ab hoc</i>	Domin-ō, by a lord.	A. <i>ab his</i>	Domin-is, by lords.

Cp. λόγος, § 17.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. <i>hoc</i>	Regn-um, a kingdom,	N. <i>hæc</i>	Regn-ā, kingdoms,
G. <i>hujus</i>	Regn-i, of a kingdom,	G. <i>horum</i>	Regn-orum, of king-
D. <i>huic</i>	Regn-o, to a kingdom,		doms,
A. <i>hoc</i>	Regn-um, a kingdom,	D. <i>his</i>	Regn-is, to kingdoms,
V. <i>o</i>	Regn-um, o kingdom,	A. <i>hæc</i>	Regn-ā, kingdoms,
A. <i>ab hoc</i>	Regn-o from a king-	V. <i>o</i>	Regn-ā, o kingdoms,
	dom.	A. <i>ab his</i>	Regn-is, from kingdoms.

Cp. ξύλον, § 17.

OBSERVATIONS ON THE CASES OF THE SECOND  
DECLENSION.

*Obs. 1.* In the Genitive Case Singular, Proper Names of Men and other Substantives in *ius* and *ium* made *ī*, not *ii*, during the reign of the Roman Emperor Augustus: as *Virgilius*, Gen. *Virgilī*; *Ingenium*, Gen. *Ingēnī*; but Adjectives made *ii*, as *egregius*, *egregii*.

Scilicet egregii mortalem altique silentī—*Hor.*

The four-syllable forms in *ii*, *ingenii*, &c. were first used by the Poet Propertius.

*Obs. 2.* Also in the Vocative Case Singular Proper Names of Men in *ius* make *ī*: as *Virgilius*, Voc. *Virgili*: so, *filius*, Voc. *fili*; *genius*, Voc. *genī*; but not Adjectives, as *Cynthus*, Voc. *Cynthie*; nor Proper Names in *ius* (*i* long), as *Sperchius*, Voc. *Sperchie*.

*Obs. 3.* The Genitive Plural *um* for *orum*, as *Deūm* (Θεῶν) for *Deorum*, remains in certain words denoting trades, coins, weights, and measures: as *faber*, a workman; Gen. Plur. *fabrum*. So, *denarium*; *talentum*, *modium* (δηναρίων, τάλαντων, μοδίων); and, in Poetry, in Adjectives and names of People, as *Magnanimūm*, *Rutulūm*.

*Obs. 4.* DEUS in the Vocative Singular makes *Deus*.

## Plural.

N. Dī ( <i>seldom</i> Dēī),	A. Deos,
G. Deum, or Deorum,	V. Dī,
D. Dis ( <i>seldom</i> Deis),	A. Dis ( <i>seldom</i> Deis).

The two-syllable forms *Dēī*, *Dēis*, for *Dī*, *Dīs*, were first used by the poet Ovid.

Proper Names of Men are thus declined:

N. Publius Virgilius Maro,
G. Publi Virgilī Marōnis,
D. Publio Virgilio Maroni,

and so throughout.

To this Declension belong certain Words from the Greek in *ūs*, *ōs*, *eūs*, and *ōn*.

N. Delos,
G. Deli,
D. Delō,
A. Delon or um,
V. Delē,
A. Delō.
Cp. λόγος, § 16.

N. Andrōgēōs,
G. Androgeō or i
D. Androgeō,
A. Androgeōn, or ō, or ōna,
V. Androgeōs,
A. Androgeō.
Cp. λεώς, §. 19.

N. Orphēus,
G. Orphēos or ēī, or ī,
D. Orphēī, ēī, or ēō,

N. Orphēā or ēum,
V. Orpheu,
A. Orphēō.

Cp. βασιλεύς, § 27, where it differs from *Dominus*.

Cicero approves the Accusative *Peiræum* (in Prose), and condemns *Peiræa* (from Πειραιεύς).

Add to these—N. Panthous,		A. Panthum,
G. Panthī,		V. Panthu,
D. Panthō,		A. Panthō.

Cp. νόος, νοῦς, § 18.

Examples:—*Acc.* Ælinōn in sylvis—*Ov.* Troilōn—*Hor.*  
*Gen.* In foribus letum Andrōgēō—*Virg.*  
*Gen.* Terei mutaverat artus—*Virg.*  
*Gen.* Tectaque Penthēi—*Hor.*  
*Dat.* Orphēi Calliopēa—*Virg.*  
*Abl.* Threicio blandius Orphēō—*Hor.*  
*Voc.* Quo res summa loco, Panthū—*Virg.*

#### GENERAL RULE.

The Nominative and Accusative Plural in the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions are alike: as, Nom. and Acc. *Nubes*; Nom. and Acc. *Gradus*; Nom. and Acc. *Facies*.

### THE THIRD DECLENSION

Makes the Genitive Case Singular to end in *is*; as,

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. <i>hæc</i>	Nub-ēs, a cloud,	N. <i>hæ</i>	Nub-ēs, clouds,
G. <i>hujus</i>	Nub-is, of a cloud,	G. <i>harum</i>	Nub-ium, of clouds,
D. <i>huic</i>	Nub-i, to a cloud,	D. <i>his</i>	Nub-ibūs, to clouds,
A. <i>hanc</i>	Nub-em, a cloud,	A. <i>has</i>	Nub-ēs, clouds,
V. <i>o</i>	Nub-ēs, o cloud,	V. <i>o</i>	Nub-ēs, o clouds,
A. <i>ab hac</i>	Nub-ē, from a cloud.	A. <i>ab his</i>	Nub-ibūs, from clouds.

Cp. πόλις, § 26.

Many Nouns of this Declension *increase* in the Genitive Case; as in the following examples:

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. <i>hic</i>	Lap-is, a stone,	N. <i>hi</i>	Lap-idēs, stones,
G. <i>hujus</i>	Lap-idis, of a stone,	G. <i>horum</i>	Lap-idum, of stones,
D. <i>huic</i>	Lap-idi, to a stone,	D. <i>his</i>	Lap-idibūs, to stones,
A. <i>hunc</i>	Lap-idem, a stone,	A. <i>hos</i>	Lap-idēs, stones,
V. <i>o</i>	Lap-is, a stone,	V. <i>o</i>	Lap-idēs, o stones,
A. <i>ab hoc</i>	Lap-idē, with a stone.	A. <i>ab his</i>	Lap-idibūs, with stones.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. <i>hoc</i>	Op-ūs, <i>a work,</i>	N. <i>hæc</i>	Op-erā, <i>works,</i>
G. <i>hujus</i>	Op-ērīs, <i>of a work,</i>	G. <i>horum</i>	Op-erum, <i>of works,</i>
D. <i>huic</i>	Op-erī, <i>to a work,</i>	D. <i>his</i>	Op-erībūs, <i>to works,</i>
A. <i>hoc</i>	Op-ūs, <i>a work,</i>	A. <i>hæc</i>	Op-erā, <i>works,</i>
V. <i>o</i>	Op-ūs, <i>a work,</i>	V. <i>o</i>	Op-erā, <i>o works,</i>
A. <i>ab hoc</i>	Op-erē, <i>from a work.</i>	A. <i>ab his</i>	Op-erībūs, <i>from works.</i>
N. <i>hic</i> et <i>hæc</i> }	Paren-s, <i>a parent,</i>	N. <i>hi</i> et <i>hæc</i> }	Paren-tes, <i>parents,</i>
G. <i>hujus</i>	Paren-tis, <i>of a parent,</i>	G. <i>hor.</i>	Paren-tum, <i>of pa-</i>
D. <i>huic</i>	Paren-ti, <i>to a parent,</i>	et <i>har.</i> }	rents,
A. <i>hunc</i> et <i>hanc</i> }	Paren-tem, <i>a parent,</i>	D. <i>his</i>	Paren-tibus, <i>to parents</i>
V. <i>o</i>	Paren-s, <i>o parent,</i>	A. <i>hos</i> et <i>has</i> }	Paren-tes, <i>parents,</i>
A. <i>ab hoc</i> et <i>hac</i> }	Paren-te, <i>by a pa-</i> <i>rent.</i>	V. <i>o</i>	Paren-tes, <i>o parents,</i>
		A. <i>ab his</i>	Paren-tibus, <i>by parents.</i>

Cp. τῶν, σῶμα, § 20.

### OBSERVATIONS ON THE CASES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

#### On the GENITIVE SINGULAR of the Third Declension,

##### EXAMPLES.—MASCULINE and FEMININE.

O. <i>Homo</i> , G. <i>Homīnis</i> .	IS. <i>Avis</i> , G. <i>Avis</i> .
<i>Latro</i> , G. <i>Latrōnis</i> .	<i>Auris</i> , G. <i>Auris</i> .
<i>Macedo</i> , G. <i>Macedōnis</i> .	<i>Lapis</i> , G. <i>Lapidis</i> .
<i>Laco</i> , G. <i>Lacōnis</i> ,	US. <i>Virtus</i> , G. <i>Virtūtis</i> .
ER. <i>Patēr</i> , G. <i>Patris</i> .	S. <i>Pars</i> , G. <i>Partis</i> .
<i>Carcēr</i> , G. <i>Carcēris</i> .	<i>Trabs</i> , G. <i>Trabis</i> .
OR. <i>Labor</i> , G. <i>Labōris</i> .	X. <i>Pollex</i> , G. <i>Pollicis</i> .
<i>Arbor</i> , G. <i>Arbōris</i> .	<i>Cervix</i> , G. <i>Cervicis</i> .
AS. <i>Civitas</i> , G. <i>Civitātis</i> .	<i>Coturnix</i> , G. <i>Coturnicis</i> .
ES. <i>Miles</i> , G. <i>Militis</i> .	<i>Merx</i> , G. <i>Mercis</i> .
<i>Merces</i> , G. <i>Mercēdis</i> .	<i>Facx</i> , G. <i>Facis</i> .
<i>Nubes</i> , G. <i>Nubis</i> .	C. <i>Lac</i> , G. <i>Lactis</i> .

##### NEUTER.

E. <i>Retē</i> , G. <i>Retis</i> .	R. <i>Ebur</i> , G. <i>Ebōris</i> .
L. <i>Mēl</i> , G. <i>Mellis</i> .	S. <i>Opus</i> , G. <i>Opēris</i> .
<i>Animal</i> , G. <i>Animālis</i> .	<i>Littus</i> , G. <i>Littōris</i> .
N. <i>Carmen</i> , G. <i>Carminis</i> .	<i>Jūs</i> , G. <i>Jūris</i> .
R. <i>Calcar</i> , G. <i>Calcāris</i> .	

*Obs.* 1. The old Dative of the Third Declension, like the Ablative, ended both in *e* and *i*; e. g. *Triumviri ære flando. Morte datus*—Plautus.

*Obs. 2.* The old Accusative case of Masculine and Feminine Nouns of this Declension was in *im* (Greek *ιμ*), and it remains in the following words :

*IM habent in accusativo*

Vis, navis, pelvis, sitis, tussis,

Sinapis, cucumis, amussis,

Præsepis, cannabis, securis,

Charybdis, tigris, *atque* buris,

*Et omnes FLUVII in is,*

*Ut Albis, Tiberis, Thamesis.*

*Sed restis, puppis, turris, navis,*

*Et strigilis, sementis, clavis,*

*Adjunge febris et aqualis,*

*Hæc EM vel IM dant, utrum malis.*

*Obs. 3. In ablativo singulari*

*Malunt in I quàm E formari*

APPELLATIVA, Atheniensis;

*Et ADJECTIVA, quisque MENSIS*

*In is, Aprilis; —ober, —ember,*

*Ut hi, October et November;*

*Et quæ dant IM accusativo*

*Hæc dabunt I in ablativo.*

*Obs. 4. IUM plurali genitivo*

*Dant, dabant I quot ablativo;*

*Et s et x finita, ante*

*Eunte tantum consonante;*

*IUM plerumque monosyllaba*

*Dant, IUM ferè parisyllaba.*

*Sed quædam sunt excipienda*

*Memoriæque committenda.*

UM, vates, senex, pater, panis,

UM dant accipiter et canis;

UM, frater, mater, juvenis;

UM, ferè apis, volucris.



UM, crux, dux, nux, Thrax, fax, et grex,  
 Gryps, Phryx, vox, lynx, et rex, et lex,  
 Fur, ren, et splen, fraus, laus, et mos,  
 Crus, grus, et sus; præ, pes, et flos.

*Obs. 5.* Some words have both UM and IUM: as, *mensis, sedes, mus, palus.*

*Obs. 6.* The Accusative Plural of words which have *ium* in the Genitive Plural ends in *is*; but *is* is often written *es*.

*Obs. 7.* To the THIRD Declension belong certain Greek words in *ä*; as, *poemä*, Gen. -*ätis*, (like *σῶμα*, § 20); *ër*, as *aër*, Gen. -*ëris*; *äs*, as *lampäs*, Gen. -*ädis*, (like *λαμπάς*); *is*, as *poësis*, Gen. -*ëos*, (like *πόλις*, § 26); *ös*, as *herös*, Gen. -*öos*, (*ἥρως*, § 20); *ö*, as *echo*, Gen. -*üs*, (*ἠχώ*, Gen. -*όος*, -*ούς*); *ös*, as *Chaos*, Gen. *us*, (*χάος*, -*εος*, -*ους*), (like *τείχος*, § 25); *mëlos, cëtos, ëpös*, (like *τεῖχος*); *Plur. Tempe*, (like *τείχη*), and others.

*Obs. 8.* The Genitive Singular, in PROSE, of *Poesis* is *Poesis*.

The Accusative Singular of *Paris* is *Parim*, -*in*, -*ida*, and -*idem*; of *aër*, *æthër*, is *aërä*, *aërem*, *æthërä*, *æthërem*.

The Ablative Singular of *Chaos* is *Chao*—Virg.

The Dative and Ablative Plural of *Poema* is *Poemätis*.

*Achilles, Pericles, Ulysses, &c.*, make a Genitive Singular in *i*, and in *ï*: as *Pupille Pericli*—Pers. *Remiges Ulyssëi*—Hor.

## THE FOURTH DECLENSION

Makes the Genitive Case Singular to end in *üs*; as,

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. <i>hic</i>	Grad-üs, a step,	N. <i>hi</i>	Grad-üs, steps,
G. <i>hujus</i>	Grad-üs, of a step,	G. <i>horum</i>	Grad-uum, of steps,
D. <i>huic</i>	Grad-üi, to a step,	D. <i>his</i>	Grad-ibüs, to steps,
A. <i>hunc</i>	Grad-um, a step,	A. <i>hos</i>	Grad-üs, steps,
V. <i>o</i>	Grad-üs, o step,	V. <i>o</i>	Grad-üs, o steps,
A. <i>ab hoc</i>	Grad-ü, with a step.	A. <i>ab his</i>	Grad-ibüs, with steps.

*Obs. 1.* The Fourth Declension is a contracted form of the Third: thus, *gradus*, Gen. *gradüs*, *gradüs*; Abl. *gradüë*, *gradü*.

*Obs. 2.* The Dative Singular in the Poets ends sometimes in *ü*, (from *üt*): as, *Sicanio prætentä sinu*—Virg.; *Parce metu Cytherea*—Virg.: and the Genitive Plural in *um*: as, *Quæ gratia currum*—Virg.

*Obs.* 3. The Dative Plural of some words of the Fourth Declension ends in **UBUS**, as,

*In UBUS*—Quercus, ficus, acus,  
 (*Non IBUS*) arcus, verus, lacus,  
*In UBUS*—specus, tribus, artus,  
*Et ferè* portus, pecus, partus.

*Obs.* 4. The word **DOMUS** belongs to the Fourth and Second Declensions, but avoids certain endings (as, Singular, *dome*, *domu*; Plural, *domi*, *domis*) of both.

*Sperne* me, mu, mi, mis, *si declinare* domus vis.

---

### THE FIFTH DECLENSION

---

Makes the Genitive and Dative Cases singular to end in *ei*; as,

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. <i>hæc</i>	Faci-ēs, <i>a face,</i>	N. <i>hæ</i>	Faci-ēs, <i>faces,</i>
G. <i>huius</i>	Faci-ēi, <i>of a face,</i>	G. <i>harum</i>	Faci-ērū, <i>of faces,</i>
D. <i>huic</i>	Faci-ēi, <i>to a face,</i>	D. <i>his</i>	Faci-ēbus, <i>to faces,</i>
A. <i>hanc</i>	Faci-em, <i>a face,</i>	A. <i>has</i>	Faci-ēs, <i>faces,</i>
V. <i>o</i>	Faci-ēs, <i>o face,</i>	V. <i>o</i>	Faci-ēs, <i>o faces,</i>
A. <i>ab hac</i>	Faci-ē, <i>from a face.</i>	A. <i>ab his</i>	Faci-ēbus, <i>from faces.</i>

*Obs.* 1. The Fifth Declension is also a contracted form of the Third, thus: *Diēs*, Gen. *Diēs*, by apocope of *s*, *Diēi*.

The old Genitive remains in the word *Dies-Piter*.

*Obs.* 2. A shorter form of the Genitive was in *-e*; as, *die*. *Libra die somnique pares ubi fecerit horas*—Virg; *Constantia juvenem fide*—Hor. : and is found in the adverbs (properly genitive cases) *quoti-die*, *postri-die* (*posterī diei*), *meri-die* (*μέριου diei*) and others.

*Plebei* (in the words *Tribuni Plebei*) is the genitive from *Plebes*.

## DECLENSION OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

NOUNS ADJECTIVE of *Three Terminations*, as *bonus -a -um*, good; *tener -a -um*, tender; *pulcher -a -um*, fair; are declined in the *masculine* and *neuter genders*, like *nouns substantive* of the *second declension*; and in the *feminine gender*, like *nouns* of the *first declension*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Bon-us,	bon-a,	bon-um	N. Bon-i,	bon-æ,	bon-a,
G. Bon-i,	bon-æ,	bon-i,	G. Bon-orum,	bon-arum,	bon-
D. Bon-o,	bon-æ,	bon-o,	D. Bon-is,		[orum,
V. Bon-um,	bon-am,	bon-um,	A. Bon-os,	bon-as,	bon-a,
A. Bon-e,	bon-a,	bon-um,	V. Bon-i,	bon-æ,	bon-a,
A. Bon-o,	bon-a,	bon-o.	A. Bon-is.		

Cp. *καλός*, -η, -όν, § 30.

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Tener,	tener-a,	tener-um,	N. Tener-i,	tener-æ,	tener-a,
G. Tener-i,	tener-æ,	tener-i,	G. Tener-orum,	-arum, -orum,	
D. Tener-o,	tener-æ,	tener-o,	D. Tener-is,		
A. Tener-um,	-am,	-um,	A. Tener-os,	tener-as,	tener-a,
V. Tener,	tener-a,	tener-um,	V. Tener-i,	tener-æ,	tener-a,
A. Tener-o,	tener-a,	tener-o.	A. Tener-is.		

*Tener* is shortened from *Tenerus*.

Cp. *ἐχθρός*, -ά, -όν, § 30.

The Adjectives of *Three Terminations* in *er, is, ě*, are declined like *Nouns* of the *Third Declension*, as

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. ācer	ācris	ācre	N. acres	acres	acria
G. acris				<i>and so on.</i>	
D. acri					
A. acrem	acrem	acre			
V. acer	acris	acre			
A. acri.					

*Unus*, one; *solus*, alone; *totus*, the whole; *ullus*, any; *nullus*, none; *alter*, the other of two; *uter*, whether of the two; *neuter*, neither of two; and other adjectives, make the *Genitive Case Singular* in *ius*, and the *Dative* in *i*; as,

Unus, solus, totus, ullus,  
 Uter, alter, neuter, nullus,  
 Alius-que, in genitivo  
 lus dant; i in dativo.

Unus is thus declined:

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Un-us,	un-a,	un-um,	N. Un-i,	un-æ,	un-a,
G. Un-fus,			G. Un-orum,	-arum,	-orum,
D. Un-i,			D. Un-is,		
A. Un-um,	un-am,	un-um,	A. Un-os,	un-as,	un-a,
V. Un-e,	un-a,	un-um,	V. Un-i,	un-æ,	un-a,
A. Un-o,	un-a,	un-o.	A. Un-is.		

Unus has no plural number, unless it be joined to a noun that has no singular number; as *unæ literæ*, a letter; *una mœnia*, a wall.

In like manner is declined *alius*, another; which makes *aliud* in the neuter gender singular number.

NOUNS ADJECTIVE of *Two*, and those also of *One Termination*, are declined after the *third declension* of *Substantives*; as *tristis*, sad; *melior*, better; *felix*, happy.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. <i>hic</i>	} Trist-is, <i>hoc</i> trist-ě,	N. <i>hi</i>	} Trist-es, <i>hæc</i> trist-ia,
<i>et hæc</i>		<i>et hæc</i>	
G. <i>hujus</i>	Trist-is,	G. <i>hor.</i>	Trist-ium,
D. <i>huic</i>	Trist-i,	<i>har. hor.</i>	Trist-ibus,
A. <i>hunc</i>	} Trist-em, <i>hoc</i> trist-e,	D. <i>his</i>	} Trist-es, <i>hæc</i> trist-ia,
<i>et hanc</i>		<i>et has</i>	
V. <i>o</i>	Trist-is, <i>et</i> trist-e,	V. <i>o</i>	Trist-es, <i>et</i> trist-ia,
A. <i>ab hoc,</i>	} Trist-i.	A. <i>ab his</i>	Trist-ibus.
<i>hac, hoc</i>			
N. <i>hic</i>	} Meli-ör, <i>hoc</i> meli-üs,	N. <i>hi</i>	} Meli-ores, <i>hæc</i> meli-ora,
<i>et hæc</i>		<i>et hæc</i>	
G. <i>hujus</i>	Meli-öris,	G. <i>hor.</i>	Meli-orum,
D. <i>huic</i>	Meli-ori,	<i>har. hor.</i>	Meli-oribus,
A. <i>hunc</i>	} Meli-orem, <i>hoc</i> meli-us,	D. <i>his</i>	} Meli-ores, <i>hæc</i> meli-ora,
<i>et hanc</i>		<i>et has</i>	
V. <i>o</i>	Meli-or, <i>et</i> meli-us,	V. <i>o</i>	Meli-ores, <i>et</i> meli-oribus,
A. <i>ab hoc,</i>	} Meli-ore, <i>vel</i> meli-ori.	A. <i>ab his</i>	[ora,
<i>hac, hoc</i>			

N. <i>hic,</i> <i>hæc, hoc</i> } Fel-ix,	N. <i>hi</i> } Fel-ices, <i>hæc</i> fel-
G. <i>hujus</i> } Fel-icis,	<i>et hæ</i> } icia,
D. <i>huic</i> } Fel-ici,	G. <i>hor.</i> } Fel-icium,
A. <i>hunc</i> <i>et hanc</i> } Fel-icem, <i>hoc</i> fel-ix	<i>har. hor.</i> } Fel-icibus,
V. <i>o</i> } Fel-ix,	D. <i>his</i> } Fel-ices, <i>hæc</i> fel-
A. <i>ab hoc,</i> <i>hac, hoc</i> } Fel-icē, <i>vel</i> fel-ici.	A. <i>hos</i> } Fel-ices, <i>hæc</i> fel-
	<i>et has</i> } icia,
	V. <i>o</i> } Fel-ices, <i>et</i> fel-icia,
	A. <i>ab his</i> } Fel-icibus.

Cp. πέντε, § 32.

The Ablative Singular of Adjectives of two or one terminations generally ends in *i*, as *tristis, tristi*.

Except, *In ablativo singulari*

*Malunt in ε quàm i formari*

*Hæc, pauper, puber, hospes, compos,*

*Superstes, senex, sospes, impos,*

*Compostaque cum corpus, pes,*

*Bicorpor, bipes, multipes.*

#### Other Exceptions:

Words of one termination, as *felix*, have both *ε* and *i*, but *i* is more usual; and comparatives, as *melior*, but *ε* is more usual; though, in poetry, *felice* and *meliori* are common.

Participles, not used *adjectively* (or as mere epithets, but denoting a *fact* or *circumstance*), from nominatives in *ans* and *ens*, as, *Imperantis Augusto*, not *imperanti*. Horace never forms this Participle in *ti*.

*Obs. Complures* makes both *Complura* and *Compluria*, in the Nom. Neut. Plur.

*Ambo*, both; and *duo*, two, are Nouns Adjective; and are thus declined in the plural number only:

Nom.	Amb-o,	amb-æ,	amb-o,	<i>both,</i>
Gen.	Amb-orum,	amb-arum,	amb-orum,	<i>of both,</i>
Dat.	Amb-obus,	amb-abus,	amb-obus,	<i>to both,</i>
Acc.	Ambo <i>and</i> -os,	amb-as,	amb-o,	<i>both,</i>
Voc.	Amb-o,	amb-æ,	amb-o,	<i>both,</i>
Abl.	Amb-obus,	amb-abus,	amb-obus,	<i>with both.</i>

Cp. ἄμφω, and δύο, δύο, § 36.

*Tres three*, is declined like *Tristes*; as, *Tres, neut. tria*;  
Gen. trium; Dat. tribus.

Cp. τρεῖς, § 36.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

ADJECTIVES have *Three* Degrees of Comparison:

I. The *Positive*; which denotes the quantity of a thing absolutely, without any reference to *more* or *less*, as *doctus*, learned; *brevis*, short.

II. The *Comparative*; which increases or lessens the quantity, as *doctior*, more learned; *brevior*, shorter or more short.

It is formed of the first case of the positive that endeth in *i*, by adding thereto *or* in the masculine and feminine genders, and *us* in the neuter; as, of

*Doctus*, Gen. *docti*, is formed *hic et hæc doctior, hoc doctius*, more learned; of *Brevis*, Dat. *brevi*, is formed *hic et hæc brevior, hoc brevius*, shorter, or more short.

III. The *Superlative*; which increases or diminishes the signification, or comparison, to the greatest degree; as *doctissimus*, most learned; *brevissimus*, the shortest or most short.

It is formed also of the first case of the positive that endeth in *i*, by adding thereto *ssimus*; as, of

Gen. *docti*, is formed *doctissimus*, most learned;

Dat. *brevi*, is formed *brevissimus*, shortest, or most short.

*Obs. 1.* The Comparative often signifies *excess*, or *too much*; as *jaçantior Ancus*—Virg.; or *rather*, as *sum paullò infirmior*—Hor.

*Obs. 2.* The Superlative often signifies *very much*; as *purissima mella*—Virg.; *Justissima tellus*—Virg.; *Optimus Virgilius*—Hor.

MANY Adjectives vary from these general rules, and form their comparison irregularly; as,

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
<i>Bonus</i> , good;	<i>melior</i> , better;	<i>optimus</i> , best.
<i>Malus</i> , bad;	<i>pejor</i> , worse;	<i>pessimus</i> , worst.
<i>Magnus</i> , great;	<i>major</i> , greater;	<i>maximus</i> , greatest.
<i>Parvus</i> , little;	<i>minor</i> , less;	<i>minimus</i> , least.

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
<i>Multus</i> , much;	<i>plus</i> , more;	<i>plurimus</i> , most.
<i>Dives</i> , rich;	<i>ditior</i> , more rich;	<i>ditissimus</i> , most rich.
<i>Nequam</i> , wicked;	<i>nequior</i> , more wicked;	<i>nequissimus</i> , most wicked.
<i>Externus</i> , outward;	<i>exterior</i> , more outward;	<i>extremus</i> vel <i>eximus</i> , most outward.
<i>Inferus</i> , low;	<i>inferior</i> , lower;	<i>infimus</i> vel <i>imus</i> , lowest.
<i>Posterus</i> , behind;	<i>posterior</i> , more behind;	<i>postremus</i> , <i>postumus</i> , most [behind.
<i>Superus</i> , high;	<i>superior</i> , higher;	<i>supremus</i> vel <i>summus</i> , highest.
	<i>interior</i> , more inward;	<i>intimus</i> , most inward.
<i>Juvenis</i> , young;	<i>junior</i> , younger, or more young.	
<i>Senex</i> , old;	<i>senior</i> , older, or more old.	
	<i>Prior</i> , former;	<i>primus</i> , first.
	<i>Propior</i> , nearer;	<i>proximus</i> , nearest.
	<i>Citerior</i> , hither;	<i>citimus</i> , most hither.
	<i>Ultior</i> , further;	<i>ultimus</i> , last.

With some others.

Adjectives ending in *er* form their Superlative Degree from the Nominative Case, by adding *rimus*; as of *pulcher*, fair, *pulcher-rimus*, fairest, or most fair.

Adjectives ending in *lis* form their Superlative Degree according to the general rule; as of *utilis*, useful, Dat. *utili*, is formed *utilissimus*, most useful.

Except the following, which change *is* into *limus*; as

<i>Agil-is</i> ,	nimble;	<i>agil-limus</i> ,	nimblest or most nimble.
<i>Facil-is</i> ,	easy;	<i>facil-limus</i> ,	easiest.
<i>Gracil-is</i> ,	slender;	<i>gracil-limus</i> ,	slenderest.
<i>Humil-is</i> ,	low;	<i>humil-limus</i> ,	lowest.
<i>Simil-is</i> ,	like;	<i>simil-limus</i> ,	likest.

Adjectives in *-dicus*, *-ficus*, *-völus*, make *-entior* and *-entissimus*; as

<i>male-dicus</i> ,	<i>-dicentior</i> ,	<i>-dicentissimus</i> .
<i>bene-ficus</i> ,	<i>-ficientior</i> ,	<i>-ficientissimus</i> .
<i>bene-völus</i> ,	<i>-volentior</i> ,	<i>-volentissimus</i> .

If a *vowel* comes before *us* in the Nominative Case of an Adjective, the comparison is made by *magis*, more; *maximē*, most; as, *pius*, godly; *magis pius*, more godly; *maxime pius*, most godly.

For Comparison of ADVERBS, see under ADVERBS.

## NUMERALS.

CARDINALS Answer the question, <i>Quot? How many?</i>	ORDINALS Answer the question, <i>Quotus? In what order?</i>	NUMERAL ADVERBS Answer the question, <i>Quoties? How often?</i>
1. Unus	primus	semel
2. Duo	secundus	bis
3. Tres	tertius	ter
4. Quatuor	quartus	quater
5. Quinque	quintus	quinquies
6. Sex	sextus	sexies
7. Septem	septimus	septies
8. Octo	octavus	octies
9. Novem	nonus	novies
10. Decem	decimus	decies
11. Un-décim	undecimus	undecies
12. Duo-decim	duodecimus	duodecies
13. Tre-decim	tertiusdecimus	tredecies
14. Quatuor-decim	quartusdecimus	quaterdecies
15. Quin-decim	quintusdecimus	quindecies
16. Se-decim	sextusdecimus	sedecies
17. Septem-decim	septimusdecimus	septedecies
18. Duo-de-viginti	duodevicesimus	duodevicies
19. Un-de-viginti	undevicesimus	undevicies
20. Viginti	vicesimus	vicies
21. Viginti unus, &c.	vicesimus primus	semel et vicies
28. Duo-de-triginta	duodetricesimus	duodetrices
29. Un-de-triginta	undetricesimus	undetrices
30. Triginta	tricesimus	trices
40. Quadraginta	quadragesimus	quadragies
50. Quinquaginta	quingagesimus	quinquagies
60. Sexaginta	sexagesimus	sexagies
70. Septuaginta	septuagesimus	septuagies
80. Octoginta	octogesimus	octogies
90. Nonaginta	nonagesimus	nonagies
99. Un-de-centum	undecentesimus	undecenties
100. Centum	centesimus	centies
200. Ducenti -æ -a	ducentesimus	ducenties
300. Trecenti, &c.	trecentesimus	trecenties
400. Quadringenti	quadringsesimus	quadringsies
500. Quingenti	quingentesimus	quingenties
600. Sexcenti	sexcentesimus	sexcenties
700. Septingenti	septingentesimus	septingenties
800. Octingenti	octingentesimus	octingenties
900. Nongenti	nongentesimus	nongenties
1000. Mille	millesimus	millies
2000. Duo millia	bis millesimus	bis millies.



DISTRIBUTIVES Answer the Question, <i>Quoteni? How many to each?</i>	MULTIPLICATIVES Answer the Question, <i>Quotuplex? How many fold?</i>	PROPORTIONALS Answer the Question, <i>Quotuplus? How many times as great?</i>
1. Singuli	simplex	simplus
2. Bini	duplex	duplus
3. Terni	triplex	triplus
4. Quaterni	quadruplex	quadruplus
5. Quini	quincuplex	quintuplus
6. Seni	sescuplex	sescuplus
7. Septeni	septemplex	septuplus
8. Octoni	octuplex	octuplus
9. Noni	novemplex	novuplus
10. Deni	decemplex	decuplus
11. Un-deni	undecemplex	undecuplus
12. Duo-deni	duodecplex	duodecuplus
13. Terni-deni	&c.	&c.
20. Viceni	&c.	&c.
100. Centeni	centuplex	centuplus
1000. Milleni	&c.	&c.
2000. Bis milleni	&c.	&c.

The first *three* Cardinals have been declined above.

From Four to One Hundred they are undeclinable.—*Cp.* § 36.

All Ordinals are declined like *bonus*.—*Cp.* § 36.

*Obs.* 1. The Poets use the *Distributives* for *Ordinals*; as, *Per duodena regit cæli Sol aureus astra*—*Virg.*; especially with substantives which have no singular; as *binæ litteræ*, for *duæ*.

*Obs.* 2. In the Numerals up to *twenty*, the smaller number precedes, unless *et* is used: as, *septem decem*, *tertius decimus*, *decem et septem*, *decimus et tertius*: after *twenty*, the reverse of this is the case; as, *septem et triginta*, or *triginta septem*.

In Numerals above 100, the greater number precedes, with or without *et*.

*Obs.* 3. The Numerals up to 900,000 are formed by addition; after it, by multiplication: thus,

For 1,000,000, say *decies centena millia*; or, simply, *decies*.

*Obs.* 4. ALSO *mille* used as an adjective is undeclinable: as, *Mille mæx Siculis errant in montibus agnæ*; as a neuter *substantive*, it is declined, and takes a genitive after it: *Ille armatorum multis cum millibus ibat*.

#### TEMPORAL NUMERALS.

YEAR, of this year, *hormus*, *hornoftnus*.

YEAR.	MONTH.
1 Anniculus	
2 Bimus	bimestris
3 Trimus	trimestris
4 Quadrimus	
6	semestris.

*Obs.* 5. *Biennis*, *triennis*, &c. are not to be used.

## OF A PRONOUN.

A PRONOUN is used instead of a Noun (*pro nomine*), and is declined with number, case, and gender.

<i>Ego</i> , I ;	<i>iste</i> , that of yours ;	<i>noster</i> , ours.
<i>tu</i> , thou or you ;	<i>hic</i> , this ;	<i>vester</i> , yours.
<i>ille</i> , he ;	<i>cujus</i> , whose ?	<i>cujas</i> , of what country ?
<i>is</i> , he ;	<i>meus</i> , mine ;	<i>nostras</i> , of our country.
<i>sui</i> , of himself ;	<i>tuus</i> , thine ;	<i>vestras</i> , of your country.
<i>ipse</i> , he himself ;	<i>suus</i> , his own.	

To these may be added their compounds, *egomēt*, I myself; *tutě*, thou thyself; *idem*, the same; also the relative *qui*, who or what.

## DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

*Ego, tu, sui*, are Pronouns *Personal*, and are thus declined :

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. <i>Ego</i> ,	<i>I,</i>	N. <i>Nos</i> ,	<i>we,</i>
G. <i>Mei</i> ,	<i>of me,</i>	G. <i>Nostr-ŭm</i> ,	<i>of us,</i>
D. <i>Mihi</i> ,	<i>to me,</i>	D. <i>Nobis</i> ,	<i>to us,</i>
A. <i>Me</i> ,	<i>me,</i>	A. <i>Nos</i> ,	<i>us,</i>
V. _____		V. _____	
A. <i>Me</i> ,	<i>from or by me.</i>	A. <i>Nobis</i> ,	<i>from or by us.</i>
	Cp. $\epsilon\gamma\omega$ , § 37.		Cp. $\nu\omega$ , § 37.
N. <i>Tu</i> ,	<i>thou or you,</i>	N. <i>Vos</i> ,	<i>ye or you,</i>
G. <i>Tui</i> ,	<i>of thee or you,</i>	G. <i>Vestr-ŭm</i> ,	<i>of ye or you,</i>
D. <i>Tibi</i> ,	<i>to thee or you,</i>	D. <i>Vobis</i> ,	<i>to ye or you,</i>
A. <i>Te</i> ,	<i>thee or you,</i>	A. <i>Vos</i> ,	<i>ye or you,</i>
V. <i>o Tu</i> ,	<i>o thou or you,</i>	V. <i>o Vos</i> ,	<i>o ye,</i>
A. <i>Te</i> ,	<i>from or by thee or you.</i>	A. <i>Vobis</i> ,	<i>from or by ye or you.</i>
	Cp. $\sigma\delta$ , § 37.		Cp. $\sigma\phi\omega$ , § 37.

*Obs.* 1. The Genitives *nostrŭm, vestrŭm*, of us, of you, are equivalent to *ex nobis, ex vobis*, i. e. consisting of, or taken from, us or you : as, *unus nostrum*, one of us.

*Obs. 2.* The words *nostri, vestri*, (in the phrases *amor nostri, memor vestri*), are genitives of *nostrum, vestrum*, (τὸ ἡμέτερον, τὸ ὑμέτερον) neuters of the possessives *noster, vester*, ours, yours.

*Obs. 3.* *Venio tui videndi causâ* is said even of a woman, and not *videndâ*.

*Sui*, of himself, herself, themselves, itself, has no Nominative or Vocative Case, and is thus declined:

<i>Singular and Plural.</i>			
G. Sui,	<i>of himself,</i>	}	<i>herself, themselves, &amp;c.</i>
D. Sibi,	<i>to himself,</i>		
A. Se and Sese,	<i>himself,</i>		
Ab. Se,	<i>by himself,</i>		
Cp. <i>oû</i> , § 37.			

*Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, are Pronouns Possessive, and declined like *bonus*, except that *meus* makes *mi* in the Vocative Case Singular Masculine (*mea* in Feminine); and *tuus, suus*, with many other Pronouns, have no Vocative Case.

Cp. *ἐμὸς, σὸς, ἐὸς*, § 38.

*Nostras, vestras, and cujas*, are declined like *felix*, thus:—  
Nom. *nostras*, Gen. *nostrâtis*.

*Ille, illa, illud*, he, she, that; and *ist-e, -a, -ud*, that; are Pronouns Demonstrative, and are thus declined:

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Ill-e,	ill-a,	ill-ud,	N. Ill-i,	ill-æ,	ill-a,
G. Ill-ius,			G. Ill-orum,	ill-arum,	ill-orum
D. Ill-i,			D. Ill-is,		
A. Ill-um,	ill-am,	ill-ud,	A. Ill-os,	ill-as,	ill-a,
V. —			V. —		
A. Ill-o,	ill-a,	ill-o.	A. Ill-is.		

In like manner is also declined *ipse*, he himself; except that the Nominative and Accusative Cases Singular make *ipsum* (not *ipsud*) in the Neuter Gender.

*Is, ea, id*, he, she, or that, is thus declined:

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Is,	ea,	id,	N. Ii,	eæ,	ea,
G. Ejus,			G. Eorum,	earum,	eorum,
D. Ei,			D. Iis <i>vel</i> eis,		
A. Eum,	eam,	id,	A. Eos,	eas,	ea,
V. _____			V. _____		
A. Eo,	ea,	eo.	A. Iis <i>vel</i> eis.		

Cp. § 38.

*Obs.* 1. *Is* refers to a person mentioned before, or one implied in the relative *qui*. *Idem* (*is-dem*) and *ipse* (*is-pse*) are emphatic for *Is*.

*Obs.* 2. *Iste* is usually in a bad sense; *Ille* in a good.

In like manner also is declined its compound *idem*, the same; as Nom. *īdem, eīdem, idem*, Gen. *ejusdem*, &c.

*Qui*, who, is a Pronoun *Relative* and is thus declined:

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Qui,	quæ,	quod,	N. Qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. Cujus,			G. Quorum,	quarum,	quorum
D. Cui,			D. Quibus <i>vel</i> queis,		
A. Quem,	quam,	quod,	A. Quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. _____			V. _____		
A. Quo,	qua,	quo <i>vel</i>	A. Quibus <i>vel</i> queis.		
Qui,	quī,	quī.			

So is declined also *qui, quæ, quod*, who or what? In like manner are also declined its compounds, &c., *quidam, quædam, quoddam*, or *quiddam*, a certain person; *quivis, quilibet*, any one you choose; *quicumque*, whosoever.

Also, *quis, quæ, quid*, who or what? is a Pronoun *Interrogative*, and is declined like *qui*.

As are also *aliquis*, some one, and other compounds of *quis*; as *ecquis*, any one?

These, for the most part, make the Feminine Gender of the Nominative Case Singular, and the Neuter of the Nominative and Accusative Cases Plural, in *quæ*.

*Examples of QUI Interrogative.*

*Qui* gurges, aut *quæ* flumina lugubris

Ignara belli? *quod* mare Dauniæ

Non decoloravere cædes?

*Quæ* caret ora cruore nostro?—*Hor.*

*Obs.* *Quid* is used as a *Substantive*, as *quid consilii?*  
*Quod* as an *Adjective*, as *quod consilium?*

Like *qui* are declined *quisque*, each; *unusquisque*, every one; *quispiam*, some one or other; *quisquam*, any one at all.

*Quisquis*, whosoever, is thus declined:

Nom. *Quisquis*, *quidquid* or *quicquid*,  
 Acc. *Quemquem*, *quidquid* or *quicquid*,  
 Abl. *Quoquo*, *quaqua*, *quoquo*.

EXAMPLES of *Pronouns formed with QUI and QUIS.*

*Quicquid* delirant Reges, plectuntur Achivi.  
*Aude aliquid* brevibus Gyris et carcere dignum,  
*Si vis esse aliquis*:—non est me fallere *cuiquam*:—  
 An *quidquam* tanto nobis sit munere majus?  
 Occurrit *quidam* notus mihi nomine tantum.  
*Quelibet* in *quemvis* opprobria fingere sævus.  
 Non *cuivis* homini contingit adire Corinthum.—  
 Ne placeat sibi *quisque*; trahit sua *quemque* voluptas.  
 Ut *cuique* est ætas, ita *quemque* facetus adopta.

*Obs.* 1. *Quisquis*, whosoever, is generally used as a *Substantive*, and *Quicunque* as an *Adjective*: as,

Pindarum *quisquis* studet æmulari—*Hor.*  
 Ne, *quicunque* Deus, *quicunque* adhibebitur heros—*Hor.*

*Obs.* 2. *Quicunque* is often used with a *tnesis*.  
*Quem* fors dierum *cunque* dabit, lucro appone—*Hor.*

*Quisquam* is used as a *Substantive*, and *ullus* as an *Adjective*: as

Non isthic obliquo oculo mea commoda *quisquam*  
 Limat—nec citharæ nec musæ deditus *ulli*—*Hor.*

*Quisquam* and *ullus* are only used with negatives and questions; they *exclude all*, as *quivis* and *quilibet* *include all*.

Sis memor! includunt *Quivis* et *Quilibet* omnes;  
 Sed contra *Quisquam* cunctos excludit et *Ullus*.

## SYLLABLES PREFIXED AND AFFIXED TO PRONOUNS.

ALI, (for *alius*), is prefixed to Pronouns: as, *ali-quis*.

EC (*en! ecce!*) is prefixed to Pronouns, as

*Ecquis (En! quis?) me hodie vivit fortunator?*

*Eccum*, for *ecce eum*; *eccillam*, for *ecce illam*.

NE is prefixed as a Negative to Pronouns, as *nē ūter*, *neuter*, neither of the two; *ne ullus*, *nullus*, none; *ne usquam*, *nusquam*, and so forth; *ne homo*, *nēmo*, no one.

*Obs.* *Nēmo*, takes its Genitive and Ablative from *nullus*; *neminis* and *nemine* being rarely used.

*Ce*, *dem*, *met*, *pse*, *pte*, *te*, are added to Pronouns, as *self* and *own* are in English.

CE, CINE are affixed to *hic*, as *hic-ce*, *il-lic* (for *ille-ce*), *hic-cine* (for *hicce-ne?*) interrogative.

DEM to *is*, as *idem* from *is-dem*: so to Numerals and Adverbs as *totidem*, *item* (for *ita-dem*); *tantum-dem*, *tandem* (for *tam-dem*).

MET is added to the Personal Pronouns *ego*, *tu*, *sui*, and to their Possessives, in all cases; except that for *tumet* and *nostrimet*, *tute* and *nostrummet* are used.

NE, interrogative, as *hicci ne?*

PSE is added to Pronouns of the third person, as *ipse*, for *is-pse*; *re-apse* for *re-ed-pse*.

PTE is added to the possessives *meus*, *tuus*, *suius* in the Ablative Case, as *meāpte*, *sudāpte*.

TE is added to Pronouns of the Second and Third Persons as *tu-te*, *is-te* (*iste*).

Also *dam*, *idem*, *piam*, *quamque*, *cunque*, are added to Pronouns.

DAM is demonstrative, as *quidam*, a certain one; *quondam*, (*quomdam*), at a certain time.

ĪDEM, to *tot*, as *totidem*; to *tantum*, as *tantumdem*.

PIAM and QUAM are added to *quis*: *piam*, affirmatively, as *quis-piam*; *quam* negatively, as *quisquam*.

Add to these QUE (in the sense of *every*), *quis-que*, every one; *ubique*, every where; *cum-que*, every when; *undi-que*, every whence.

CUNQUE at each time (*cum-que*) to *qui*, as *quicunque*, whosoever; *so qualiscunque*, *quotcunque*, *utcunque*, *ubicunque*, *quandocunque*, *undecunque*, *quocunque*; of what sort-, how many-, when- or how-, where-, when-, whence-, whither-, -soever.

NAM and NUM are interrogative, as *quisnam?* *numquis?*

## OF A VERB.

A VERB expresses the *action* or *being* of a thing, and is the principal word (*verbum*) of a sentence.

Of VERBS there are two VOICES.

1. The *Active* (from *ago, actus—to do*), as *amo*, I love.
2. The *Passive* (from *patior, passus—to suffer*), as *amor*, I am loved.

Verbs are either TRANSITIVE or INTRANSITIVE.

A Verb is called *Transitive*, when the action passes on (*transit*) to the noun following, as *vinco te*, I conquer thee; *veneror Deum*, I worship God.

A Verb is called *Intransitive*, when the action does not pass on, or require a noun following, as *curro*, I run; *glorior*, I boast.

Of Verbs ending in *o*, some are *Transitive*, as *vinco*, I conquer; and these, by changing *o* into *or*, become Verbs *Passive*, as *vincor*, I am conquered.

Some are *Intransitive*, as *niteo*, I shine; and in these *o* is not changed into *or*.

Some Verbs ending in *or* are called *Deponents*, and lay down (*deponunt*) the *Passive*, and take an *Active* signification, as *loquor*, I speak; and some few are *Intransitives*, as *glorior*, I boast.

Those *Intransitive* Verbs are called *Neuters* (*neuter, neither*, *i. e.* neither *Active* nor *Passive*), which have in all their tenses an *active form*, as *lateo*, I lie hid.

Those *Intransitives* are named *Neuter-Passives*, which in the *Perfect*, and tenses derived from it, take a *Passive form*,

as *gaudeo*, I am glad; Perfect, *gavisus sum*. So, *audeo*, I dare; Perfect, *ausus sum*.

Those Intransitives are named *Neutral-Passives* which have an Active form throughout, but a Passive sense: as *vāpūlo*, I am beaten; *vēneo*, I am sold.

Verbs Intransitive ending in *or*, and Verbs Deponent, are *declined* like Verbs Passive; but with Gerunds and Supines, like Verbs Active.

Verbs that have different persons are called Verbs **PERSONAL**: as *ego amo*, I love; *tu amas*, thou lovest.

But such as have not different persons are called Verbs **IMPERSONAL**: as *tædet*, it irketh; *oportet*, it behoveth; without expressing the *person* to whom the Verb refers.

---

#### OF MOODS.

**THERE** are *five Moods*: the Indicative, Imperative, Subjunctive, Potential, and the Infinitive.—*Cp.* § 40.

The *Indicative* mood either declares (*indicat*) a thing positively, as *ego amo*, I love; or asks a question, as *amas tu?* dost thou love?

The *Imperative* Mood commands (*impērat*), or entreats, as *veni huc*, come hither; *parce mihi*, spare me. It is also known by the sign *let*, as *eamus*, let us go.

The *Subjunctive* Mood is *subjoined* (*subjungitur*) to another Verb going before it in the same sentence, and has evermore some conjunction or indefinite word put before it, as *eram miser cum amarem*, I was a wretch when I loved; *nescio qualis sit*, I know not what sort of man he may be.

The *Potential* Mood, which is declined like the Subjunctive, signifies *power* (*potentia*), *disposition*, *likelihood*, or *duty*; and is commonly known by these signs, *may*, *can*, *might*, *would*, *could*, *should*, or *ought*: as *amem*, I may love.



The Potential sometimes expresses a *wish*, as *sis felix!* may you be happy!

It sometimes *exhorts* and *advises*, as *eamus*, let us go; *amemus patriam*, let us love our country.

*Examples of the Potential Mood.*

Garganum mugire *putes* nemus, aut mare Tuscum.—

*Eloquar*, an *sileam*?—mortalia facta peribunt,

Nedum sermonum *stet* honos et gratia vivax.

Hoc Ithacus *velit*, et magno *mercentur* Atridæ.

Quid *faceret*? quo se raptâ bis conjuge *ferret*?

Quo fletu Manes, quâ Numina voce *moveret*?—

*Sis felix!* nostrumque *leves*, quicumque, laborem!—

Proh Pudor! et nostris *illuserit* advena regnis!

The *Infinitive Mood* is undefined (*infinitus*), since it has neither number, person, nor nominative case before it; and is known commonly by this sign, *to*; as *amare*, to love.

*Obs.* Of the Infinitive Future Passive—see p. 30, *Obs.* 3.

---

OF THE TENSES OF VERBS.

IN Verbs there are *Six Tenses* or *Times*, (*Tempora*), expressing an action or affirmation: the Present, the Preterimperfect, the Preterperfect, the Preterpluperfect, and Two Futures.

1. The *Present Tense* speaketh of a thing present, or now doing, as *amo*, I love or am loving.

2. The *Preterimperfect Tense* speaketh of a thing that was done at some time past, but not ended, as *amabam*, I did love or was loving.

3. The *Preterperfect Tense* speaketh of a thing done.

*Obs.* The Preterperfect hath two distinct significations: one *Definite*, the other *Indefinite*. The first is rendered in English by *have*, the second is construed without *have*: as, *scripsi*, I have written; *scripsi*, I wrote.

The former answers to the Greek *Preterperfect*, as  $\gamma\acute{\iota}\gamma\alpha\phi\alpha$ : the latter to the Greek *Aorist*, as  $\epsilon\gamma\gamma\alpha\psi\alpha$ .

4. The *Preterpluperfect* Tense refers to a thing done at some time past, and now ended, as *amaveram*, I had loved.

5. The *First Future* Tense speaketh of a thing to be done hereafter, as *amabo*, I shall or will love.

6. The *Second Future* Tense speaketh of a thing to be done when another thing has been done, as *amavero*, I shall have loved.

The TENSES are either ABSOLUTE or RELATIVE.

ABSOLUTE.—1. Present, *amo*, I love. 2. Perfect, *amavi*, I have loved.  
3. Future, *amabo*, I will love.

RELATIVE.—*i. e.* depending on some other action.

1. Imperfect, *amabam*, I was loving, when something else happened.

2. Pluperfect, *amaveram*, I had loved, when something else happened.

3. Second Future, or Future Perfect, *amavero*, I shall have loved, when something else has happened.

#### OF NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

VERBS have two Numbers, Singular and Plural, like unto Nouns, and three Persons in each Number, as,

Sing. <i>Ego amo</i> , I love. <i>Tu amas</i> , thou lovest. <i>Ille amat</i> , he loveth.	Plur. <i>Nos amamus</i> , we love. <i>Vos amatis</i> , ye love. <i>Illi amant</i> , they love.
--	--

#### OF GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

VERBS have *three Gerunds*, ending in *di*, *do*, *dum*, which have commonly an active signification, as *amandi*, of loving; *amando*, in loving; *amandum*, to love.

*Obs.* 1. The Gerunds are Cases of the Future Participle Passive, and of the Neuter Gender: thus *amandi* is the Genitive, *amando* the Dative or Ablative, *amandum* the Nominative or Accusative Case of *amandus*.

*Obs.* 2. The Gerunds are used as Oblique Cases of the Infinitive, (and when in Greek the Infinitive is used with the article), as, *ars scribendi*, the art of writing; *scribendo*, by writing; *inter scribendum*, during writing.

The *Supines* of Verbs are *two* :

The one ending in *um*, which signifies actively, as *eo amatum*, I go to love.

The other ending in *u*, and hath, for the most part, a passive signification, as *difficilis amatu*, hard to be loved.

*Obs.* 1. The *Supines*, also, are Cases of a Verbal Substantive of the Fourth Declension: thus *amatum* is the Accusative Case from *amatus*, (like *gradus*), and *amatu* the Ablative.

*Obs.* 2. The Dative Case of this Substantive is found in some phrases, as *habere despicatui*, *habere derisui*, and so forth.

*Obs.* 3. The Future Tense Infinitive of the Passive Voice is formed of the *Supine* in *um*, and of the Present Infinitive Passive of the verb *eo*, to go: as, *Omnes vos amatum iri ab eo video*—I see that it is *being gone* by him to love you all. Hence, the termination in *um* is never changed.

*Example.*—*Arbitrantur se beneficos visum iri.* *Cic.*—They think that they themselves will appear benevolent.

*Obs.* 4. Hence when the Verb is *without* a *Supine*, the Future Passive must be formed in some other way.

And it is then made by *fore ut*, followed by a Subjunctive Mood: as, I hope that this will be learnt by you; *Spero fore ut hoc a te discatur.* I hoped that this would be learnt by you; *Sperabam fore ut hoc a te disceretur.* I hoped that this would have been learnt by you; *Sperabam futurum fuisse ut hoc a te disceretur.*

---

## OF A PARTICIPLE.

A PARTICIPLE is a part of speech derived from a Verb, and also taketh part (*partem capit*) of a Noun, as Number, Gender, Case, and Declension; and part of a Verb, as Tense and Signification.

There are four PARTICIPLES:

*Obs.* 1. One of the Present Tense, which in English ends in *ing*, and in Latin in *ans* or *ens*, as *loving*, *amans*; *teaching*, *docens*.

*Obs. 2.* One of the Future in *rus*, which signifies a likelihood or design of doing a thing, as *amaturus*, intending to love or about to love.

*Obs. 3.* One of the Preterperfect Tense, which has generally a Passive signification, and in English ends in *d*, *t*, or *n*, as *lectus*, read; *doctus*, taught; *visus*, seen.

*Obs. 4.* One of the Future in *rus*, which also has a Passive signification, and expresses an action to be done hereafter, as *amandus*, to be loved.

*Note.* All Participles are declined like Nouns Adjective.

*Obs. 5.* There is no Participle of the Perfect Active, nor of the Present Passive.

The first is supplied by *quum* with the Pluperfect Subjunctive: as, He, having come, *Quum venisset*.

Above all it is to be observed, that the Perfect Participle Active is supplied by the Ablative Absolute *Passive*: as, Antony, *having divorced Octavia*, married Cleopatra—*Antonius*, repudiâtâ Octaviâ, *Cleopatram uxorem duxit*.

*Obs. 6.* The Present Participle Passive is supplied by *quum* with the Present Indicative: as, he, being loved by you, is happy, *quum amatur a te, felix est*.

The Present Participle Passive, (which is *wanting*), is supplied not only by *Qui* and *Quum*, as above, but (1) Sometimes by the Preterperfect Participle, as, A certain peace is better than a wished-for victory, *Melior est certa pax quam sperata victoria*; (2) Sometimes by the Future in *rus*, as, The praise of Thebes being freed is due to Pelopidas, *Liberandarum Thebarum propria laus est Pelopidæ*.

OF THE VERB *ESSE*, to be.

Before other Verbs are declined, it is necessary to learn the Verb *Esse*, to be.

*Sum, es, fui, esse, futurus*, to be.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*Am*.

<i>Sing.</i>	Sum, Es, Est,	<i>I am.</i> <i>thou art.</i> <i>he is.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Sūmus, Estis, Sunt,	<i>We are.</i> <i>ye are.</i> <i>they are.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Was*.

<i>Sing.</i>	Er-am, Er-as, Er-at,	<i>I was.</i> <i>thou wast.</i> <i>he was.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Er-āmus, Er-atis, Er-ant,	<i>We were.</i> <i>ye were.</i> <i>they were.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*Have*.

<i>Sing.</i>	Fu-i, Fu-isti, Fu-it,	<i>I have been.</i> <i>thou hast been.</i> <i>he has been.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Fu-īmus, Fu-istis, Fu-ērunt vel fu-ēre,	<i>We have been.</i> <i>ye have been.</i> <i>they have been.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Had*.

<i>Sing.</i>	Fu-ēram, Fu-eras, Fu-erat,	<i>I had been.</i> <i>thou hadst been.</i> <i>he had been.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Fu-erāmus, Fu-eratis, Fu-erant.	<i>We had been.</i> <i>ye had been.</i> <i>they had been.</i>

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE—*Shall or will*.

<i>Sing.</i>	Er-o, Er-is, Er-it,	<i>I shall or will be.</i> <i>thou shalt or will be.</i> <i>he shall or will be.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Er-īmus, Er-itis, Er-unt,	<i>We shall or will be.</i> <i>ye shall or will be.</i> <i>they shall or will be.</i>

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE—*Shall have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Fu-ero, Fu-eris, Fu-erit,	<i>I shall have been. thou shalt have been. he shall have been.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Fu-erimus, Fu-eritis, Fu-erint,	<i>We shall have been. ye shall have been. they shall have been.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. *No first Person.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Sis, es, esto, Sit, esto,	<i>Be thou. be he, or let him be.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Simus, Sitis, este, estôte, Sint, sunt,	<i>Be we, or let us be. be ye. be they, or let them be.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*May or can.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Sim, Sis, Sit,	<i>I may or can be. thou mayst or canst be. he may or can be.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Simus, Sitis, Sint,	<i>We may or can be. ye may or can be. they may or can be.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Might or could.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Ess-em <i>vel</i> for-em, Ess-es <i>vel</i> for-es, Ess-et <i>vel</i> for-et,	<i>I might or could be. thou mightst or couldst be. he might or could be.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Ess-ēmus <i>vel</i> for-ēmus, Ess-etis <i>vel</i> for-etis, Ess-ent <i>vel</i> for-ent,	<i>We might or could be. ye might or could be. they might or could be.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*May have, should have, &c.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Fu-ërim, Fu-eris, Fu-erit,	<i>I may or should have been. thou mayst or shouldst have been. he may or should have been.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Fu-erimus, Fu-eritis, Fu-erint,	<i>We may or should have been. ye may or should have been. they may or should have been.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Might, would have, &c.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Fu-issem, Fu-isses, Fu-isset,	<i>I might or would have been. thou mightst or wouldst have been. he might or would have been.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Fu-issēmus, Fu-issetis, Fu-issent,	<i>We might or would have been. ye might or would have been. they might or would have been.</i>

## 5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fu-tur-us, -a, -um	$\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \text{sim,} & I \\ \text{sis,} & \text{you} \\ \text{sit,} & \text{he} \\ \text{simus,} & \text{we} \\ \text{sitis,} & \text{ye} \\ \text{sint,} & \text{they} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>may be about to be.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Fu-tur-i, -æ, -a,		

The SECOND FUTURE Subjunctive is *Fuisse*, and sometimes *Futurus sim*.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE.

Esse, *to be.*

## PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.

Fuisse, *to have been.*

## FUTURE TENSE.

Fore *vel* Futurum esse, *to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE OF THE FUTURE *in rus*.

Futurus, *about to be.*

Cp. *si*μi, § 80, with *sum*, and φύω, § 94, with *fui*.

Like *sum* are conjugated its compounds: as, *absum, adsum, desum, intersum, præsum, prosum, supersum*.

*Obs.* 1. In *prosum*, *d* is inserted whenever a vowel follows *pro*; as *prosum, prodes, prodest*.

*Obs.* 2. Only *absum* and *præsum* have Present Participles: viz. *absens, præsens*. The rest have none.

*Obs.* 3. Example of First Future Subjunctive:

*Quid sit futurum cras, fuge querere—Hor.*

—◆—

VERBS REGULAR DECLINED.

VERBS have four Conjugations, both in the Active and Passive voice.

The *First* Conjugation of Verbs Active hath *a* long, before *re* and *ris*, as *amā-re*, *amā-ris*.

The *Second* hath *e* long before *re* and *ris*, as *monē-re*, *monē-ris*.

The *Third* hath *e* short before *re* and *ris*, as *regĕ-re*, *regĕ-ris*.

The *Fourth* has *i* long before *re* and *ris*, as *audī-re*, *audī-ris*.

VERBS ACTIVE in *O*, are declined after these examples:

1. Am-o, am-as, am-āvi, am-āre; am-andi, am-ando, am-andum; am-ātum, am-ātu; am-ans, am-aturus: *to love*.

Cp. *τιμάω*, § 43.

2. Mon-eo, mon-es, mon-ūi, mon-ēre; mon-endi, mon-endo, mon-endum; mon-ītum, mon-ītu; mon-ens, mon-iturus:

Cp. *φιλῶ*, § 43. *to advise*.

3. Reg'o, reg-is, rex-i, reg-ĕre; reg-endi, reg-endo, reg-endum; rec-tum, rec-tu; reg-ens, rectu-rus: *to rule*, or *govern*.

Cp. *λέγω*, § 49.

4. Aud-io, aud-is, aud-ivi, aud-īre; aud-iendi, aud-iendo, aud-iendum; aud-ītum, aud-ītu; aud-iens, aud-iturus: *to hear*.

Cp. *τίω*, § 52.

—◆—

FIRST CONJUGATION—Amo.

—

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—Do, am.

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-o, Am-as, Am-at,	<i>I love, am loving, or do love. thou lovest, art loving, or dost love. he loveth, is loving, or doth love.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-āmus, Am-atis, Am-ant,	<i>We love, are loving, or do love. ye love, are loving, or do love. they love, are loving, or do love.</i>



2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Did, was.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-ābam, Am-ābas, Am-ābat,	<i>I did love, or was loving. thou didst love, or wast loving. he did love, or was loving.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-ābāmus, Am-ābatis, Am-ābant,	<i>We did love, or were loving. ye did love, or were loving. they did love, or were loving.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*Have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-āvī, Am-āvisti, Am-āvit,	<i>I loved, or have loved. thou lovedst, or hast loved. he loved, or hath loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-āvīmus, Am-āvistis, Am-āvērunt vel -āvère,	<i>We loved, or have loved. ye loved, or have loved. they loved, or have loved.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Had.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-avēram, Am-averas, Am-averat,	<i>I had loved. thou hadst loved. he had loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-averāmus, Am-averatis, Am-averant,	<i>We had loved. ye had loved. they had loved.</i>

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE—*Shall, will.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-ābo, Am-ābis, Am-ābit,	<i>I shall or will love. thou shalt or wilt love. he shall or will love.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-ābīmus, Am-ābitis, Am-ābunt,	<i>We shall or will love. ye shall or will love. they shall or will love.</i>

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE—*Shall have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-avēro, Am-averis, Am-averit,	<i>I shall have loved. thou shalt have loved. he shall have loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-averīmus, Am-averitis, Am-averint,	<i>We shall have loved. ye shall have loved. they shall have loved.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. *No first Person.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-a, am-āto, Am-et, amato,	<i>Love thou, or do thou love. love he, or let him love.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-ēmus, Am-āte, am-atōte, Am-ent, am-anto,	<i>Love we, or let us love. love ye, or do ye love. love they, or let them love.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*May, can, would, should.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-em,	<i>I may or can love.</i>
	Am-es,	<i>thou mayst or canst love.</i>
	Am-et,	<i>he may or can love.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-ēmus,	<i>We may or can love.</i>
	Am-etis,	<i>ye may or can love.</i>
	Am-ent,	<i>they may or can love.</i>

'2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Might, could, should.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-ārem,	<i>I might or could love.</i>
	Am-ares,	<i>thou mightst or couldst love.</i>
	Am-aret,	<i>he might or could love.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-arēmus,	<i>We might or could love.</i>
	Am-aretis,	<i>ye might or could love.</i>
	Am-arent,	<i>they might or could love.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*Should have, may have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-avērim,	<i>I should have loved.</i>
	Am-averis,	<i>thou shouldst have loved.</i>
	Am-averit,	<i>he should have loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-averimus,	<i>We should have loved.</i>
	Am-averitis,	<i>ye should have loved.</i>
	Am-averint,	<i>they should have loved.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Would, might, could have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-avissem,	<i>I would have loved.</i>
	Am-avisses,	<i>thou wouldst have loved.</i>
	Am-avisset,	<i>he would have loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-avissēmus,	<i>We would have loved.</i>
	Am-avissetis,	<i>ye would have loved.</i>
	Am-avissent;	<i>they would have loved.</i>

## 5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-atur-us, -a, -um,	<table> <tr><td>sim,</td><td><i>I</i></td></tr> <tr><td>sis,</td><td><i>you</i></td></tr> <tr><td>sit,</td><td><i>he</i></td></tr> </table>	sim,	<i>I</i>	sis,	<i>you</i>	sit,	<i>he</i>	} <i>may be about to love.</i>
sim,	<i>I</i>								
sis,	<i>you</i>								
sit,	<i>he</i>								
		<table> <tr><td>simus,</td><td><i>we</i></td></tr> <tr><td>sitis,</td><td><i>ye</i></td></tr> <tr><td>sint,</td><td><i>they</i></td></tr> </table>	simus,	<i>we</i>	sitis,	<i>ye</i>	sint,	<i>they</i>	
simus,	<i>we</i>								
sitis,	<i>ye</i>								
sint,	<i>they</i>								
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-atur-i, -æ, -a,								

## 6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-atur-us, -a, -um,	<table> <tr><td>essem,</td><td><i>I</i></td></tr> <tr><td>esses,</td><td><i>you</i></td></tr> <tr><td>esset,</td><td><i>he</i></td></tr> </table>	essem,	<i>I</i>	esses,	<i>you</i>	esset,	<i>he</i>	} <i>might be about to love.</i>
essem,	<i>I</i>								
esses,	<i>you</i>								
esset,	<i>he</i>								

Plur. Am-atur-i, -æ, -a, { essemus, we  
essetis, ye  
essent, they } *might be about  
to love.*

Or, Am-aviss-em, -es, -et, -emus, -etis, -ent.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

### PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE.

Am-äre, *to love.*

### PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.

Am-avisse, *to have loved.*

### FUTURE TENSE.

Am-atûrum esse, *to be about to love.*

## GERUNDS.

Am-andi, *of loving.*  
Am-ando, *in loving.*  
Am-andum, *to love.*

## SUPINES.

*Active.* Am-atum, *to love;* *Passive.* Am-ätü, *to be loved.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT TENSE. *FUTURE in rus.*  
Am-ans, *loving;* Am-atûrus, *about to love.*

PERFECT *wanting.*—For it, is used *Quum* or *Qui am-aviss-em, -es, -et, &c.*

## FORMATION OF TENSES.

Several Tenses are formed from the Preterperfect Tense of the Indicative Mood, as from *amav-i* are formed

1. The Preterpluperfect of the same mood, *amav-eram.*
2. The Preterperfect of the Potential Mood, *amav-erim.*
3. The Preterpluperfect of the same mood, *amav-issem.*
4. The Future Tense of the same mood, *amav-ero.*
5. The Preterperfect Tense of the Infinitive Mood, *amav-isse.*

## SECOND CONJUGATION—MONEO.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*Do, am.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Mon-eo, Mon-es, Mon-et,	<i>I advise, am advising, or do advise. thou advisest, art advising, or dost advise. he adviseth, is advising, or doth advise.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Mon-ēmus, Mon-etis, Mon-ent,	<i>We advise, are advising, or do advise. ye advise, are advising, or do advise. they advise, are advising, or do advise.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Did, was.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Mon-ēbam, Mon-ebas, Mon-ebat,	<i>I did advise, or was advising. thou didst advise, or wast advising. he did advise, or was advising.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Mon-ebāmus, Mon-ebatis, Mon-ebant,	<i>We did advise, or were advising. ye did advise, or were advising. they did advise, or were advising.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*Have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Mon-ui, Mon-uisti, Mon-uit,	<i>I advised, or have advised. thou advisedst, or hast advised. he advised, or hath advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Mon-uīmus, Mon-uistis, Mon-uērunt <i>vel</i> -uēre.	<i>We advised, or have advised. ye advised, or have advised. they advised, or have advised.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Had.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Mon-uēram, Mon-ueras, Mon-uerat,	<i>I had advised. thou hadst advised. he had advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Mon-uerāmus, Mon-ueratis, Mon-uerant,	<i>We had advised. ye had advised. they had advised.</i>

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE—*Shall or will.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Mon-ēbo, Mon-ebis, Mon-ebit,	<i>I shall or will advise. thou shalt or wilt advise. he shall or will advise.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Mon-ebimus, Mon-ebitis, Mon-ebunt,	<i>We shall or will advise. ye shall or will advise. they shall or will advise.</i>

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE—*Shall have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Mon-uëro, Mon-uëris, Mon-uërit,	<i>I shall have advised. thou shalt have advised. he shall have advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Mon-uërimus, Mon-uëritis, Mon-uërint,	<i>We shall have advised. ye shall have advised. they shall have advised.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. *No first Person.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Mon-e, mon-ëto, Mon-eat, mon-eto,	<i>Advise thou, or do thou advise. advise he, or let him advise.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Mon-eåmus, Mon-ëte, mon-etôte, Mon-eant, mon-ento,	<i>Advise we, or let us advise. advise ye, or do ye advise. advise they, or let them advise.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*May, can, would, should.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Mon-eam, Mon-eas, Mon-eat,	<i>I may or can advise. thou mayst or canst advise. he may or can advise.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Mon-eåmus, Mon-eatis, Mon-eant,	<i>We may or can advise. ye may or can advise. they may or can advise.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Might, could, should.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Mon-ërem, Mon-eres, Mon-eret,	<i>I might or could advise. thou mightst or couldst advise. he might or could advise.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Mon-erëmus, Mon-erëtis, Mon-erent,	<i>We might or could advise. ye might or could advise. they might or could advise.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*Should have, may have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Mon-uërim, Mon-uëris, Mon-uërit,	<i>I should have advised. thou shouldst have advised. he should have advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Mon-uërimus, Mon-uëritis, Mon-uërint,	<i>We should have advised. ye should have advised. they should have advised.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Would, might, could have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Mon-uissē, Mon-uisses, Mon-uisset,	<i>I would have advised. thou wouldst have advised. he would have advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Mon-uissēmus, Mon-uissetis, Mon-uissent,	<i>We would have advised. they would have advised.</i>

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	Mon-itur-us, -a, -um,	<table> <tr><td>sim,</td><td><i>I</i></td></tr> <tr><td>sis,</td><td><i>you</i></td></tr> <tr><td>sit,</td><td><i>he</i></td></tr> <tr><td>simus,</td><td><i>we</i></td></tr> <tr><td>sitis,</td><td><i>ye</i></td></tr> <tr><td>sint,</td><td><i>they</i></td></tr> </table>	sim,	<i>I</i>	sis,	<i>you</i>	sit,	<i>he</i>	simus,	<i>we</i>	sitis,	<i>ye</i>	sint,	<i>they</i>	} <i>may be about to advise.</i>
sim,	<i>I</i>														
sis,	<i>you</i>														
sit,	<i>he</i>														
simus,	<i>we</i>														
sitis,	<i>ye</i>														
sint,	<i>they</i>														
<i>Plur.</i>	Mon-itur-i, -æ, -a,														

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	Mon-itur-us, -a, -um,	<table> <tr><td>essem,</td><td><i>I</i></td></tr> <tr><td>esses,</td><td><i>you</i></td></tr> <tr><td>esset,</td><td><i>he</i></td></tr> <tr><td>essemus,</td><td><i>we</i></td></tr> <tr><td>essetis,</td><td><i>ye</i></td></tr> <tr><td>essent,</td><td><i>they</i></td></tr> </table>	essem,	<i>I</i>	esses,	<i>you</i>	esset,	<i>he</i>	essemus,	<i>we</i>	essetis,	<i>ye</i>	essent,	<i>they</i>	} <i>might be about to advise.</i>
essem,	<i>I</i>														
esses,	<i>you</i>														
esset,	<i>he</i>														
essemus,	<i>we</i>														
essetis,	<i>ye</i>														
essent,	<i>they</i>														
<i>Plur.</i>	Mon-ituri, -æ, -a,														

Or, Mon-uiss-em, -es, -et, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE.

Mon-ēre, *to advise.*

PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.

Mon-uisse, *to have advised.*

FUTURE TENSE.

Mon-itūrum esse, *to be about to advise.*

GERUNDS.

Mon-endi, *of advising.*  
 Mon-endo, *in advising.*  
 Mon-endum, *to advise.*

SUPINES.

*Active.* Mon-itum, *to advise ;* *Passive.* Mon-itu, *to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT TENSE.

Mon-ens, *advising ;*

FUTURE *in rus.*

Mon-itūrus, *about to advise.*

PERFECT *wanting*—For it, is used *Quum* or *Qui mon-uiss-em, -es, -et, &c.*

## THIRD CONJUGATION—REGO.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*Do, am.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Reg-o, Reg-is, Reg-it,	<i>I rule, am ruling, or do rule. thou rulest, art ruling, or dost rule. he ruleth, is ruling, or doth rule.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Reg-īmus, Reg-itis, Reg-unt,	<i>We rule, are ruling, or do rule. ye rule, are ruling, or do rule. they rule, are ruling, or do rule.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Did, was.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Reg-ēbam, Reg-ebas, Reg-ebat,	<i>I did rule, or was ruling. thou didst rule, or wast ruling. he did rule, or was ruling.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Reg-ebāmus, Reg-ebatis, Reg-ebant,	<i>We did rule, or were ruling. ye did rule, or were ruling. they did rule, or were ruling.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*Have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Rex-i, Rex-isti, Rex-it,	<i>I ruled, or have ruled. thou ruledst, or hast ruled. he ruled, or hath ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Rex-īmus, Rex-istis, Rex-ērunt vel -ēre,	<i>We ruled, or have ruled. ye ruled, or have ruled. they ruled, or have ruled.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Had.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Rex-eram, Rex-eras, Rex-erat,	<i>I had ruled. thou hadst ruled. he had ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Rex-erāmus, Rex-eratis, Rex-erant,	<i>We had ruled. ye had ruled. they had ruled.</i>

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE—*Shall or will.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Reg-am, Reg-es, Reg-et,	<i>I shall or will rule. thou shalt or wilt rule. he shall or will rule.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Reg-ēmus, Reg-etis, Reg-ent,	<i>We shall or will rule. ye shall or will rule. they shall or will rule.</i>

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE.—*Shall have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Rex-ĕro, Rex-eris, Rex-erit,	<i>I shall have ruled. thou shalt have ruled. he shall have ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Rex-erimus, Rex-eritis, Rex-erint,	<i>We shall have ruled. ye shall have ruled. they shall have ruled.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. *No first Person.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Reg-e, reg-ĭto, Reg-at, reg-ito,	<i>Rule thou, or do thou rule. rule he, or let him rule.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Reg-āmus, Reg-ĭte, reg-itōte, Reg-ant, reg-unto,	<i>Rule we, or let us rule. rule ye, or do ye rule. rule they, or let them rule.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*May, can, would, should.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Reg-am, Reg-as, Reg-at,	<i>I may or can rule. thou mayst or canst rule. he may or can rule.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Reg-āmus, Reg-atis, Reg-ant,	<i>We may or can rule. ye may or can rule. they may or can rule.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Might, could, should.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Reg-ĕrem, Reg-eres, Reg-eret,	<i>I might or could rule. thou mightst or couldst rule. he might or could rule.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Reg-erĕmus, Reg-eretis, Reg-erent,	<i>We might or could rule. ye might or could rule. they might or could rule.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*Should have, may have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Rex-ĕrim, Rex-eris, Rex-erit,	<i>I should have ruled. thou shouldst have ruled. he should have ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Rex-erimus, Rex-eritis, Rex-erint,	<i>We should have ruled. ye should have ruled. they should have ruled.</i>



4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Would, might, could have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Rex- <i>issem,</i> Rex- <i>isses,</i> Rex- <i>isset,</i>	<i>I would have ruled.</i> <i>thou wouldst have ruled.</i> <i>he would have ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Rex- <i>issēmus,</i> Rex- <i>issetis,</i> Rex- <i>issent,</i>	<i>We would have ruled.</i> <i>ye would have ruled.</i> <i>they would have ruled.</i>

## 5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	Rec- <i>tur-us, -a, -um,</i>	{ sim, <i>I</i> sis, <i>you</i> sit, <i>he</i> simus, <i>we</i> sitis, <i>ye</i> sint, <i>they,</i>	} <i>may be about to rule.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Rec- <i>tur-i, -æ, -a,</i>		

## 6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	Rec- <i>tur-us, -a, -um,</i>	{ essem, <i>I</i> esses, <i>you</i> esset, <i>he</i> essemus, <i>we</i> essetis, <i>ye</i> essent, <i>they</i>	} <i>might be about to rule.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Rec- <i>tur-i, -æ, -a,</i>		

*Or, Rex-iss-em, -es, -et, &c.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE.

Reg-*ĕre,* *to rule.*

## PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.

Rex-*isse,* *to have ruled.*

## FUTURE TENSE.

Rec-*tūrum esse,* *to be about to rule.*

## GERUNDS.

Reg-*endi,* *of ruling.*  
Reg-*endo,* *in ruling.*  
Reg-*endum,* *to rule.*

## SUPINES.

*Active.* Rec-*tum,* *to rule;* *Passive.* Rec-*tu,* *to be ruled.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT TENSE. *Future in rus.*  
Reg-*ens, ruling;* Rec-*tūrus, about to rule.*

PERFECT *wanting*—For it, is used *Quum* or *Qui rex-iss-em, -es, -et, &c.*

## FOURTH CONJUGATION—AUDIO.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*Do, am.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Aud-io, Aud-is, Aud-it,	<i>I hear, am hearing, or do hear. thou hearest, art hearing, or dost hear. he heareth, is hearing, or doth hear.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Aud-imus, Aud-itis, Aud-iunt,	<i>We hear, are hearing, or do hear. ye hear, are hearing, or do hear. they hear, are hearing, or do hear.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Did, was.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Aud-iēbam, Aud-iebas, Aud-iebat,	<i>I did hear, or was hearing. thou didst hear, or wast hearing. he did hear, or was hearing.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Aud-iēbāmus, Aud-iebatis, Aud-iebant,	<i>We did hear, or were hearing. ye did hear, or were hearing. they did hear, or were hearing.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*Have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Aud-ivi, Aud-ivisti, Aud-ivit,	<i>I heard, or have heard. thou heardst, or hast heard. he heard, or hath heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Aud-ivimus, Aud-ivistis, Aud-ivērunt vel -ivēre,	<i>We heard, or have heard. ye heard, or have heard. they heard, or have heard.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Had.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Aud-ivēram, Aud-iveras, Aud-iverat,	<i>I had heard, thou hadst heard. he had heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Aud-ivērāmus, Aud-iveratis, Aud-iverant,	<i>We had heard. ye had heard. they had heard.</i>

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE—*Shall or will.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Aud-iam, Aud-ies, Aud-iet,	<i>I shall or will hear. thou shalt or wilt hear. he shall or will hear.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Aud-iēmus, Aud-ietis, Aud-ient,	<i>We shall or will hear. ye shall or will hear. they shall or will hear.</i>

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE—*Shall have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Aud-ivéro, Aud-iveris, Aud-iverit,	<i>I shall have heard. thou shalt have heard. he shall have heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Aud-iverimus, Aud-iveritis, Aud-iverint,	<i>We shall have heard. ye shall have heard. they shall have heard.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE—*No first Person.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Aud-ī, aud-ito, Aud-iat, aud-ito,	<i>Hear thou, or do thou hear. hear he, or let him hear.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Aud-iāmus, Aud-ite, aud-itōte, Aud-iant, aud-iunto,	<i>Hear we, or let us hear. hear ye, or do ye hear. hear they, or let them hear.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*May, can, would, should.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Aud-iam, Aud-ias, Aud-iat,	<i>I may or can hear. thou mayst or canst hear. he may or can hear.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Aud-iāmus, Aud-iatis, Aud-iant,	<i>We may or can hear. ye may or can hear. they may or can hear.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Might, could, should.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Aud-irem, Aud-ires, Aud-iret,	<i>I might or could hear. thou mightst or couldst hear. he might or could hear.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Aud-irēmus, Aud-iretis, Aud-irent,	<i>We might or could hear. ye might or could hear. they might or could hear.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*Should have, may have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Aud-ivērim, Aud-iveris, Aud-iverit,	<i>I should have heard. thou shouldst have heard. he should have heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Aud-iverimus, Aud-iveritis, Aud-iverint,	<i>We should have heard. ye should have heard. they should have heard.</i>

#### 4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Would, might, could have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-ivissem,	<i>I would have heard.</i>
Aud-ivisses,	<i>thou wouldst have heard.</i>
Aud-ivisset,	<i>he would have heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-ivissēmus,	<i>We would have heard.</i>
Aud-ivissetis,	<i>ye would have heard.</i>
Aud-ivissent,	<i>they would have heard.</i>

#### 5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-itur-us, -a, -um,	<table> <tr><td>sim,</td><td><i>I</i></td></tr> <tr><td>sis,</td><td><i>you</i></td></tr> <tr><td>sit,</td><td><i>he</i></td></tr> <tr><td>simus,</td><td><i>we</i></td></tr> <tr><td>sitis,</td><td><i>ye</i></td></tr> <tr><td>sint,</td><td><i>they</i></td></tr> </table>	sim,	<i>I</i>	sis,	<i>you</i>	sit,	<i>he</i>	simus,	<i>we</i>	sitis,	<i>ye</i>	sint,	<i>they</i>	<i>may be about to hear.</i>
sim,	<i>I</i>													
sis,	<i>you</i>													
sit,	<i>he</i>													
simus,	<i>we</i>													
sitis,	<i>ye</i>													
sint,	<i>they</i>													
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-itur-i, -æ, -a,														

#### 6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-itur-us, -a, -um,	<table> <tr><td>essem,</td><td><i>I</i></td></tr> <tr><td>esses,</td><td><i>you</i></td></tr> <tr><td>esset,</td><td><i>he</i></td></tr> <tr><td>essemus,</td><td><i>we</i></td></tr> <tr><td>essetis,</td><td><i>ye</i></td></tr> <tr><td>essent,</td><td><i>they</i></td></tr> </table>	essem,	<i>I</i>	esses,	<i>you</i>	esset,	<i>he</i>	essemus,	<i>we</i>	essetis,	<i>ye</i>	essent,	<i>they</i>	<i>might be about to hear.</i>
essem,	<i>I</i>													
esses,	<i>you</i>													
esset,	<i>he</i>													
essemus,	<i>we</i>													
essetis,	<i>ye</i>													
essent,	<i>they</i>													
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-itur-i, -æ, -a,														

*Or, Aud-iviss-em, -es, -et, &c.*

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-ire, *to hear.*

#### PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-ivisse, *to have heard.*

#### FUTURE TENSE.

Aud-itūrum esse, *to be about to hear.*

#### GERUNDS.

Aud-iendi, *of hearing.*  
 Aud-iendo, *in hearing.*  
 Aud-iendum, *to hear.*

#### SUPINES.

*Active.* Aud-Itum, *to hear;* *Passive.* Aud-itu, *to be heard.*

### PARTICIPLES.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

Aud-iens, *hearing;*

#### FUTURE in rus.

Aud-itūrus, *about to hear.*

**PERFECT wanting**—For it, is used *Quum* or *Qui aud-iviss-em, -es, -et, &c.*

## OBSERVATIONS ON THE TENSES.

*Obs. 1.* The Imperfect of the Fourth Conjugation ends sometimes in *ibam*, as *lenibat*, *vestibat* (Virgil), for *leniebat*, *vestiebat*.

*Obs. 2.* In the Perfect, and Tenses formed from it, *e* is often thrown out, and the first *i* shortened, as, for *audīvi*, *audīi*; for *audīverim*, *audīerim*.

*Obs. 3.* In other Perfects this *syncope* occurs where *r* or *s* follows *ee* or *vi*, as *laudādrunt*, for *laudāvērunt*; *laudāstis*, for *laudavistis*.

*Obs. 4.* The following Verbs *dīco*, *dūco*, *fūcio*, *fēro*, suffer *apocope* in the Second Person Singular of their Imperatives; as *dīc*, *dūc*, *fūc*, *fēr*, for *dīce*, *dūce*, *fūce*, *fēre*.

*Obs. 5.* The forms in *-to* of the Imperative are *emphatic*, and are used in Laws, Medical Prescriptions, and other *didactic* Formulæ; as,  
*Censores bini sunt.*

*Ter uncti*

Transnanto Tiberim somno quibus est opus alto.—Hor.

Laudato ingentia rura,

Exiguum colito.—Virg.

*Obs. 6.* The Future in *rus* makes with the Verb *sum* a Conjugation of its own, which expresses *intention* or *wish* to do a thing: as,

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Amatus	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{sum,} \\ \text{eram,} \\ \text{fui,} \\ \text{fueram,} \\ \text{ero,} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{I am} \\ \text{I was} \\ \text{I have been} \\ \text{I had been} \\ \text{I shall be} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sim,} \\ \text{essem,} \\ \text{fuerm,} \\ \text{fuissem,} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I may be} \\ \text{I might be} \\ \text{I might have been} \\ \text{I shall have been} \end{array} \right. \right\}$
			} about to love.

This is called by some the *Periphrastic* or *Circumlocutory* ( $\pi\epsilon\rho\iota$  *circum*,  $\phi\acute{\rho}\acute{\alpha}\zeta\omega$  *loquor*) Conjugation.

## DECLENSION OF VERBS PASSIVE.

1. Am-or, am-āris *vel* am-are, am-atus sum *vel* fui, am-ari;  
am-atus, am-andus: *to be loved.*
2. Mon-eor, mon-ēris *vel* mon-ere, mon-ītus sum *vel* fui,  
mon-eri; mon-ītus, mon-endus: *to be advised.*
3. Reg-or, reg-ēris *vel* reg-ere, rec-tus sum *vel* fui, reg-i;  
rec-tus, reg-endus: *to be ruled.*
4. Aud-ior, aud-īris *vel* aud-ire, aud-ītus sum *vel* fui, aud-  
iri; aud-ītus, aud-iendus: *to be heard.*

## FIRST CONJUGATION—AMOR.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*Am.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-or, Am-aris <i>vel</i> am-are, Am-atur,	<i>I am loved. thou art loved. he is loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-amur, Am-amini, Am-antur,	<i>We are loved. ye are loved. they are loved.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Was.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-abar, Am-abāris <i>vel</i> am-abare, Am-abatur,	<i>I was loved. thou wast loved. he was loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-abamur, Am-abamini, Am-abantur,	<i>We were loved. ye were loved. they were loved.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*Have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-atus sum <i>vel</i> fui, Am-atus es <i>v.</i> fuisti, Am-atus est <i>v.</i> fuit,	<i>I have been loved. thou hast been loved. he hath been loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-ati sumus <i>v.</i> fuimus, Am-ati estis <i>v.</i> fuistis, Am-ati sunt, fuerunt <i>v.</i> fuere,	<i>they have been loved.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Had been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-atus eram <i>vel</i> fueram,	<i>I had been loved.</i>
	Am-atus eras <i>v.</i> fueras,	<i>thou hadst been loved.</i>
	Am-atus erat <i>v.</i> fuerat,	<i>he had been loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-ati eramus <i>v.</i> fueramus,	<i>We had been loved.</i>
	Am-ati eratis <i>v.</i> fueratis,	<i>ye had been loved.</i>
	Am-ati erant <i>v.</i> fuerant,	<i>they had been loved.</i>

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE—*Shall or will be.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-abor,	<i>I shall or will be loved.</i>
	Am-abēris <i>vel</i> am-abere,	<i>thou shalt or wilt be loved.</i>
	Am-abitur,	<i>he shall or will be loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-abimur,	<i>We shall or will be loved.</i>
	Am-abimini,	<i>ye shall or will be loved.</i>
	Am-abuntur,	<i>they shall or will be loved.</i>

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE—*Shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-atus ero <i>vel</i> fuero,	<i>I shall have been loved.</i>
	Am-atus eris <i>v.</i> fueris,	<i>thou shalt have been loved.</i>
	Am-atus erit <i>v.</i> fuerit,	<i>he shall have been loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-ati erimus <i>v.</i> fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been loved.</i>
	Am-ati eritis <i>v.</i> fueritis,	<i>ye shall have been loved.</i>
	Am-ati erint <i>v.</i> fuerint,	<i>they shall have been loved.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. *No first Person.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-are, am-ātor,	<i>Be thou loved.</i>
	Am-ētur, am-ator,	<i>let him be loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-emur,	<i>Let us be loved.</i>
	Am-amini, am-aminor,	<i>be ye loved.</i>
	Am-entur, amantor,	<i>let them be loved.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*May, can, would, should, be.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-er,	<i>I may or can be loved.</i>
	Am-ēris <i>vel</i> am-ere,	<i>thou mayst or canst be loved.</i>
	Am-etur,	<i>he may or can be loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-emur,	<i>We may or can be loved.</i>
	Am-emini,	<i>ye may or can be loved.</i>
	Am-entur,	<i>they may or can be loved.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Might, could, should be.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-arer, Am-arēris <i>vel</i> am-arere, Am-aretur,	<i>I might or could be loved.</i> <i>thou mightst or couldst be loved.</i> <i>he might or could be loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-aremur, Am-aremini, Am-arentur,	<i>We might or could be loved.</i> <i>ye might or could be loved.</i> <i>they might or could be loved.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*May, should have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-atus sim <i>vel</i> fuerim, Am-atus sis <i>v.</i> fueris, Am-atus sit <i>v.</i> fuerit,	<i>I should have been loved.</i> <i>thou shouldst have been loved.</i> <i>he should have been loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-ati simus <i>v.</i> fuerimus, Am-ati sitis <i>v.</i> fueritis, Am-ati sint <i>v.</i> fuerint,	<i>We should have been loved.</i> <i>ye should have been loved</i> <i>they should have been loved.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Might, could, would have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-atus essem <i>vel</i> fuisset, Am-atus esses <i>v.</i> fuisses, Am-atus esset <i>v.</i> fuisset,	<i>I would have been loved.</i> <i>thou wouldst have been loved.</i> <i>he would have been loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-ati essemus <i>v.</i> fuissemus, Am-ati essetis <i>v.</i> fuissetis, Am-ati essent <i>v.</i> fuissent,	<i>We would have been loved.</i> <i>ye would have been loved.</i> <i>they would have been loved.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE.

Am-ari, *to be loved.*

## PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.

Am-atum esse *vel* fuisset, *to have been loved.*

## FUTURE TENSE.

Am-atum iri, *to be about to be loved.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT TENSE *wanting*.—For it, is used *Quum* or *Qui am-or,*  
*-aris, -atur, &c.*

## PRETERPERFECT TENSE.

Am-atus, *loved or being loved.*FUTURE *in dus.*Am-andus, *to be loved.*



## SECOND CONJUGATION—MONEOR.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*Am.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Mon-eor, Mon-eris <i>vel</i> mon-ere, Mon-etur,	<i>I am advised. thou art advised. he is advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Mon-emur, Mon-emini, Mon-entur,	<i>We are advised. ye are advised. they are advised.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Was.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Mon-ebar, Mon-ebaris <i>vel</i> mon-ebare, Mon-ebatur,	<i>I was advised. thou wast advised. he was advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Mon-ebamur, Mon-ebamini, Mon-ebantur,	<i>We were advised. ye were advised. they were advised.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*Have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Mon-itus sum <i>vel</i> fui, Mon-itus es <i>v.</i> fuisti, Mon-itus est <i>v.</i> fuit,	<i>I have been advised. thou hast been advised. he hath been advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Mon-iti sumus <i>v.</i> fuimus, Mon-iti estis <i>v.</i> fuistis, Mon-itisunt, fuerunt <i>v.</i> fuere,	<i>We have been advised. ye have been advised. they have been advised.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Had been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Mon-itus eram <i>vel</i> fueram, Mon-itus eras <i>v.</i> fueras, Mon-itus erat <i>v.</i> fuerat,	<i>I had been advised. thou hadst been advised. he had been advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Mon-iti eramus <i>v.</i> fueramus, Mon-iti eratis <i>v.</i> fueratis, Mon-iti erant <i>v.</i> fuerant,	<i>We had been advised. ye had been advised. they had been advised.</i>

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE—*Shall or will be.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Mon-ebor, Mon-ebëris <i>vel</i> mon-ebere, Mon-ebitur,	<i>I shall or will be advised. thou shalt or wilt be advised. he shall or will be advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Mon-ebimur, Mon-ebimini, Mon-ebuntur,	<i>We shall or will be advised. ye shall or will be advised. they shall or will be advised.</i>

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE—*Shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Mon-itus ero <i>vel</i> fuero,	<i>I shall have been advised.</i>
	Mon-itus eris <i>v.</i> fueris,	<i>thou shalt have been advised.</i>
	Mon-itus erit <i>v.</i> fuerit,	<i>he shall have been advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Mon-iti erimus <i>v.</i> fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been advised.</i>
	Mon-iti eritis <i>v.</i> fueritis,	<i>ye shall have been advised.</i>
	Mon-iti erunt <i>v.</i> fuerint,	<i>they shall have been advised.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. *No first Person.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Mon-ere, mon-etur,	<i>Be thou advised.</i>
	Mon-eatur, mon-etur,	<i>let him be advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Mon-eamur,	<i>Let us be advised.</i>
	Mon-emini, mon-eminor,	<i>be ye advised.</i>
	Mon-eantur, mon-entor,	<i>let them be advised.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*May, can, would, should be.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Mon-ear,	<i>I may or can be advised.</i>
	Mon-earis <i>vel</i> mon-eare,	<i>thou mayst or canst be advised.</i>
	Mon-eatur,	<i>he may or can be advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Mon-eamur,	<i>We may or can be advised.</i>
	Mon-eamini,	<i>ye may or can be advised.</i>
	Mon-eantur,	<i>they may or can be advised.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Might, could, should be.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Mon-erer,	<i>I might or could be advised.</i>
	Mon-erēris <i>vel</i> mon-erere,	<i>thou mightst or couldst be advised.</i>
	Mon-eretur,	<i>he might or could be advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Mon-eremur,	<i>We might or could be advised.</i>
	Mon-eremini,	<i>ye might or could be advised.</i>
	Mon-erentur,	<i>they might or could be advised.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*May, should have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Mon-itus sim <i>vel</i> fuerim,	<i>I should have been advised.</i>
	Mon-itus sis <i>v.</i> fueris,	<i>thou shouldst have been advised.</i>
	Mon-itus sit <i>v.</i> fuerit,	<i>he should have been advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Mon-iti simus <i>v.</i> fuerimus,	<i>We should have been advised.</i>
	Mon-iti sitis <i>v.</i> fueritis,	<i>ye should have been advised.</i>
	Mon-iti sint <i>v.</i> fuerint,	<i>they should have been advised.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Might, could, would, have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Mon-itus essem <i>vel</i> fuisssem,	<i>I would have been advised.</i>
	Mon-itus esses <i>v.</i> fuisses,	<i>thou wouldst have been advised.</i>
	Mon-itus esset <i>v.</i> fuisset,	<i>he would have been advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Mon-iti essemus <i>v.</i> fuisssemus,	<i>We would have been advised.</i>
	Mon-iti essetis <i>v.</i> fuissetis,	<i>ye would have been advised.</i>
	Mon-iti essent <i>v.</i> fuissent,	<i>they would have been advised.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE.

Mon-eri, *to be advised.*

## PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.

Mon-itum esse *vel* fuisse, *to have been advised.*

## FUTURE TENSE.

Mon-itum iri, *to be about to be advised.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT TENSE *wanting.*—For it, is used *Quum* or *Qui moneor, -eris, -etur, &c.*

## PRETERPERFECT TENSE.

Mon-itus, *advised or being advised.*

FUTURE *in dus.*

Mon-endus, *to be advised.*

## THIRD CONJUGATION—REGOR.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*Am.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Reg-or,	<i>I am ruled.</i>
	Reg-eris <i>vel</i> reg-ere,	<i>thou art ruled.</i>
	Reg-itur,	<i>he is ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Reg-imur,	<i>We are ruled.</i>
	Reg-imini,	<i>ye are ruled.</i>
	Reg-untur,	<i>they are ruled.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Was.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Reg-ebar, Reg-ebaris <i>vel</i> reg-ebare, Reg-ebatur,	<i>I was ruled.</i> <i>thou wast ruled.</i> <i>he was ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Reg-ebamur, Reg-ebamini, Reg-ebantur,	<i>We were ruled.</i> <i>ye were ruled.</i> <i>they were ruled.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*Have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Rec-tus sum <i>vel</i> fui, Rec-tus es <i>v.</i> fuisti, Rec-tus est <i>v.</i> fuit,	<i>I have been ruled.</i> <i>thou hast been ruled.</i> <i>he hath been ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Rec-ti sumus <i>v.</i> fuimus, Rec-ti estis <i>v.</i> fuistis, Rec-ti sunt, fuerunt <i>v.</i> fuere,	<i>We have been ruled.</i> <i>ye have been ruled.</i> <i>they have been ruled.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Had been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Rec-tus eram <i>vel</i> fueram, Rec-tus eras <i>v.</i> fueras, Rec-tus erat <i>v.</i> fuerat,	<i>I had been ruled.</i> <i>thou hadst been ruled.</i> <i>he had been ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Rec-ti eramus <i>v.</i> fueramus, Rec-ti eratis <i>v.</i> fueratis, Rec-ti erant <i>v.</i> fuerant,	<i>We had been ruled.</i> <i>ye had been ruled.</i> <i>they had been ruled.</i>

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE—*Shall or will be.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Reg-ar, Reg-eris <i>vel</i> reg-ere, Reg-etur,	<i>I shall or will be ruled.</i> <i>thou shalt or wilt be ruled.</i> <i>he shall or will be ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Reg-emur, Reg-emini, Reg-entur,	<i>We shall or will be ruled.</i> <i>ye shall or will be ruled.</i> <i>they shall or will be ruled.</i>

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE—*Shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Rec-tus ero <i>vel</i> fuero, Rec-tus eris <i>v.</i> fueris, Rec-tus erit <i>v.</i> fuerit,	<i>I shall have been ruled.</i> <i>thou shalt have been ruled.</i> <i>he shall have been ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Rec-ti erimus <i>v.</i> fuerimus, Rec-ti eritis <i>v.</i> fueritis, Rec-ti erunt <i>v.</i> fuerint,	<i>We shall have been ruled.</i> <i>ye shall have been ruled.</i> <i>they shall have been ruled.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

### PRESENT TENSE. *No first Person.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Reg-ere, reg-itor,	<i>Be thou ruled.</i>
	Reg-atur, reg-itor,	<i>let him be ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Reg-amur,	<i>Let us be ruled.</i>
	Reg-imini, reg-imini.	<i>be ye ruled.</i>
	Reg-antur, reg-untur,	<i>let them be ruled.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

### 1. PRESENT TENSE—*May, can, would, should be.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Reg-ar.	<i>I may or can be ruled.</i>
	Reg-aris <i>vel</i> reg-are.	<i>thou mayst or canst be ruled.</i>
	Reg-atur,	<i>he may or can be ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Reg-amur,	<i>We may or can be ruled.</i>
	Reg-amini,	<i>ye may or can be ruled.</i>
	Reg-antur,	<i>they may or can be ruled.</i>

### 2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Might, could, should be.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Reg-erer,	<i>I might or could be ruled.</i>
	Reg-eris <i>vel</i> reg-erere,	<i>thou mightst or couldst be ruled.</i>
	Reg-eretur,	<i>he might or could be ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Reg-eremur,	<i>We might or could be ruled.</i>
	Reg-erimini,	<i>ye might or could be ruled.</i>
	Reg-erentur,	<i>they might or could be ruled.</i>

### 3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*May, should have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Rec-tus sim <i>vel</i> fuerim,	<i>I should have been ruled.</i>
	Rec-tus sis <i>v.</i> fueris,	<i>thou shouldst have been ruled.</i>
	Rec-tus sit <i>v.</i> fuerit,	<i>he should have been ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Rec-ti simus <i>v.</i> fuerimus,	<i>We should have been ruled.</i>
	Rec-ti sitis <i>v.</i> fueritis,	<i>ye should have been ruled.</i>
	Rec-ti sint <i>v.</i> fuerint,	<i>they should have been ruled.</i>

### 4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Might, could, would have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Rec-tus essem <i>vel</i> fuisset,	<i>I would have been ruled.</i>
	Rec-tus esses <i>v.</i> fuisses,	<i>thou wouldst have been ruled.</i>
	Rec-tus esset <i>v.</i> fuisset,	<i>he would have been ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Rec-ti essemus <i>v.</i> fuissetus,	<i>We would have been ruled.</i>
	Rec-ti essetis <i>v.</i> fuissetis,	<i>ye would have been ruled.</i>
	Rec-ti essent <i>v.</i> fuissent,	<i>they would have been ruled.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE.

Reg-i, *to be ruled.*

## PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tum esse *vel* fuisse, *to have been ruled.*

## FUTURE TENSE.

Rec-tum iri, *to be about to be ruled.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT TENSE *wanting*.—For it, is used *Quum* or *Qui regor*,  
*-ēris -itur*, &c.

## PRETERPERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tus, *ruled or being ruled.*FUTURE *in dus*.Reg-endus, *to be ruled.*

## FOURTH CONJUGATION—AUDIOR.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*Am*.

<i>Sing.</i>	Aud-ior, Aud-iris <i>vel</i> aud-ire, Aud-itur,	<i>I am heard.</i> <i>thou art heard.</i> <i>he is heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Aud-imur, Aud-imini, Aud-iuntur,	<i>We are heard.</i> <i>ye are heard.</i> <i>they are heard.</i>

2. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Was*.

<i>Sing.</i>	Aud-iebar, Aud-iebaris <i>vel</i> aud-iebare, Aud-iebatur,	<i>I was heard.</i> <i>thou wast heard.</i> <i>he was heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Aud-iebamur, Aud-iebamini, Aud-iebantur,	<i>We were heard.</i> <i>ye were heard.</i> <i>they were heard.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*Have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Aud-itus sum <i>vel</i> fui, Aud-itus es <i>v.</i> fuisti, Aud-itus est <i>v.</i> fuit,	<i>I have been heard.</i> <i>thou hast been heard.</i> <i>he hath been heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Aud-iti sumus <i>v.</i> fuimus, Aud-iti estis <i>v.</i> fuistis, Aud-iti sunt, fuerunt <i>v.</i> fuere,	<i>We have been heard.</i> <i>ye have been heard.</i> <i>they have been heard.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Had been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Aud-itus eram <i>vel</i> fueram, Aud-itus eras <i>v.</i> fueras, Aud-itus erat <i>v.</i> fuerat,	<i>I had been heard.</i> <i>thou hadst been heard.</i> <i>he had been heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Aud-iti eramus <i>v.</i> fueramus, Aud-iti eratis <i>v.</i> fueratis, Aud-iti erant <i>v.</i> fuerant,	<i>We had been heard.</i> <i>ye had been heard.</i> <i>they had been heard.</i>

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE—*Shall or will be.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Aud-iar, Aud-iēris <i>vel</i> aud-iere, Aud-ietur,	<i>I shall or will be heard.</i> <i>thou shalt or wilt be heard.</i> <i>he shall or will be heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Aud-iemur, Aud-iemini, Aud-ientur,	<i>We shall or will be heard.</i> <i>ye shall or will be heard.</i> <i>they shall or will be heard.</i>

## 6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	Aud-itus ero <i>vel</i> fuero, Aud-itus eris <i>v.</i> fueris, Aud-itus erit <i>v.</i> fuerit,	<i>I shall have been heard.</i> <i>thou shalt have been heard.</i> <i>he shall have been heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Aud-iti erimus <i>v.</i> fuerimus, Aud-iti eritis <i>v.</i> fueritis, Aud-iti erunt <i>v.</i> fuerint,	<i>We shall have been heard.</i> <i>ye shall have been heard.</i> <i>they shall have been heard.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. *No first Person.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Aud-ire, aud-itor, Aud-iat, aud-itor,	<i>Be thou heard.</i> <i>let him be heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Aud-iamur, Aud-imini, aud-iminor, Aud-iantur, aud-iuntor,	<i>Let us be heard.</i> <i>be ye heard.</i> <i>let them be heard.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*May, can, would, should be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-iar,	<i>I may or can be heard.</i>
Aud-iāris <i>vel</i> aud-iare	<i>thou mayst or canst be heard.</i>
Aud-iatur,	<i>he may or can be heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iamur,	<i>We may or can be heard.</i>
Aud-iamini,	<i>ye may or can be heard.</i>
Aud-iantur,	<i>they may or can be heard.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Might, could, should be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-irer,	<i>I might or could be heard.</i>
Aud-irēris <i>vel</i> aud-irere,	<i>thou mightst or couldst be heard.</i>
Aud-iretur,	<i>he might or could be heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iremur,	<i>We might or could be heard.</i>
Aud-iremini,	<i>ye might or could be heard.</i>
Aud-irentur,	<i>they might or could be heard.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*May, should have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-itus sim <i>vel</i> fuerim,	<i>I should have been heard.</i>
Aud-itus sis <i>v.</i> fueris,	<i>thou shouldst have been heard.</i>
Aud-itus sit <i>v.</i> fuerit,	<i>he should have been heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iti simus <i>v.</i> fuerimus,	<i>We should have been heard.</i>
Aud-iti sitis <i>v.</i> fueritis,	<i>ye should have been heard.</i>
Aud-iti sint <i>v.</i> fuerint,	<i>they should have been heard.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Would, might, could have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-itus essem <i>vel</i> fuisset,	<i>I would have been heard.</i>
Aud-itus esses <i>v.</i> fuisset,	<i>thou wouldst have been heard.</i>
Aud-itus esset <i>v.</i> fuisset,	<i>he would have been heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iti essemus <i>v.</i> fuissetus,	<i>We would have been heard.</i>
Aud-iti essetis <i>v.</i> fuissetis,	<i>ye would have been heard.</i>
Aud-iti essent <i>v.</i> fuissent,	<i>they would have been heard.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-iri, *to be heard.*

## PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-itum esse *vel* fuisset, *to have been heard.*

## FUTURE TENSE.

Aud-itum iri, *to be about to be heard.*



## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT *wanting*.—For it, is used, *Quum* or *Qui audior, -tris, -itur* &c.

## PRETERPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-itus, *heard or being heard.*

FUTURE *in dus*.

Aud-iendus, *to be heard.*

## OBSERVATIONS ON THE TENSES IN THE PASSIVE VOICE.

*Obs. 1.* All Present, Imperfect, and First Future Indicative Tenses, in the Passive Voice, are formed from the corresponding ones in the Active by changing *o* into *or*, or *m* into *r*; as *amo, amor; amabam, amabar; amabo, amabor; amem, amer; amarem, amarer*: so in *moneo, rego, audio*.

*Obs. 2.* The Second Person Imperative Passive is always the same as the Infinitive Active; as *amāre, monēre, regēre, audīre*.

*Obs. 3.* The Infinitive Passive has sometimes another form besides *i*; viz. in *ier*; as *amarier*.

Thus, *Spargier agno*.—*Hor. Dacier, hic est*.—*Per.*

*Obs. 4.* No Verbs, except Deponents and Neuter Passives, have a Participle of the Perfect in an Active Sense.

Thus: say not *ventus*, having come, but use *quum* with the Pluperfect Subjunctive; thus, *quum venissem*. You will say *profectus*, having set out, because *proficiscor* is a deponent; you will say *confusus*, having trusted, because *fido* is a Neuter Passive.

(See under PARTICIPLES, p. 31, *Obs. 5.*)

*Obs. 5.* The Gerund and Future *in dus* of the Third and Fourth Conjugations ended, in old Latin, in *undus*; as *gerundus, audiundus*.

*Obs. 6.* The Futures *in dus* make, with the Verb *sum*, a Conjugation of their own, which expresses *necessity*, or *fitness*; as,

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		
Amandus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sum,} \\ \text{eram,} \\ \text{fui,} \\ \text{fueram,} \\ \text{ero,} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \text{ am} \\ I \text{ was} \\ I \text{ have been} \\ I \text{ had been} \\ I \text{ shall be} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sim,} \\ \text{essem,} \\ \text{fuerim,} \\ \text{fuissem,} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \text{ may be} \\ I \text{ might be} \\ I \text{ might have been} \\ I \text{ should have been} \end{array} \right\}$	} to be loved.

## INFIN.

*Amandum esse, fuisse, fore.*

This is called the *Periphrastic Conjugation*.

*Obs. 7.* Also the Gerund in *dum* (or Gerund of *Necessity*), makes a *Periphrastic Conjugation* with *sum* : as,

Amandum	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{mihi} \\ \text{tibi} \\ \text{illi} \\ \text{nobis} \\ \text{vobis} \\ \text{illis} \end{array} \right\}$	est,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \\ \text{you} \\ \text{he} \\ \text{we} \\ \text{ye} \\ \text{they} \end{array} \right\}$	} must love.
---------	---	------	---	--------------

So, *amandum erat, erit, fuit, fuerat, fuerit, &c.*, for the other Tenses.

*Obs. 8.* Examples of GERUNDS, and of the PARTICIPLES in *dus*, the latter used as Adjectives:—

*Quæ finis standi?—nos fiendo ducimus horas.*

*Nate Deâ, superanda omnis fortuna ferendo est.*

*Sublimes animas ad cœlum hinc ire putandum est.*

*Parcendum teneris : et dum se lætus ad auras*

*Palmas agit, laxis per purum immissus habenis,*

*Ipsa acies nondum falcis tentanda, sed uncis*

*Carpendæ manibus frondes, interque legendæ.*

*Texendæ sepes etiam et pecus omne tenendum—*

*Sollicitanda tamen tellus pulvisque movendus,*

*Et jam maturis metuendus Jupiter uvis—Virg.*

*Obs. 9.* Of SUPINE in *um*:—

*Missi sunt speculatum arcem.*

*Obs. 10.* This may be also put thus:—

Missi sunt	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ad speculandum arcem,} \\ \text{ad arcem speculandam,} \\ \text{speculandæ arcis causâ,} \\ \text{speculaturi, or qui specularentur,} \\ \text{or ut specularentur} \\ \text{arcem.} \end{array} \right\}$
------------	--

## IRREGULAR VERBS DECLINED.

CERTAIN Verbs vary from the general rule, and are formed in the manner following :—

1. Possum, pōtēs, potui, posse; potens: *to be able.*
2. Vōlo, vīs, volui, velle; volendi, volendo, volendum; volens: *to be willing.*
3. Nōlo, nonvis, nolui, nolle; nolendi, nolendo, nolendum; nolens: *to be unwilling.*
4. Mālo, mavis, malui, malle; malendi, malendo, malendum; malens: *to be more willing or to have rather.*
5. Edo, ēdis *vel* ēs, edi, edere *vel* esse; edendi, edendo, edendum; esum, esu; edens, esūrus: *to eat.*
6. Fēro, fers, tūli, ferre; ferendi, ferendo, ferendum; lātum, latu; ferens, laturus: *to bear or suffer.*
7. Fīo, fis, factus sum *vel* fui, fīeri; factus, faciendus: *to be made or done.*
8. Fēror, ferris *vel* ferre, latus sum *vel* fui, ferri; latus, ferendus: *to be borne or suffered.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*I am able, &c.*

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>		
Possum,	potes,	potest,	Possūmus,	potestis,	possunt.
Volo,	vis,	vult,	volūmus,	vultis,	volunt.
Nolo,	nonvis,	nonvult,	nolūmus,	nonvultis,	nolunt.
Malo,	mavis,	mavult,	malūmus,	mavultis,	malunt.
Edo,	edis <i>v.</i> es,	edit <i>v.</i> est,	edīmus,	editis <i>v.</i> estis,	edunt.
Fero,	fers,	fert,	ferīmus,	fertis,	ferunt.
Fīo,	fis,	fit,	fīmus,	fītis,	fīunt.
Feror,	ferris <i>v.</i> ferre,	fertur,	ferīmur,	ferimini,	feruntur.

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*I was able, &c.*

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>		
Pot-eram,	eras,	erat,	erāmus,	eratis,	erant.
Vol-ebam,	} ebas,	} ebat,	} ebāmus,	} ebatis,	} ebant.
Nol-ebam,					
Mal-ebam,					
Ed-ebam,					
Fer-ebam,					
Fi-ebam,					
Fer-ebar,	ebaris v. ebare, ebatur,		ebāmur,	ebamini,	ebantur.

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*I have been able, &c.*

Potu-i,	} isti,	} it,	} imus,	} istis,	} erunt vel ere.	
Volu-i,						
Nolu-i,						
Malu-i,						
Ed-i,						
Tul-i,						
Fact-us	sum	es	est	i sumus	estis	sunt, fuērunt,
	vel	vel	vel	vel	vel	vel
Lat-us	fui,	fuisti,	fuit,	fuīmus,	fuistis,	fuēre.

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*I had been able, &c.*

Potu-eram,	} eras,	} erat,	} erāmus,	} eratis,	} erant.	
Volu-eram,						
Nolu-eram,						
Malu-eram,						
Ed-eram,						
Tul-eram,						
Fact-us	eram	eras	erat	i erāmus	eratis	erant
	vel	vel	vel	vel	vel	vel
Lat-us	fuēram, fueras, fuerat,			fuerāmus,	fueratis,	fuerant.

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE—*I shall or will be able, &c.*

Pot-ero,	eris,	erit,	erimus,	eritis,	erunt.
Vol-am,	} es,	} et,	} emus,	} etis,	} ent.
Nol-am,					
Mal-am,					
Ed-am,					
Fer-am,					
Fi-am,					
Fer-ar,	eris v. ere,	etur,	emur,	emini,	entur.

5. SECOND FUTURE TENSE—*I shall have been able, &c.*

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>			
Potu-ëro, Volu-ëro, Nolu-ëro, Malu-ëro, Ed-ëro, Tul-ëro.	}	eris,	erit,	erimus,	eritis,	erint.	
Fact-us							ero
		<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	
Lat-us	}	fu-ëro,	fu-eris,	fu-erit,	fuerimus,	fueritis,	fuerunt.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Obs. *Possum, volo, malo*, have no Imperative Mood.

PRESENT TENSE—*Be thou willing, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Noli, nolito,	Nolite, nolitöte.
Ede, edito } edat, edito }	Edämus { edite, editöte, } edant,
<i>vel</i> es, esto } <i>vel</i> esto, }	<i>vel</i> este, estote } edunto.
Fer, ferto; ferat, ferto,	Ferämus; ferte, fertote; fer-ant, -unt .
Fi, fito; fiat, fito,	Fiämus; fite, fitote; fiant, fiunto.
Fer-re, fer-tor; fer-ätur, [fer-tor,	Fer-ämur; fer-imini, fer-iminor; fer- [-antur, -untor.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*I may be able, &c.*

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	
Poss-im, Vel-im, Nol-im, Mal-im, Ed-am, Fer-am, Fi-am, Fer-ar,	}	is, it,	Imus, itis, int.
	äris <i>vel</i> äre, atur.	ämur, amini, antur.	

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*I might be able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Poss-em, Vell-em, Noll-em, Mall-em, Edër-em <i>vel</i> Ess-em, Ferr-em, Fiër-em, Ferr-er,	} es,	et,	ëmus,	etis,	ent.
			ëris <i>vel</i> ëre, etur.	ëmur,	emini,

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*I should have been able, &c.*

Potu-ërim, Volu-ërim, Nolu-ërim, Malu-ërim, Ed-ërim, Tul-ërim, Fact-us Lat-us,	} eris,	erit,	erïmus,	erïtis,	erint.
			sim sis sit <i>vel vel vel</i>	i simus sitis sint <i>vel vel vel</i>	fuërim, fueris, fuerit,

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*I would have been able, &c.*

Potu-isseem, Volu-isseem, Nolu-isseem, Malu-isseem, Ed-isseem, Tul-isseem, Fact-us Lat-us,	} isses,	isset,	issëmus,	issetis,	issent.
			essem esses esset <i>vel vel vel</i>	i essëmus essetis essent <i>vel vel vel</i>	fuissem, fuisses, fuis- [set,

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*To be able, &c.*

Posse.		Nolle.		Edère <i>vel</i> esse.		Fiëri.
Valle.		Malle.		Ferre.		Ferri.

PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*To have been able, &c.*

Potuisse.	Noluisse.	Edisse.	Fact-um esse vel fuisse.
Voluisse.	Maluisse.	Tulisse.	Lat-um esse vel fuisse.

FUTURE TENSE—*To be about to eat, &c.*

Esūrum esse.	Factum iri.
Latūrum esse.	Latum iri.

*Obs.* *Possum, volo, nolo, malo*, have no Future Tense of the Infinitive Mood.

OBSERVATIONS ON IRREGULAR VERBS.

*Obs.* 1. *Pos-sum* is from *pōsis-sum*, *pōtē-sum*; I am able. *Nōlo*, is from *non volo*; *mālo*, is from *magis-volo*, or *māgē-vōlo*.

*Obs.* 2. The *r* is doubled only in those tenses of *Fero*, where *e* has been thrown out: as, for *ferērem*, (like *regerem*) the Imperfect Subjunctive according to rule, is used *ferrem*: so for Infinitive Active *ferere* is used *ferre*: so for the Second Person Indicative Passive *fereris* is used *ferris*.

*Obs.* 3. *Tuli* is for *tētūli*, from the old word *tulo*, a form of *tollo* connected with *τλάω, τληρόν*, whence *lātūm*.

*Obs.* 4. With *Fio* cp. *φύω*, § 94.

*Eo, to go*, is also a verb irregular.

*Eo, is, ivi, ire, itum, iens, itūrus.*

INDIC. MOOD. } *Sing.* *Eo, is, it.* *Plur.* *Imus, itis, eunt.*

*Pres. T.* } *Sing.* *Ibam, ibas, ibat.* *Plur.* *Ibāmus, ibatis, [ibant.*

*Preterimperf. Tense.* } *Sing.* *Ibo, ibis, ibit.* *Plur.* *Ibīmus, ibitis, ibunt.*

*Future Tense.* *Sing.* *I, ibo, ibis, ibit.* *Plur.* *Ibīmus, ibitis, ibunt.*

IMPERAT. *M.* *Sing.* *I, ito; eat, ito.* *Plur.* *Eāmus; ite, itōte; [eant, eunto.*

SUBJUNCT. *M.* *Sing.* *Eam, eas, eat.* *Plur.* *Eāmus, eatis, eant.*

GERUNDS. *Eundi, eundo, eundum.*

PARTICIPLE *Pres. Tense.* *Iens; gen. eūntis.*

In all other Moods and Tenses *Eo* is declined like *audio*.

Cp. *εἶμι, ἴδο*, § 80.

*Obs.* 1. In like manner are the compounds of *Eo* declined; also *queo*, to be able; and *nequeo*, to be unable; except that these two last have no Imperative Mood nor Gerunds.

*Obs.* 2. The compounds of *Eo* rarely take *ivi*, but *ii*, in the Perfect and Tenses formed from it; as *redeo*, I return, makes *redii*, *rediissem*, and so forth. So *abeo*, *abii*, and the rest, as, *obeo*, *intereo*, *pereo*, *vëneo*, I am sold, from *vënum eo*.

---

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

---

VERBS are called *Defective*, that have only some particular Tenses and Persons; as,

**AIO**, *I say ay*, or *I affirm*.

INDIC. MOOD, *Pres. Tense*, *Sing.* *Āio*, *āis*, *ait.* *Plur.* *Aiunt.*  
*Preterimp. T. Sing.* *Aiē-bam*, *bas*, *bat.*  
*Plur.* *Aie-bāmus*, *batis*, *bant.*  
*Preterperf. T. Sing.* *Aisti.* *Plur.* *Aistis.*

SUBJUNCT. M., *Present T. Sing.* *Aias*, *aiat.* *Plur.* *Aiant.*

*Obs.* See *Inquam*, p. 68.

**AUSIM**, *I may dare*.

INDIC. OR POTENT. MOOD, *Sing.* *Ausim*, *ausis*, *ausit.*  
*Plur.* *Ausint.*

*Obs.* *Ausim* is an old Perfect Subjunctive from *audeo*. (Compare *faxim*).

**ĀVĒ**, or **HAVĒ**, *Hail!*

IMPERATIVE MOOD, *Sing.* *Ave*, *avēto.* *Pl.* *Avēte*, *avetōte.*  
 INFINITIVE MOOD. *Avēre.*

**SALVĒ**, *God save you!*

INDICAT. M. *Future Tense*, *Sing.* *Salvēbis.*  
 IMPERATIVE MOOD, *Sing.* *Salve*, *salvēto.* *Plur.* *Salvēte.*  
 INFINITIVE MOOD, *Salvēre.*

**CĔDŎ**, *Give me.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD, *Sing.* *Cedo.* *Plur.* *Cette*, *Cedīte.*

**FAXO** or **FAXIM**, *I will or may do it;*

INDIC. OR POT. M. *Fut. T.* *Sing.* *Faxo vel faxim*, *faxis*, *faxit.*  
*Plur.* *Faximus*, *faxitis*, *faxint.*

*Obs.* *Faxo* is an old Second Future for *fecero*. *Faxim* is an old Perfect Subjunctive for *fecerim*.



QUÆSO, *Prithes.*

INDIC. M. *Present Tense.* *Sing.* Quæso, quæsis, quæsit.  
*Plur.* Quæsumus.

INFIN. M. Quæserè. PARTICIPLE, Quæsens.

INQUAM, *Spy I.*

INDIC. M. *Present Tense.* *Sing.* In-quam, in-quis, in-quit.  
*Plur.* In-quimus, in-quit.

*Preterimp. T.* *Sing.* In-quiēbat, in-quiēbat.

*Plur.* In-quiēbant.

*Preterp. Tense,* *Sing.* In-quiī, in-quisti.

*Future Tense,* *Sing.* In-quiēs, in-quist.

IMPERATIVE MOOD, *Sing.* In-que, in-quito.

*Obs. 1.* *Inquam* is used to quote what another said, or to repeat what one has said oneself. It never stands the first word in a sentence.

*Obs. 2.* *Ait* introduces an *oratio obliqua*; but *inquit*, an *oratio recta*.

*Example*—

Nil *ait* esse prius, melius nil cælibe vitâ.

“ Nil satis est” *inquit* “ quia tanti quantum habes sis.”

*Obs. 3.* *Ait* is used for both purposes by the Poets.

MEMINI, *I remember.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD, *Sing.* Memento. *Plur.* Mementote.

CŒPI, *I begin.*

INDIC. M. *Preterperf. T.* *Sing.* Cœpi, cœpisti.

PARTICIP. *Fut. in rus,* Cœpturus. *Particip. Pass.* Cœptus.

*Obs.* With an infinitive Passive, not *cœpi* is used, but *cœptus sum*; as, *Urbs obsideri cœpta est.* So, *desitus sum* for *desii*.

ODI, *I hate.*

INDIC. M. *Preterperf. T.* *Sing.* Odi, odisti, odit.

*Plur.* Odērunt.

PARTICIP. *Preterperf. T.* Osus. *Fut. in rus,* Osurus.

NOVI, *I know*; and MEMINI, *I remember.* These two verbs have the tenses only that are formed from the preterperfect tense of the indicative mood; as of

*Memin-i* are formed *memin-eram, -erim, -issem, -ero, -isse.*

In like manner do *cœpi* and *odi* also form these tenses.

*Novi* contracts its tenses, as, *novisti, nôsti; noveram, nôram.*

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

---

VERBS, when expressed in general, and which in English take the word *It* before them, are called *Impersonals*; as,

It delighteth, *delectat, delectabat, delectavit, &c.*

It becometh, *deceat, decebat, decuit, &c.*

It is fought, *pugnatur, pugnabatur, pugnatum est, &c.*

It seemeth, *videtur, videbatur, videbitur, visum est, &c.*

IMPERSONALS are thus declined:

PRESENT, Juvat, <i>Sing.</i>	{	me, te, illum,	}	<i>it delights</i>	{	<i>me, thee, him,</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	{	nos, vos, illos,	}		{	<i>us, you, them.</i>
IMPERF. Juvabat.						
PERFECT, Juvit.						

and so forth.

For the Imperative, you will use the Subjunctive: as, Be thou ashamed; *Pudeat te.*

---

## OF AN ADVERB.

---

AN ADVERB is a part of speech joined to Verbs (*ad verba*), Adjectives, and Nouns, to qualify their signification; and answers the question, *how?* as, *How* does he speak? *How* do they write? He speaks *well*; they write *badly*.

AN ADVERB is to a Verb what an Adjective is to a Substantive.

## ADVERBS OF PLACE.—Cp. § 38, Obs. 2; and § 113.

<i>Where?</i>	<i>whence?</i>	<i>whither?</i>	<i>by what way?</i>	<i>in what direction?</i>	<i>how far?</i>
Ubi?	unde?	quo?	qua?	quorsum?	quâtenus?
Here,	hence,	hither,	by this way,		thus far,
Hic,	hinc,	huc,	hâc,		hâctenus,
There,	thence,	thither,	by that way,		so far,
Ibi,	inde,	eo,	es,		eâtenus.
<i>Where you are,</i>	<i>from your place,</i>	<i>to your place,</i>	<i>by your way,</i>	<i>in that direction,</i>	
Isthic,	isthinc,	isthuc,	isthac.		illorsum.
<i>Where he is,</i>	<i>from that place,</i>	<i>to that place,</i>	<i>by his way,</i>		
Illic,	illinc,	illuc,	illac,		
<i>In the same place,</i>	<i>from the same place,</i>	<i>to the same place,</i>	<i>by the same way,</i>		
Ibidem,	indidem,	eodem,	eâdem.		
<i>In both places,</i>	<i>from both sides,</i>				
Utrobique,	utrinque.				
<i>Every where,</i>	<i>from all sides,</i>				
Ubique,	undique.				
<i>Somewhere,</i>	<i>from some place or other,</i>	<i>to some place,</i>	<i>by some way,</i>		<i>to some point,</i>
Alicubi,	alicunde,	aliquo,	aliquâ,		aliquâtenus*.
<i>Where you please,</i>	<i>whence you please,</i>	<i>to any place you like,</i>	<i>by any way you like,</i>		
Ubiuis,	or ubilibet,	undêvis,	undelibet,		
<i>Any where,</i>		<i>to any place,</i>	<i>quavis quolibet,</i>		
Uspiam,	usquam,	quoquam,	quoquam,		
<i>Elsewhere,</i>	<i>from another place,</i>	<i>to another place,</i>	<i>by another way,</i>	<i>in some other direction,</i>	
Aliibi,	aliunde,	alio,	aliam,	alorsum.	
<i>Wherever,</i>	<i>from what place soever,</i>	<i>whithersoever,</i>	<i>by whatsoever way,</i>	<i>in whatsoever direction.</i>	
Ubiuncunque,	undeunde,	quocunque,	quoquo,	quâcunque,	quâquâ,
<i>No where,</i>					quoquoaversus†.
Nusquam,					

\* Add to these—*To a certain point, quâdamtenus.* Example: *Est quâdam proclivitate, si non datur ultra.*—*Hor.*  
 † Add to these—*To the right, dextrorsum (dextro-versum).* *To the left, sinistrorsum.* *Inwards, introrsum.* *Within, intus.* *Backwards, retrorsum.* *Upwards, sursum.* *Downwards, deorsum.* *Under, subtus.*

*Obs. 1. Ubique* is used after *omnis qui, quotquot, quicquid*; in other cases, *usquequaque* is used.

*Obs. 2.* In these Adverbs *tenus* always takes the Ablative Case and Feminine Gender: as *hęc-tenus*.

---

ADVERBS OF TIME.

Cp. § 114.

I. WHEN, quando?

*Now, nunc* (νῦν).

*To-day, hōdiē* (hoc die).

*Then, tunc, tum.*

*Yesterday, hērī* (χθές).

*Before, ante, antea.*

*After, post, postea.*

*At that time, long before or after, olim, (ollus, ille), definite; quondam, indefinite.*

*Long since, dūdum, pridem.*

*Lately, nūper* (νέον-κτερ).

*The day before, pridie.*

*The day before yesterday, nūdius tertius* (nunc dies tertius).

*In the morning, manē.*

*By day, interdiū.*

*In the evening, vesperi* (εσπέρας).

*By night, noctu* (νυκτός).

*To-morrow, cras.*

*The day after, postridie.*

*The day after to-morrow, perendie, (peremptā die).*

*Next day, soon, propēdiem.*

*Very soon, jamjam, mox, stātim, protinus, illico* (in lōco), cito, confestim.

*Not yet, nondum.*

*At some time, aliquando, interdum, nonnunquam.*

*In the mean time, interea, intērim.*

*Always, semper, nunquam non.*

*At length, tandem, denique, aliquando.*

*Never, nunquam.*

H. HOW OFTEN? Quōties? (πούσας).

*Every day, quotidie.*

*Every year, quotannis.*

*Often, sæpe, crebro, sæpènumero.*  
*So often, toties.*  
*From time to time, identidem, subinde.*  
*Generally, plerumque.*  
*Seldom, raro.*

III. **HOW LONG? Quamdiu? To what time? quousque?**

*So long, tantisper.*  
*Some (long) time, aliquandiu, aliquantisper.*  
*A little time, parumper, paulisper.*

IV. **OF THINGS IN PROGRESS.**

*One after another in succession, deinceps.*  
*Day after day, indies.*

---

**ADVERBS OF QUANTITY.**

**HOW MUCH? Quantum? Much, multum, admòdum.**  
*So much, tantum; little, paulillum.*  
*Too much, nimis, nimium.*  
*Too little, parum.*  
*Enough, satis, abunde.*

(For ADVERBS of ORDER or RANK, see above, p. 19, under Numerals.)

---

**ADVERBS—INTERROGATIVE, AFFIRMATIVE, NEGATIVE.**

**INTERROGATIVE, which ask questions, are DIRECT or INDIRECT.**

**DIRECT—***Cur?* (for *cui rei?*) *quare?* (for *quã rã?*) *why? quomòdo?*  
*how? ut? how?*

*Ut valet? ut meminit nostri?—Hor.*

*Quin?* (*quid ne*), *why not?*

*Quin potius pacem æternam pactosque hymeneos*  
*Exercemus?—Virg.*

*Num? numne?* expecting answer **No.**

*Non? nonne?* expecting answer **YES.**

*An? ne?* in a dubitative sense.

*Obs.* Hence *hiccine* (*hiccè-ne*) is always interrogative.

*Examples.*

- Num?* ——— Cocto *num* adest honor idem?—*Hor.*  
 — Nonne vides, croceos ut Tmolus odores,  
 India mittat ebur, molles sua thura Sabæi?—*Virg.*
- An?* Auditis? *An* me ludit amabilis  
 Insania?—*Hor.*
- Ne?* Novistine locum potiore *rure* beato?—*Hor.*
- Ne—an?* Furor *ne* cœcus, *an* rapit vis acrior?—*Hor.*
- An—anne?* *An* mare quod suprâ, memorem, quodque alluit infrâ?  
*Anne* lacus tantos?—*Virg.*

## INDIRECT:

- An?* Romulum post hos priùs, *an* quietum  
 Pompili regnum memorem, *an* superbos  
 Tarquinî fasces, dubito, *an* Catonis  
 Nobile lethum—*Hor.*
- An?* Ambigitur quid enim? Castor sciat, *an* Docilis plus—*Hor.*
- Ne—an?* Intererit multum Davusne loquatur, *an* heros,  
 Maturusne senex, *an* adhuc florente juventâ  
 Fervidus; et, matrona potens, *an* sedula nutrix—*Hor.*
- Utrum—an?* Ipse quis sit, *utrum* sit, *an* non sit, id quoque nescit—*Catull.*
- An non?* Quid refert dictis ignoscat Mutius, *an non?*—*Juv.*

AFFIRMATIVE, in reply: *etiam, sane, ita vero, utique, imo vero.*

By means of two negatives: *non possum non, non possum quin, nemo non.*

NEGATIVE, in reply: *non vero, minimè gentium, nihil minus, nego ita esse.*

*Obs. Haud scio an,* means *perhaps*; *as, fors-an, forsit-an.*

*Ne quidem,* not even; the emphatic word stands *between.*

*Ne nocturna quidem* carpentes pensa puellæ

*Nescivere* hyemem—*Virg.*

Not—denying a fact or supposition: *Non*: *as,* You say that I know; or you ask me whether I know; but the fact is, I do *not* know, *Non scio.*

Not—Do not, in prohibitions: *Nē*; *as, Ne facias hoc,* Do not do this.

*Obs. Say, ne quis* for *ut nemo,* and *ne quid* for *ut nihil.*

Not—by no means—*Haud*; especially with other negatives, or extenuations; *as, By no means ill—Haud male*—and particularly with Adverbs, Adjectives, and Impersonals.

By no means, *haudquâquam, nequâquam, neufquam.*

*Examples.*

*Haud male* Telemachus, proles patientis Ulyssæi,

*Non est aptus equis* Ithacæ locus—*Hor.*

*Haud ignara ac non incauta* futuri—*Hor.*

ADVERBS are compared, by taking the Neuter of the Comparative of the Adjective, from which they come, as their Comparative; and by changing the last syllable of its Superlative into *mè*, for their Superlative: as, *doctè, doctiùs, doctissimè*; *pulchrè, pulchriùs, pulcherrimè*; *malè, pejùs, pessimè*.

*Obs.* Here belong the Diminutive forms, as *sapiuscülè, meliuscülè, breviuscülè*.

## OF A CONJUNCTION.



A CONJUNCTION is a part of speech that joineth together (*conjungit*) words and sentences: as, my father *and* my mother.

COPULATIVE, which unite, are—*et, ac, atque, necnon, etiam, quoque, que* (enclitic), and,

*neque, nec*, neither.

*Obs.* *Ac* stands only before Consonants.

DISJUNCTIVE—*aut, vel, sive, seu, ve* (enclitic), or. Here belong those which are repeated or united with some other Conjunction in the same clause; as,

Either followed by or—*aut, aut; vel, vel*.

Both followed by and—*cum, tum; et, et; tum, tum; tam, quam*.

Now followed by then—*modo, modo; modo, nunc*.

Neither by nor—*neque, neque; neque, nec; nec, neque; nec, nec*.

Not only by but also—*non modo, or non solum, sed etiam*.

Whether it be so, or so—*sive, seu*.

*Examples.*

*Et* followed by *et*,

*Et sapit et mecum facit et Jove judicat æquo*—*Hor.*

*Et* followed by *que*,

*Et* studiis annos septem dedit, insenuit*que*—*Hor.*

*Que* followed by *et*,

Tribula*que*, trahæ*que*, *et* iniquo pondere rastro—*Virg.*

*Que* followed by *que*, (in poetry),

Nesæe, Spio*que*, Thalia*que*, Cymodoce*que*—*Virg.*

*On the difference of AUT and VEL, and the use of SIVE, SEU, NEVE, NEU, and VE.*

**AUT** diversa sibi sensu et contraria jungit;

**VEL** dicta emendat, vel dictis addere gaudet;

**SIVE** et **SEU** similes rerum *supponere* casus;

**NEVE** et **NEU** prohibent: **AUT** vertitur in **VE** Poetis.

Omnia quæ lyrico demonstrat carmine Flaccus,—

*Quem Virum AUT Heroa lyrâ, VEL acri*

*Tibid sumes celebrare, Clio?*

*AUT in umbrosis Heliconis oris,*

*AUT super Pindo, gelidove in Hæmo.—*

*Ille SEU Parthos Latio imminentes*

*Egerit justo domitos triumpho,*

*SIVE subjectos Orientis oris*

*Seras et Indos—*

*NEVE te nostris vitii iniquum*

*Ocyor aura*

*Tollat—*

*NEU sinas Medos equitare inultos,*

*Te duce, Cæsar.*

**AFFIRMATIVE**—Surely, verily, *nae* (*val*, generally before Pronouns, *præfecto*, (pro-facto); *scilicet*, (scire-licet) often ironical; *nimirum*, (ne mirum sit); *nempe*, (nam-pe); *quip-pe*, (quid-pe), generally introducing a reason.

**CONCESSIVE**—Although, *etsi*, *etiamsi*, *tametsi*, *licet*, *quamquam*, *quamvis*, *ut*; however much you like, *quantumvis*.



OPPOSING—Yet, *at, atqui, attamen, verum, enimvero, sed, tamen, verumtamen.*

CONDITIONAL—If, *si, si forte*; if only, *si modo*; if however, *si tamen, sin, sin autem, sin vero, sin minus*; except, *nisi, ni, nisi forte*; provided, *dummodo.*

CAUSAL—For, *etenim, enim, nam, namque*; since, *cum, quando, quia, quod, quoniam.*

CONCLUSIVE—Therefore, *ergo, igitur, idcirco, ideo, itaque, quocirca.*

FINAL—In order that, *ut, quo*; lest, *ne, ut ne, neve, neu, quin, quominus.*

TEMPORAL—Before that, *antequam, priusquam*; after that, *postquam*; until, *donec, quoad, dum*; whilst, *donec, quamdiu, dum, quoad*; so soon as, *simul ac*; so often as, *quoties.*

## OF A PREPOSITION.

A PREPOSITION is a part of speech most commonly set before (*præposita*) another word; as, *ad dextram*, on the right hand: or else is joined in composition; as, *in-doctus*, unlearned; *per-jucundus*, very pleasant; *præ-dives*, very rich; *sub-obscurus*, rather obscure.

The Prepositions following have an Ablative Case after them :

*A, ab, abs*, from or by.

*Absque*, without.

*Coram*, before or in presence of.

*Cum*, with.

*De, of or from.*

*E, ex*, of, from, or out of.

*Præ*, before or in comparison of.

*Pro*, for.

*Sine*, without.

*Tenus*, up to or as far as.

Prepositions governing an ABLATIVE Case.

*Ablativum volunt hæc;*

*A, ab, absque, abs, et de,*

*Coram, clam, cum, ex, et e,*

*Sine, tenus, pro, et præ.*

The remaining Prepositions have an Accusative Case after them, and are

<i>Ad</i> , to or at.	<i>Penes</i> , in the power of.
<i>Adversum</i> , <i>adversus</i> , against.	<i>Per</i> , by or through.
<i>Ante</i> , before.	<i>Pone</i> , behind.
<i>Apud</i> , at or near.	<i>Post</i> , after or since.
<i>Circa</i> , <i>Circum</i> , <i>Circiter</i> , about.	<i>Præter</i> , beside or except.
<i>Cis</i> , <i>citra</i> , on this side.	<i>Prope</i> , nigh or near to.
<i>Contra</i> , against.	<i>Propter</i> , near, for, or because of.
<i>Erga</i> , toward.	<i>Secundum</i> , according to, along, or next.
<i>Extra</i> , without.	<i>Supra</i> , above.
<i>Infra</i> , beneath.	<i>Trans</i> , beyond.
<i>Inter</i> , between or among.	<i>Ultra</i> , beyond.
<i>Intra</i> , within.	<i>Usque</i> , until.
<i>Juxta</i> , beside or nigh to.	<i>Versus</i> , toward.
<i>Ob</i> , for or because of.	

*Obs.* *Versus* is set *after* its case; as *Londinum versus*, towards London.

Likewise *pënës* may be so placed.

### Prepositions governing an ACCUSATIVE Case.

*Exigunt accusativum*,  
*Ante*, *apud*, *ad*, *adversum*,  
*Circum*, *circa*, *citra*, *cis*,  
*Erga*, *contra*, *inter*, *extra*,  
*Infra*, *intra*; *Adde his*  
*Juxta*, *ob*, *et penes*, *pôně*,  
*Post*, *et præter*, *prope*, *propter*,  
*Per*, *secundum*, *supra*, *versus*;  
*Ultra*, *trans his junxeris*.

*A* stands before all consonants but *b*.

*Ab* stands before all vowels, and before all consonants but *m* and *v*.

*Abs* stands before *g*, *r*, and *t*.

*Obs.* *Cum* is set *after* some Pronouns; as, *mecum*, *tecum*, *quicum*; and *Tenus* is set *after* its case; as, *porta tenus*, as far as the gate; and in the Plural Number the Noun is commonly put in the Genitive Case; as, *aurium tenus*, up to the ears.

The Prepositions following serve to *both* Cases.

- Clam*, unknown to ; as, *clam patrem* or *patre*, without my father's knowledge.
- In*, for *into*, signifying motion to, or against, has an Accusative Case ; as, *eo in urbem*, I go into the city ; *oratio in Catilinam*, a speech against Catiline.
- In*, for *in* only, without *motion*, serves to the Ablative Case ; as, *in eo spes est*, my hope is in him.
- Sub*, as, *sub noctem*, a little before night ; *sub oculos venit*, it comes in sight ; *sub iudice lis est*, the matter is before the judge ; *sub die*, in the open air ; *sub nocte*, at night-time.
- Subter*, as, *subter terram*, under the earth ; *subter aqua*, under the water.
- Super*, as, *super lapidem*, upon a stone ; *fronde super viridi*, upon a green bough.
- 

PECULIAR MEANING OF PREPOSITIONS.

1. Governing ACCUSATIVE.

- Ad summum*, at most.
- Ad unum omnes*, to a man.
- Ad tempus*, from time to time.
- Ad breve tempus*, for a short time.
- Ad verbum*, literally.
- Ad quartum a Roma lapidem*, four miles from Rome.
- Apud me*, at my house.
- Apud Horatium, Homerum, Virgilium, &c.*, in Horace, Homer, Virgil, &c.
- Apud iudices*, before the judges.
- Cis paucos dies*, within a few days.
- Circiter meridiem*, about midday.
- Extra culpam*, innocent.
- Extra periculum*, safe.
- Extra jocum*, seriously.
- Inter cenandum*, while at supper.
- So, *inter legendum, equitandum, studendum, &c.*
- Juxta patrem te amo*, I love you next after my father.
- Ob oculos*, before the eyes.
- Per me licet*, you may, as far as I am concerned.
- Per tres annos*, during three years.
- Per te Deos oro*, I pray you by the Gods.
- Per vim*, violently.

- Præter castra currit*, he runs past the camp.  
*Præter consuetudinem*, contrary to habit.  
*Præter modum*, immoderately.  
*Præter opinionem*, unexpectedly.  
*Secundum aurem vulnus accepit*, he received a wound in his ear.  
*Secundum flumen*, along the stream.  
*Secundum quietem*, in sleep.  
*Secundum te*, next to you.

## 2. Governing ABLATIVE.

- A puero*, from childhood.  
*A tergo*, behind.  
*Tibi a bibliotheca*, your librarian.  
*Tibi ab epistolis*, your secretary.  
*Tibi a potione*, your cupbearer.  
*Ab his stare*, to be on their side.  
*Ab oculis doleo*, my eyes ache.  
*Non ab re foret*, it would not be foreign to the purpose.  
*Cum imperio*, in command.  
*Cum telo*, armed.  
*Nobiscum facit*, it is on our side.  
*De celo servare*, to observe the heaven, (as an augur).  
*De celo tactus*, struck by lightning.  
*De die*, by day.  
*De Gallis triumphat*, he triumphs over the Gauls.  
*De industria*, on purpose.  
*De integro*, afresh.  
*De scripto dicere*, to speak from paper.  
*E regione*, opposite.  
*E republica*, for the good of the state.  
*Ex animo*, heartily.  
*Hæres ex asse*, sole heir.  
*Ex composito*, by consent.  
*Ex decreto*, according to decree.  
*Ex voto*, according to vow.  
*Ex testamento*, according to will.  
*Ex proviso*, unexpectedly.  
*Ex remige factus orator*, become an orator from (being) a rower; so  
*Ex nitido fit rusticus.—Ex humili potens.—Hor.*  
*Ex vestigio*, forthwith.

*Præ gaudio lacrymor*, I weep for joy.  
*Præ nobis magnus*, great when compared with us.  
*Pro concione*, speaking in the public assembly.  
*Pro rostris*, speaking in the public assembly.  
*Pro foribus*, before the door.  
*Faciam pro virili*, I will do as well as I can.  
*Prope abest a Sicilia*, it is near Sicily.

### 3. Governing both Cases.

*In horas mutatur*, he changes from hour to hour.  
*In lucem*, to day break.  
*Mirum in modum*, strangely.  
*In universum*, universally.  
*In ære alieno*, in debt.  
*In hoste Priamo*, in the case of Priam an enemy.  
*In loco*, in the proper time.  
*Sub idem tempus*, about the same time.

---



---

## OF AN INTERJECTION.

---

AN INTERJECTION is a part of speech which is thrown between (*interjecta*), and betokeneth a sudden emotion of the mind,—be it grief, as, *heu*, alas! *proh*, *væ*, *hei mihi!*—surprise, as, *vah*, *papæ!*—pleasure, as, *ejü*, *macte esto!*—or other passion.

Sometimes nouns and verbs are used as Interjections, as, *nefas!* *malum!* *miserabile!* *quæso*, *amabo*, *age*, *sodes* (*si au-des*), *sis* (*si vis*), *agësis*, *agëdum*.

## ETYMOLOGY

## TREATS of the forming of Words.

*Obs.* 1. In Etymology, it is above all things necessary to note what letters are uttered by what organs.

*Obs.* 2. Letters uttered by the same organs are changed with one another in the forming of words.

*Obs.* 3. The LABIALS, or letters pronounced by the lips, are B, F, M, P, V.  
The GUTTURALS, or letters pronounced by the throat, C, G, H, K, Q, X.  
The LINGUALS, or letters pronounced by the tongue, D, L, N, R, S, T.

LIPS sound <i>b, f, m, p,</i> and <i>v.</i>	}
THROAT, <i>g, h, k, q, x,</i> and <i>c.</i>	
TONGUE, <i>d, l, n, r, s,</i> and <i>t.</i>	
Cp. § 3.—Labials, $\pi, \beta, \phi.$	
Gutturals, $\kappa, \gamma, \chi.$	}
Linguals, $\tau, \delta, \theta.$	

## INTERCHANGE OF VOWELS.

A is changed into E, *arma, inermis.*  
I, *manus, cominus.*  
U, *salsus, insulsus.*

Æ is changed into I, *tenax, perfinax.*  
O, *terra, extorris.*  
U, *tego, tûgûrium.*

I is changed into U, *similis, simulo.*

O is changed into I, *locus, illico.*  
U, *hoc, adhuc.*

U is changed into I, *famulus, familia.*

Æ is changed into UI, *quæro, exquiro.*

AU is changed into E, *audio, obêdio.*  
O, *fauces, suffôco; plaudo, explôdo.*  
U, *causa, accûso, excuso.*

œ is changed into U, *pœna, pûnio; Pœnus, Pûnicus.*

- GREEK— υ into γ, ἔλη, *elysa*.  
 ΑΙ into ε, Αἰνείας, *Aeneas*.  
 ΕΙ into ε, Μουσείον, *musæum*, not *musæum*.  
 ΕΙ into ι, Ἰφιγένεια, *Iphigenia*.  
 ΟΙ into α, ποίη, *pæna*.  
 ΟΥ into υ, Μοῦσα, *mûsa*.—Cp. § 2.

### INTERCHANGE OF CONSONANTS.

- LABIALS— (b, f, m, and p, and v):  
*Nubo, nupsi, nymphæ, νέφος, nimbus* ;  
*Φέρω, fero, (bear), fortis, porto* ;  
*Βροτός, μορτός, mortalis* ;  
*Μέρος, pars* ;  
*Βούλομαι, volo*.
- GUTTURALS—(g, h, k, q, x, and c):  
*Τραχό, traxi, tractus, tragula* ;  
*Περίγω, perfica* ;  
*Sequor, sequundus, secundus* ;  
*Incolo, inquilinus*.
- LINGUALS— (d, l, n, r, s, and t):  
*Quatuor (τέσσαρες, τέτροτες) quadra* ;  
*Παῖς, puer* ; *haurio, hausî* ; *gero, gessi* ;  
*Ulysses, Odyssea*.

### ASSIMILATION.

Assimilation is when a consonant changes itself to one which follows it, or to one like it; as, *submitto, summissus*.

B, in *ob* and *sub*, assimilates itself to the Labials and Gutturals; as, *oppignero, suppono, offendo, occido, succurro, suggero*.

D, in *ad*, assimilates itself to all Linguals and Gutturals; as, *attracto, annuo, arrideo, accedo, acquiro, afficio, appono, assæquor*.

M, in *am* and *com* (*cum*), assimilates itself to *l* and *r*, as *colligo, corruo*, and changes itself in *am, com, circum*, and other words, as, *quorum, circum, tantum*, to *n*, especially before Labials and Gutturals, as, *condo, congero, quoniam (quom jam), quondam (quom dam), eundem, septendecim*.

N, in *in*, assimilates itself to *l* and *r*, as, *illustris, irrideo*, and changes itself to *m* before Labials, as, *immunis, imberbis*.

R, in *inter* and *per*, assimilates itself to *l*, as, *intelligo, pellucidus*: thus, *pollex* for *porlex* (for *prolex* by metathesis), whence *polliceor*.

## INSERTION OF LETTERS.

Most remarkable is the insertion of V, the Æolic DIGAMMA, or sixth letter of the Old Greek Alphabet. § 1. *Obs.* 2.

Thus, *pluvia* from *pluo*, *exuvie* from *exuo*; thus *audio* makes *audivi*; *bos*, *bovis*; *idus*, *vidua*, *divido*, and so forth.

This letter often appears as F, and takes the place of H; as *Formiæ* for *Hormiæ* (ὄρμος, ὄρμια); *frigus*, from *ῥίγος*; *frango*, from *ῥήγω*.

Sometimes as b; as, *bustum* for *ustum*.

Sometimes as u; as, *duellum* for *bellum*, *ninguo* for *ningo*.

C is inserted after *si*, *ne*, and *ali*; as, *sicubi*, *neubi*, *alicubi*.

D is inserted after *re*, *pro*, *se*; as, *redigo*, *prodigus*, *prodest*, *seditio*.

In the older Latin writings, D stands at the end of Ablatives and Adverbs; as, *Gnaivod* for *Cnaeo*, *extrad* for *extra*.

R is inserted in declension; as, *vis*, *vires*; *musa*, *musarum*.

## OMISSION OF LETTERS.

c, g, are omitted before another consonant; as,

*Percunctor*, *percontor*;

*Spargo*, *spargsi*, *sparsi*;

*Exigo*, *exaymen*, *exāmen*, *examino*.

m, omitted; as, *quamsi*, *quasi*;

Elided at end of words before vowels and h; as,

*Monstr'*, *horrend'*, *inform'*, *ingens*.

D, N, T, omitted before s; as,

*Rado*, *rads*, *rasi*; *amants*, *amans*;

*Adspiro*, *aspiro*; *monstrum*, *mostellum*;

*Obtundo*, *obtunsus*, *obtusus*.

ST, omitted; as, *postmeridianus*, *pomeridianus*.

R, omitted; as, *prorsa*, *prosa*.

s, elided at end of words; as,

*Tum laterali' dolor certissimu' nuntiu' mortis*—Lucr.

## FORMING OF WORDS.

Of Nouns: SUBSTANTIVES—

1. Patronymics, 2. Gentiles or National Substantives,
3. Diminutives, 4. Appellatives, 5. Abstract Words.

I. PATRONYMICS (§ 100) indicate the name of the father (*πατρὸς ὄνομα*), or ancestor from whom a person is descended. (§ 101).

*Obs.* Patronymics are generally formed from the Genitive Case, and in such a manner as to be admissible into an HEXAMETER Verse.



They end in

1. *ādēs, iādēs*; as,

<i>Ēnēās,</i>	<i>Ēnēādēs.</i>	<i>Thestius,</i>	<i>Thestiādēs.</i>
<i>Hippōtēs,</i>	<i>Hippotādēs.</i>	<i>Scipio,</i>	<i>Scipiādēs.</i>
<i>Anchisēs,</i>	<i>Anchisādēs.</i>	<i>Amphitryō,</i>	<i>Amphitryoniādēs.</i>

2. *idēs*; as, *Prīāmūs, Prīāmīdēs,*  
*Cecrops, Cecropidēs;*  
*Agēnor, Agenoridēs.*

3. *ides*; as, *Atrēus, Atrīdes.*

FEMININE PATRONYMICS end in

1. *ās, iās*; as, *Thestius, Thestiās;*  
*Thaumās, Thaumantiās.*
2. *īs*; as, *Tantālus, Tantālīs;*  
*Briseus, Brisēis.*
3. *inē, iōnē*; as, *Neptunus, Neptuninē;*  
*Acrisius, Acrisionē.*

II. GENTILE NOUNS indicate the Country to which a Person belongs—§ 107.

Gentile Nouns end in

1. *ūs*, from countries in *us* and *os*; as, *Ægyptius, Cyprius, Rhodius.*
2. *īnus*, from countries in *um, ium,* and *ia*; as, *Tarentinus, Latinus,*  
*Venusinus.*
3. *ānus, ensis*, from countries of the First and Third Declensions;  
as *Albanus, Carthaginiensis.*  
*Obs. Hispanus* is a Spaniard, but *Exercitus Hispaniensis*, is An army raised in Spain.
4. *as*, Gen. *ātis*, from Italian places in *um* and *a*; as, *Arpinas, Capēnas.*
5. *īdes*, poetical; as, *Mæonia, Mæonides; Mænalus, Mænalides.*  
The *feminines* in *īs* and *iās*; as, *Tenarus, Tenaris; Ilium, Iliās.*

Add to these other Gentile Words:

Masculines; as, *Car, Macedo, Arabs.*

Common; as, *Arcās*, Gen. *-ādīs*, *Ligūr*, Gen. *-ūris.*

And purely Latin forms, *Sammis*, Gen. *-itis*; *Allobroz*, Gen. *-brōgis*;  
*Afer*, Gen. *-fri*; *Laurens, Camers, Tiburs.*

Also the Gentile Adjectives; as, *Sardōus*, (from *Σαρδὴ Sardinia*), *Ju-dāicus, Corinthiacus.*

III. DIMINUTIVES indicate a smaller size of the Primitives from which they come.— (§ 101).

*Obs.* 1. Diminutives usually take the termination and Gender of their Primitives.

*Obs.* 2. The Masculines end in *ellus, illus, ðlus, ũlus, culus, unculus*. The Feminines and Neuters in the corresponding forms in *a* and *um*; as,

<i>Asinus, asellus.</i>	<i>Liber, libellus.</i>
<i>Caput, capitulum.</i>	<i>Mulier, muliercula.</i>
<i>Carbo, carbunculus.</i>	<i>Munus, munusculum.</i>
<i>Cōdex, codicillus.</i>	<i>Negotium, negotiũlum.</i>
<i>Corpus, corpusculum.</i>	<i>Oratio, oratiuncula.</i>
<i>Dies, diēcula.</i>	<i>Pars, partīcula.</i>
<i>Filius, filiũlus.</i>	<i>Res, rēcula.</i>
<i>Flos, flosculus,</i>	<i>Rumor, rumusculus.</i>
<i>Frater, fraterculus.</i>	<i>Signum, sigillum.</i>
<i>Hortus, hortulus.</i>	<i>Uncia, unciũla.</i>
<i>Ignis, igniculus.</i>	<i>Verbum, verbulum.</i>

Some end in *io, aster, and iscus*: as, *homo, homuncio* (monkey); *senex, senēcio*; *olea, oleaster*; *Pan, Paniscus*.

Some have two forms: as, *avis, avicula, avicella*; *porcus, porculus, porcellus*; *os, osculum, oscillum*; *cista, cistula, cistella*.

*Obs.* 3. Some are from Greek Primitives; as, *κόραξ, graculus*; *κόρη, corinna, corilla* (girl).

*Obs.* 4. To these may be added the Diminutive Adjectives: *pulcher, pulchellus*; *parvus, parvulus, paullus*; *frigidus, frigidusculus*; *durior, duriusculus*.

IV. APPELLATIVES are (1) Personal, *i. e.* Names of Persons; (2) Local, of Places; (3) Real, of Things.

1. PERSONAL (§ 104)—

In *ā*, from Verbs; as, *poeta, advēna, scriba, incolā*.

In *ārius*, from Nouns, trades; as, *aviarius, carbonarius, statuarius*.

In *o*, Gen. *-ōnis*, generally in a bad sense; as, *ludīo, morio, aleo, comedo, bibo*.

In *or*, Gen. *-ōris*; as, *cursor, lector, viātor, janitor*.

2. LOCAL (§ 103)—

In *ārium*; as, *granarium, ararium, tabularium, aviārium*.

In *orium*; as, *diversorium, tentorium*.

In *ētum*, (Greek -ῶν, Gen. -ῶνος); as, *myrtetum, rubetum, rosetum, vinetum, saxetum*.

In *ūlum*; as, *cubiculum*.

In *crum*; as, *lavacrum, sepulcrum*.

In *trina, trinum*; as, *tonstrina, pistrinum*.

### 3. REAL (§ 104)—

In *ūlum*, instrument; as, *venabulum, operculum*.

In *crum, trum*, instrument; as, *fulcrum, aratrum*.

In *men*; as, *flūmen (fluīmen), agmen (agīmen), lumen, regimen, specimen*.

In *mentum*, means; as, *documentum, instrumentum, alimentum, monumentum*.—(§ 104, 106.)

## V. ABSTRACTIONS AND PROPERTIES end

In *ia, ītia, itudo, tas, itas, iētas*; as, *audacia, clementia, avaritia, altitudo, venustas, honestas, crudelitas, cupiditas, varietas, pietas*.

In *ium*, state or relation; as, *exilium, gaudium, conjugium, hospitium*.

In *io*, action; as, *lectio, reprehensio, optio*.

In *or*, bodily or mental state; as, *algor, pallor, timor, furor*.

In *ōla*; as, *tutela, corruptela*.

In *ūra*, mode; as, *junctura, usura*.

## Change of APPELLATIVE from MALE to FEMALE.

*Us* is changed into *a*; as, *cervus, cerva; socius, socia*.

*Er* into *ra*; as, *caper, capra; magister, magistra*.

*Tor* into *trix*; as, *victor, victrix; janitor, janitrix*.

*O* into *a*; as, *caupo, cōpa; leo, lea*.

*En* into *ina*; as, *fīdīcen, fīdīcina; fībīcen, fībīcina*.

## Some are irregular:

*Avus* becomes, in the Feminine, *avia*; *gallus, gallina; hospēs, hospīta; nepos, neptis; rex, rēgina; socer, socrus*.

## Some are altogether unlike:

*Aries*, in Feminine, becomes *ovis*; *taurus, vacca; verres, scrīfa*.

## Some are Greek, and follow Greek rules.—(§ 107.)

Thus, *Poēta* becomes, in the Feminine, *Poētrīa*; *Psalter, Psalteris; Spartiātā, Spartiātīs; Sarmāta, Sarmātīs; Æthiops, Æthiopiōis; Phānix, Phānissa; Threx, Thressa; Cres, Cressa; Laco, Lacana; Tyos, Trōās*.

## FORMING OF ADJECTIVES.—(§ 406).

## ADJECTIVES of the FIRST and SECOND DECLENSIONS end

- In *icus*, from Nouns; as, *auſicus*, *bellicus*, *civicus*.  
 In *ieus*, from Verbs and Adverbs; as, *amicus*, *apricus* (*aperio*), *antiquus*, *anticus* (*ante*).  
 In *icius*, from Nouns, with *i* short; as, *gentilicium*.  
     from Verbs, with *i* long; as, *conducſicius*.  
 In *idus*, denoting bodily state; as, *frigidus*, *algidus*, *tepidus*, *hūmidus*, *candidus*.  
 In *undus*, denoting bodily or mental feeling or faculty, from Verbs; as, *iracundus*, *facundus* (from *for*, *fāri*), *furibundus*.  
 In *eus* and *aceus*, denoting material; as, *aureus*, *marmoreus*, *teſtaceus*.  
 In *ius*, belonging to; as, *regius*, *patrius*.  
 In *ānus*; as, *humanus*, *montanus*, *Cæsareanus*.  
 In *enus*; as, *plenus*, *terrenus*.  
 In *inus*, denoting material; as, *faginus*, *crystallinus*.  
 In *īnus*, denoting quality; as, *agninus*, *caninus*.  
 In *īnus*, denoting time; as, *crastinus*, *diutinus*, *nundinæ*, *hornotinus*, *perendinus*, *prætinus*, *serotinus*; all with *penultima* short, except *matutinus* and *vesperinus*.  
 In *ōnus*; as, *patronus*.  
 In *ūnus*; as, *opportunistus*, *jejunistus*.  
 In *ārius*; as, *contrarius*, *agrarius*.  
 In *ōrius*; as, *oratorius*, *motōrius*.  
 In *ernus*; as, *hibernus*, *æternus*.  
 In *urnus*; as, *diurnus*, *nocturnus*.  
 In *ōus*; as, *animosus*, *beluosus*, *ventosus*, *saxosus*.  
 In *ātus*, *ītus*, *ūtus*; as, *alātus*, *oculātus*, *aurītus*, *cornūtus*.  
 In *entus*; as, *violentus*, *gracilentus*, *luculentus*.  
 In *stus*; as, *neſtaſtus*, *funestus*, *onustus*.  
 In *ivus*; as, *æſtiuus*, *ſtatiuus*, *furtiuius*.

## ADJECTIVES of the THIRD DECLENSION end

- In *alis*; as, *regalis*, *hospitalis*.  
 In *aris*; as, *popularis*, *vulgaris*.  
 In *elis*; as, *crudelis*, *fidelis*.  
 In *ilis*, from Nouns; as, *juvenilis*, *herilis*.  
 In *ilis*, from Verbs; as, *flexilis*, *pensilis*, *habilis*, *utilis*, *fissilis*, *rasilis*, *tonſilis*, *fragilis*.

In *ūlis*; as, *edulis*.

In *bilis*, from Verbs; as, *penetrabilis, debilis, nōbilis, volubilis*.

In *ātilis*; as, *aquātilis*.

In *ensis*; as, *pratensis, forensis*.

In *stris*; as, *palustris, sublustris*.

In *ens*; as, *violens*.

In *es*; as, *locuples, -ētis*.

In *ber, bris, cer, cris*; as, *salūber, salubris, ācer, acris*.

In *ax*; as, *ferax, edax*.

In *ex*; as, *seminex, -ēcis*.

In *ox*; as, *atrox, velox, -ōcis*.

*Mnus, mna, maum*, are derived from the Greek Participle Passives Present and Perfect; as, *stannus* from *ιστάμενος*, *columna* from *κασολουμένη*, *lamna* from *ἐληλαμένη*.

#### FORMING OF VERBS.—(§ 110).

1. Inceptives, 2. Desideratives, 3. Frequentatives, 4. Diminutives.

I. INCEPTIVES indicate the beginning of an action expressed in their Primitives. Inceptives end

In *asco*; as, *labasco, puerasco*.

In *ascor*; as, *irascor*.

In *esco*; as, *aresco, calesco, frigesco*.

In *isco*; as, *gliaco, tremisco, fatisco*.

*Obs.* Inceptives are Neuter.

II. DESIDERATIVES indicate a desire to do something expressed in their Primitives. Desideratives end

In *ūrio*; and are formed by changing the last syllable of the Supine in *um*, into *ūrio*; as, *ēdo, ēsum, ēsūrō*; *pārio, partum, partūrō*; so, *em-tūrio, cenaturio*.

*Obs.* *Ligūrio, scatūrio, prūrio*, where the *u* is long, are not Desideratives.

III. FREQUENTATIVES indicate a repetition of the action expressed in their Primitive.—§ 111. Frequentatives end

In *to, tor, ūto*; as *canto* from *cāno, canō*; *volūto* from *volvo, volū-*

*tum*; *agito*, *fluito*, *noscito*, *clamito*, *rogito*, *sessito*, *dictito*, *scriptito*, *minitor* (from *minor*), *sector*, *sciscitor*.

*Obs.* Frequentatives are of the FIRST CONJUGATION.

#### IV. DIMINUTIVES end

In *illo*; as, *cantillo* from *canto*, *conscribillo*, *sorbillo*, *focillo*.

#### REPETITIVE DIMINUTIVES end

In *ilo*; as, *ventilo*.

In *ũlo*, *ũlor*; as, *pullulo*, *gesticulator*.

Add to these

(1). INTENSIVES, which indicate eagerness of action, and end

In *esso*; as, *lacesso*, *capesso*, *facesso*, *appetisso*.

(2). IMITATIVES, which end

In *zo*; as, *atticizo*, *græcizo*,

In *co* and *cor*; as, *rhetorico*, *cornicor*.

(3). EFFECTIVES, which indicate the production of what is expressed in their Primitives, and end

In *igo*; as, *mitigo*, to make *mitis* (tame); *lævigo*, to make *levis* (smooth).

#### OTHER DERIVATIVES end

In *ico*, *icor*, Active; as, *vellico*, *fodico*, *medicor*.

Neuter; as, *albico*, *nigrico*, *rusticor*.

COMPOUNDED VERBS.—Many Compound Verbs are formed from Simple Verbs, with a Preposition, by changing

*A* into *e*; as, *arceo*, *coerceo*; *patior*, *perpetior*; *carpo*, *decерpo*.

*A* into *i*; as, *cũdo*, *occĩdo*; *salio*, *desilio*; *taceo*, *conticeo*.

*A* into *u*; as, *calco*, *conculco*.

*Æ* into *ĩ*; as, *lædo*, *illĩdo*.

*E* into *i*; as, *emo*, *redimo*.

*Au* into *ẽ*, *o*, and *u*; as, *audio*, *obẽdio*; *plaudo*, *supplũdo*; *claudo*, *inclũdo*.

*Obs.* Simple Verbs, which have a reduplication, lose it in composition: as, *tondeo*, *totondi*; *detondeo*, *detondi*.

Except compounds of *do*, *sto*, *disco*, *posco*; as, *circumdo*, *circumdedi*.

See below, in the *As in Præsentī*, p. 106.

## FORMING OF ADVERBS.—(§ 112).

ADVERBS signify the manner in which any thing is done, and end

In *ē*: as *doctē, liberrē, pulchrē*.

In *ō*: as *ignōvō*.

Obs. 1. These are, properly, Ablative Cases of Adjectives in *us*.

In *ī*: as *facillē*.

Obs. 2. These are Nominative Accusatives of Adjectives in *is*.

In *ter*: as *clementer, audacter, fortiter*.

In *sim*: as *sensim, and*

In *tim*: as *strictim*.

Obs. 3. These two last forms are from Supines of Verbs.

In *tim*: as *partim*.

Obs. 4. These are Accusative Cases of Substantives.

In *sim*: as *propetiam, herē* by *herd*: *cafiam, house* by *house*; *viciniam, street* by *street*: and

In *sim*: as *viritum, man* by *man*: and

In *sim*: as *tributum, tribe* by *tribe*.

Obs. 5. These Terminations correspond to the Greek *σμός*, and signify the taking of the things, expressed by the Primitive, one by one.

---

 FIGURES ETYMOLOGICAL.
 

---

*Prosthesis* adds at beginning, as *stilis* for *lis*.—*Epenthesis* in middle: as *sies* for *sic*.—*Paragigē* at end; as *dicier* for *dici*.

*Aphaerēsis* takes away at beginning, as *nosco* for *gnosco*.—*Syncōpe* in middle, as *calvus* for *calidus*, *puertia* for *puertia*, *surpuerat* for *surrupuerat*.—*Apōcōpē* at end, as *inger* for *ingere*, *dic* for *dice*.

*Antithesis* changes one letter for another; as *bubus* for *bobus*.—*Metathesis* alters the place of the same; as *pistris* for *pristis*; *cōlumnus* for *corulnus*, for *corūlinus*, from *corūlus*, hazel; *certum* for *cretum*.

## THE THREE CONCORDS EXPLAINED.

THERE are three ConCORDS or AGREEMENTS in Latin.

1. Between the Nominative Case and the Verb.
2. Between the Substantive and the Adjective.
3. Between the Antecedent and the Relative.

### THE FIRST CONCORD.

A VERB agreeth with its Nominative Case, in Number and Person.

In order to find out the Nominative Case, ask the question *who?* or *what?* with the Verb; and the word that answereth to the question is the Nominative Case to the verb: as *who reads?* *who regards not?*

*Præceptor legit, vos vero negligitis.*

The *master* reads, but *ye* regard not.

Sometimes an Infinitive Mood, or a sentence, is the Nominative Case to a Verb; and sometimes is the Substantive to an Adjective; and sometimes is the Antecedent to a Relative; and in this case the Adjective and the Relative must be in the Neuter Gender: as,

*Diluculo surgere saluberrimum est.*

To rise betimes in the morning is most wholesome.

*In tempore veni, quod omnium est primum.*

I came in season, which is the chief thing of all.

Many Nominative Cases Singular have a Verb Plural, which agrees with the Nominative Case of the most worthy Person.



*And note*, that the First Person is, in Latin, considered more worthy than the Second, and the Second more worthy than the Third: as,

*Ego et tu sumus in tuto.*

I and thou are in safety.

The Substantive which cometh next after the Verb, and answereth to the question *whom?* or *what?* made by the Verb, shall commonly be in the Accusative Case; except the Verb, by some particular rule, requires another case after it: as,

*Si cupis placere magistro, utere diligentia.*

If you desire to please the master, use diligence.

*Obs.* In this example *magistro* is the Dative, and *diligentiâ* the Ablative Case, according to a special rule.

---

## THE SECOND CONCORD.

WHEN you have an Adjective, ask this question, *who?* or *what?* with the Adjective, and the word that answereth to the question shall be the Substantive to the Adjective.

The Adjective, whether it be a Noun, Pronoun, or Participle, agreeth with its Substantive in Case, Gender, and Number: as,

*Amicus certus in re incertâ cernitur.*

A sure friend is tried in a doubtful matter.

*Obs.* 1. The Masculine Gender is more worthy than the Feminine, and the Feminine more worthy than the Neuter. *Also note*, that, in things without life, the Neuter Gender is most worthy; and in this case, though the Substantive or Antecedent be of the Masculine or Feminine Gender, and not

of the Neuter, yet may the Adjective or Relative be put in the Neuter: as,

*Arcus et calami sunt bona.*

The bow and arrows are good.

*Arcus et calami, quæ fregisti.*

The bow and arrows, *which* thou hast broken.

*Obs. 2.* When several Substantives Singular are joined together, they will have an Adjective Plural, which Adjective shall agree with the Substantive of the most worthy Gender: as,

*Rex et regina beati.*

The king and the queen are blessed.

*Also,* When in English the word *thing* is put with an Adjective, you may in Latin leave out the Substantive and put the Adjective in the Neuter Gender: as,

*Multa me impedierunt.*

Many *things* have hindered me.

---

### THE THIRD CONCORD.

WHEN you have a Relative, ask this question, *who?* or *what?* with the Verb, and the word that answereth to the question shall be the Antecedent to the Relative.

The Relative agreeth with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person: as,

*Vir sapit, qui pauca loquitur.*

The man is wise, *who* speaketh few words.

*Obs. 1.* If the Relative refers to two Antecedents, or more, then it shall be put in the Plural Number: as,

*Tu multum dormis, et sæpe potas; quæ ambo sunt corpori inimica.*

Thou sleepest much, and drinkest often; *both which* things are naught for the body.

**Obs. 2.** When the English word *that* may be turned into *who* or *which*, it is a Relative, otherwise it is a Conjunction, expressed in Latin by *quod* or *ut*; and in making Latin, if the preceding Verb express a sense or feeling, the Conjunction may better be put away, and the Nominative Case to the Verb turned into the Accusative, and the Verb into the Infinitive Mood: as,

*Gaudeo te bene valere.*

I am glad *that* thou art in good health.

OF  
THE GENDERS OF NOUNS.

---

I. SUBSTANTIVES.

PROPER NAMES.

1. MASCULINE.

*PROPRIA quæ maribus tribuuntur mascula dicas ;*  
*Ut sunt* DIVORUM; Mars, Bacchus, Apollo: VIRORUM;  
*Ut, Cato, Virgilius:* FLUVIORUM; *ut, Tiberis, Orontes:*  
MENSUM; *ut, September:* VENTORUM; *ut, Libs, Notus, Au-*  
*ster:*  
MONTIUM; *ut, Othrys, Eryx—Ætna excipiantur, et Ceta,* 5  
*Cyllene, Rhodope, Calpe; excipiantur et Alpes,*  
*Fœmineæ quæ sunt ;—neutrum Soracte notetur.*

2. FEMINE.

*Propria fœmineum referentia nomina sexum,*  
*Fœmineo generi tribuuntur, sive* DEARUM  
*Sint ; ut, Juno, Venus:* MULIEBRIA; *ut, Anna, Philôtis:* 10  
URBIUM; *ut, Elis, Opus:* REGIONUM; *ut, Græcia, Persis:*  
INSULÆ *item nomen ; ceu Creta, Britannia, Cyprus.*  
*Excipienda tamen quædam sunt Urbium; ut ista*  
*Mascula ; Sulmo, Agragas: quædam neutralia ; ut, Argos,*  
*Tibur, Præneste: et genus Anxur quod dat utrumque.* 15

---

NOUNS APPELLATIVE.

1. FEMINE GENDER.

*Fœminei generis* PLANTÆ, GEMMÆ *que Latine,*  
*Ut myrtus, sapphirus, erunt; et nomina vulgo*  
*Appellativa* ARBORUM *erunt muliebria; ut, alnus,*  
Cupressus, cedrus. *Mas spinus, mas oleaster,*  
Carduus, hellebörus, cytissus, rubus, asphodélus-*que* 20  
Asparagus, narcissus, amārâcus, *est et acanthus*  
*Mas ; sunt neutra siler, suber, thus, robur, acer-que.*

## 2. EPICENE GENDER.

*Sunt etiam VOLUCRUM, ceu passer, hirundo: FERARUM,  
Ut tigris, vulpes: et PISCIMUM, ut ostrea, cetus,  
Dicta epicæna; quibus vox ipsa genus feret aptum.* 25

## 3. NEUTER GENDER.

*Attamen ex cunctis supra, reliquis-que, notandum,  
Omne quod exit in um, seu Græcum sive Latinum,  
Esse genus neutrum; sic invariabile nomen,  
Ut cornu atque genu, Tempe, fas, nil, nihil, instar.*

---

 THE FIRST SPECIAL RULE.
 

---

## NOUNS NOT INCREASING.

## FEMININE.

*Nomen non crescens genitivo; ceu caro carnis,  
Capra capræ, nubes nubis; genus est muliebre.* 30

1. NOUNS MASCULINE *excepted*.

*Mascula nomina in A dicuntur multa virorum;  
Ut, scriba, asseclá, scurra, et sic lixa, lanista.  
Mascula, Græcorum quot declinatio prima  
Fundit in AS, et in ES; et ab illis quot per A fiunt: 35  
Ut, satrapas satrapa, athletes athleta. Leguntur  
Mascula item, verres, natalis, aqualis: ab asse  
Nata; ut centussis: conjunge lienis, et orbis,  
Callis, caulis, follis, collis, mensis, et ensis,  
Fustis, funis, cenchris, panis, crinis, et ignis, 40  
Cassis, fascis, torris, sentis, piscis, et unguis,  
Et vermis, vectis, postis; sic axis, et amnis.*

*Mascula in ER; ceu, venter: in OS, vel US; ut logos, annus.  
Fæminei at generis sunt, mater, humus, domus, alvus,  
Et colus, et quartæ pro fructu ficus, acus-que, 45  
Porticus, atque tribus, socrus, nurus, et manus, idus;  
Huc anus addenda est, huc mystica vannus Iacchi.*

*His jungas OS in US vertentia Græca, papyrus,  
Antidôtus, costus, diametrus, byssus, abyssus,  
Diphongus, synôdus, methodus, dialectus, et arctus, 50  
Cum multis aliis, quæ nunc perscribere longum est.*

2. NOUNS NEUTER *excepted*.

*Neutrum nomen in E est, si gignit IS, ut mare, rete;  
Et quot in ON, crescentia in I, ceu barbiton; adde  
His virus, pelagus: neutrum modo, mas modo, vulgus;  
Adde chaos, melos a Græcis, sic cetos, epos-que.* 55

3. NOUNS of the DOUBTFUL GENDER *excepted*.

*Incerti generis sunt talpa, et dama, canalis,  
Et cytisus, balanus, clunis, finis-que, penus-que,  
Pampinus, et corbis, linter, torquis, specus, anguis;  
Pro morbo ficus fici dans, atque phaselus,  
Lecythus, atque atōmus, grossus, phārus, et paradisus.* 60

4. NOUNS of the COMMON of two GENDERS *excepted*.

*Compositum a verbo dans A, est commune duorum;  
Grajugēna a gigno, agricōla a colo, id advēna monstrant  
A venio: adde senex, auriga, et verna, sodalis,  
Vates, extorris, patruelis, per-que-duellis,  
Affinis, juvenis, testis, civis, canis, hostis.* 65

---

 THE SECOND SPECIAL RULE.
 

---

## NOUNS INCREASING LONG.

## FEMININE.

*Nomen, crescentis penultima si genitivi  
Syllaba longa sonat, velut hæc, pietas pietātis,  
Virtus virtūtis, monstrant, genus est muliebre.*

1. NOUNS MASCULINE *excepted*.

*Mascula dicuntur monosyllaba nomina quædam:  
Sal, sol, ren, et splen, Car, Ser, vir, vas vadis, as, mas, 70  
Bes, Cres, præs, et pes, glis gliris habens genitivo,  
Mos, flos, ros, et Tros, mus, dens, mons, pons, simul et fons,  
Seps pro serpente, et gryps, Thrax, rex, grex gregis, et Phryx.*

*Mascula sunt etiam polysyllaba in N: ut Acarnan,  
Lichen, et delphin: et in O signantia corpus; 75  
Ut leo, curculio: sic senio, ternio, sermo.*

*Mascula in ER, OR, et OS: ceu crater, conditor, heros;  
 His, torrens, nefrens, oriens, conjunge, cliens-que;  
 Atque bidens instrumentum, cum pluribus in DENS;  
 Adde gigas, elephas, adamas, Garamas-que, tapes-que, 80  
 Atque lebes, sic et magnes, unumque meridi-  
 es nomen quintæ; et quæ componuntur ab asse,  
 Ut dodrans, semis: jungantur mascula; Samnis,  
 Hydrops, et thorax: jungas quoque mascula vervex,  
 Phoenix, et bombyx pro vermiculo. Tamen ex his 85  
 Sunt muliebre genus, Siren, necnon soror, uxor.*

### 2. NOUNS NEUTER *excepted.*

*Sunt neutralia at hæc monosyllaba nomina: mel, fel,  
 Lac, far, ver, æs, cor, vas vasis, os ossis, et oris,  
 Rus, thus, jus, crus, pus. Et in AL polysyllaba, in AR-que,  
 Ut capital, laquear. Neutrum al-ec, -ex muliebre. 90*

### 3. NOUNS of the DOUBTFUL GENDER *excepted.*

*Sunt dubii generis, scrobs, serpens, bubo, rudens, grus,  
 Perdix, lynx, limax, stirps pro trunco, pedis et calx:  
 Adde dies, numero tantum mas esto secundo.*

### 4. NOUNS of the COMMON of two GENDERS *excepted.*

*Sunt commune, parens, auctor-que, infans, adolescens,  
 Dux, illex, hæres, exlex: a fronte creata, 95  
 Ut bifrons: custos, bos, fur, sus, atque sacerdos.*

## THE THIRD SPECIAL RULE.

### NOUNS INCREASING SHORT.

#### MASCULINE.

*Nomen, crescentis penultima si genitivi  
 Sit brevis, ut sanguis genitivo sanguinis, est mas.*

### 1. NOUNS FEMININE *excepted.*

*Feminei generis sit hyperdissyllabon in DO,  
 Quod dinis, atque in GO, quod dat ginis, in genitivo: 100  
 Id tibi dulcedo faciens dulcedinis; idque  
 Monstrat compago compaginis; adjice virgo,*

Grando, fides, compes, teges, et seges, arbor, hyems-que;  
Sic chlamys, et sindon, Gorgōn, icon, et Amazon.

Græcula in AS, vel in IS, finita: ut, lampas, iaspis, 105  
Cassis, cuspis; item mulier, pecus et pecudis dans:  
Fœmineis forfex, pellex, carex-que, supellex,  
Appendix, hystrix, coxendix, adde, filix-que.

### 2. NOUNS NEUTER *excepted*.

*Est neutrale genus signans rem non animatam*  
Nomen in A, ut problema; EN, ut omen; AR, ut jubar; UR-  
que, 110  
Ut jecur; US-que, ut onus; PUT, ut occiput. Attamen ex his  
Mascula sunt, pecten, furfur. Sunt neutra, cadaver,  
Verber, iter, suber, pro fungo tuber, et uber,  
Gingiber, et laser, cicer, et piper, atque papaver,  
Et siser: his addis neutra, æquor, marmor, ador-que; 115  
Atque pecus quando pecōris facit in genitivo.

### 3. NOUNS of the DOUBTFUL GENDER *excepted*.

*Sunt dubii generis, cardo, margo, cinis, imbrex,*  
Forceps, et pumex, cortex, et pulvis, adeps-que:  
Adde culex, natrix, et onyx cum prole, silex-que,  
Quamvis hæc melius vult mascula dicier usus. 120

### 4. NOUNS COMMON *excepted*,

*Communis generis sunt ista: vigil, pugil, exul,*  
Præsul, homo, et nemo, martyr, Ligur, augur, et Arcas,  
Antistes, miles, pedes, interpres, comes, hospes,  
Sic ales, præses, princeps, auceps, eques, obses; 125  
Atque alia a verbis quæ nomina multa creantur;  
Ut, conjux, judex, vindex, opifex, et aruspex.

## II. ADJECTIVES.

*ADJECTIVA unam duntaxat habentia vocem,*  
Ut, felix, audax, retinent genus omne sub una:  
Sub gemina si voce cadant, velut, omnis et omne,  
Vox commune dudm prior est, vox altera neutrum: 130



*At si tres variant voces, sacer, ut, sacra, sacrum,  
Mas prima, altera vox est fœmina, tertia neutra.*

Obs. 1. *At sunt quæ flexu prope substantiva vocares,  
Adjectiva tamen natura usuque reperta:*  
*Talia sunt pauper, puber, cum degener, uber,* 135  
*Et dives, locuples, sospes, comes, atque superstes;*  
*Cum paucis aliis, quæ lectio justa docebit.*

Obs. 2. *Hæc proprium quendam sibi flexum adsciocere  
gaudent;*  
*Campester, volucer, celeber, celer, atque salûber;*  
*Junge pedester, equester, et âcer; junge paluster,* 140  
*Atque alacer, sylvester. At hæc tu sic variabis,*  
*Hic celer, hæc celeris, neutro hoc celere: Aut aliter sic,*  
*Hic atque hæc celeris, rursus hoc celere est tibi neutrum.*

---



---

OF

## NOUNS HETEROCLITE, OR IRREGULAR.

—◆—

*QUÆ* genus aut flexum variant, quæcunque novato  
*Ritu* deficient, superantvæ, HETEROCLITA sunt. 145

### NOUNS changing their GENDER and DECLINING.

*Hæc* genus, ac flexum, partim variantia cernis:  
*Pergamus in numero plurali Pergama gignit.*  
*Dat prior his numerus neutrum genus, alter utrumque:*  
*Rastrum cum fræno, et clathrum, porrumque siserque;*  
*Fræna sed et fræni, quo pacto et cætera formant,* 150  
*Sibilus, atque jocus, locus.—His quoque plurima jungas.*

## NOUNS DEFECTIVE.

*QUÆ sequitur, manca est casu numerove, propago.*

## I. APTOTA, or NOUNS undeclined.

*Quæ nullum variant casum: ut, fas, nil, nihil, instar.  
 Multa et in U, simul I: veluti, cornuque, genuque;  
 Sic gummi, frugi; sic Tempe, tot, quot, et omnes 155  
 A tribus ad centum numeros, aptota vocabis.*

## II. MONOPTOTA, or NOUNS declined with one Case.

*Estque monoportoton nomen, cui vox cadit una:  
 Ceu, noctu, natu, jussu, injussu, simul astu,  
 Promptu, permissu: plurali legimus astus,  
 Legimus inficias, sed vox ea sola reperta est. 160*

## III. DIPTOTA, or NOUNS declined with two Cases.

*Sunt diptota, quibus duplex flexura remansit:  
 Ut, fors forte dabit sexto, spontis-que sponte;  
 Jugeris et sexto dat jugere; verberis autem  
 Verbere: suppetiæ quarto quoque suppetias dant;  
 Tantundem dat tantidem, impetis impete format. 165  
 Sic repetundarum repetundis. Verberis autem  
 Plurali casus cum jugere quatuor optant.*

## IV. TRIPTOTA, or NOUNS declined with three Cases.

*Tres quibus inflectis casus, triptota vocantur:  
 Sic opis est nostræ, fer opem legis, atque ope dignus:  
 Flecte preci, atque precem, petit et prece blandus amicum; 170  
 At tantum recto frugis caret, et ditionis;  
 Integra vox vis est, nisi desit forte dativus;  
 His vicis atque vicem junge et vice; plus quoque pluris  
 Plus habet et quarto: His numerus datur omnibus alter.*

## V. NOUNS wanting the Plural Number.

*Propria cuncta notes, quibus est natura coercens, 175  
 Plurima ne fiant: alia et tibi multa legenti  
 Occurrent, numerum raro excedentia primum.*

## VI. NOUNS wanting the Singular Number.

*Mascula sunt tantum numero contenta secundo,*  
 Manes, majores, cancelli, liberi, et antes,  
 Et lemures, proceres, fasti, simul atque minores, 180  
 Posterī, et hi Superi, natales; adde penates,  
 Et loca plurali, quales Gabiique, Locrique,  
 Et quæcunque legas passim similis rationis.

*Hæc sunt fœminei generis, numerique secundi:*

Exuviæ, phalære, gratesque, et manubiæ, et idus, 185  
 Nundinæ, itemque induciæ, item insidiæque, minæque,  
 Excubiæ, nonæ, nugæ, tricæque, calendæ,  
 Quisquilæ, thermæ, cunæ, diræ, exequiæque,  
 Feriæ, et inferiæ; sic primitiæque, plagæque  
 Retia signantes, et valvæ, divitiæque, 190  
 Nuptiæ item, et lactes; addantur Thebæ et Athenæ,  
 Quod genus invenias et nomina plura locorum.

*Rarius hæc primo pluralia neutra leguntur:*  
 Mœnia, cum tesquis, præcordia, lustra ferarum,  
 Arma, mapalia; sic bellaria, munia, castra; 195  
 Funus justa petit, petit et sponsalia virgo;  
 Rostra disertus amat, puerique crepundia gestant,  
 Infantesque colunt cunabula; consulit exta  
 Augur, et absolvens superis effata recantat;  
 Festa deum poterunt, cœu Bacchanalia, jungi: 200  
 Quod si plura leges, licet hac quoque classe reponas.

## NOUNS declined after both the Second and Fourth Declensions.

*Hæc simul et quarti flexûs sunt atque secundi:*  
 Laurus enim lauri facit et laurus genitivo,  
 Sic quercus, pinus, pro fructu atque arbore ficus;  
 Sic colus, atque penus, cornus quando arbor habetur; 205  
 Sic lacus atque domus: licet hæc nec ubique recurrant.  
 His quoque plura leges, quæ priscis jure relinquas.

OF THE  
PRETERPERFECT TENSE AND SUPINES OF VERBS.

I. PRETERPERFECT TENSE OF SIMPLE VERBS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

*As* makes *āvi*.

*AS in presenti perfectum format in AVI:*  
*Ut no nas navi, vocito vocitas vocitavi.*  
*Deme lavo lavi, jūvo jūvi, nexoque vi dans,*  
*Et seco quod secui, neco quod necui, mico verbum*  
*Quod micui, plico quod plicui, frico quod fricui dat.* 5  
*Sic domo quod domui, tono quod tonui, sono verbum*  
*Quod sonui, crepo quod crepui, veto quod vetui dat,*  
*Atque cubo cubui: raro hæc formantur in avi.*  
*Do das rite dēdi, sto stas formare stēti vult.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Ēs* makes *īi*.

*Es in presenti perfectum format vi dans:* 10  
*Ut nigreo nigres nigri: jubeo excipe jussi;*  
*Sorbeo sorbui habet sorpsi quoque, mulceo mulsi;*  
*Luceo vult luxi, sedeo sedi, videoque*  
*Vult vidi: sed prandeo prandi, strideo stridi,*  
*Suadeo suasi, rideo risi, habet ardeo et arsi.* 15

*Quatuor his infra geminatur syllaba prima:*  
*Pendeo namque pependi, mordeo vultque momordi,*  
*Spondeo habere sponsondi, tondeo vultque totondi.*

*L vel R ante GEO si stet, GEO vertitur in SI:*  
*Urgeo ut ursi; mulgeo mulsi dat quoque mulxi,* 20  
*Frigeo frixi, lugeo luxi, habet augeo et auxi.*

*Dat fleo fles flevi, leo les levi, indeque natum*  
*Deleo delevi; pleo ples plevi, neo nevi.*

*A maneo mansi formatur; torqueo torsi,*  
*Hæreo vult hæsi. VEO fit VI: ferveo fervi:* 25

Niveo, *et inde satum poscit* conniveo, nivi  
*Et nixi; cieo civi, vieoque vievi.*

### THIRD CONJUGATION.

*TERTIA præteritum formabit ut hic manifestum :*

Bo *fit* BI: lambo lambi: scribo *excipe* scripsi,  
*Et nubo nupsi; antiquum cumbo cubui dat.* 30

Co *fit* CI: vinco, vici: *vult* parco peperci,  
*Et parsi; dico dixi, duco quoque duxi.*

Do *fit* DI: mando mandi; *sed* scindo scidi *dat,*  
 Findo fidi, fundo fûdi, tundo tûtûdique,  
 Pendo pependi, tendo tetendi; *junge* cadoque 35  
*Quod cecidi format; pro verbero cædo cecidi;*  
*Cedo pro discedere, sive locum dare, cessi:*  
 Vado, rado, lædo, ludo, dîvîdo, trudo,  
 Claudio, plaudo, rodo, *ex* DO *semper faciunt* SI.

Go *fit* XI: jungo junxi: *sed* R *ante* GO *vult* SI, 40  
*Ut* spargo sparsi; lego legi, *et* ago *facit* egi:  
*Dat* tango tetigi, pungo punxi pûpûgigue;  
*Dat* frango fregi, pëpîgi *vult* pago *paciscor,*  
*Pango etiam* pegi, *sed* panxi *maluit usus.*

Ho *fit* XI: traho *ceu* traxi *docet,* *et* veho vexi. 45

Lo *fit* VI: colo *ceu* colui; psallo *excipe cum* p,  
*Et* sallo *sine* p, *nam* LI *tibi format utrumque;*  
*Dat* vello velli vulsi *quoque,* fallo fefelli;  
 Cello *pro frango cecûli,* pello pëpûlique.

Mo *fit* VI: vomo *ceu* vomui; *sed* êmo *facit* êmi; 50  
 Como *petit* compsi, promo prompsi: *adjice* demo  
*Quod format* dempsi, sumo sumpsi; premo pressi.

No *fit* VI: sino *ceu* sivi: temno *excipe* tempsi;  
*Dat* sterno stravi, sperno sprevi, lino levi,  
*Interdum* lini *et* livi, cerno *quoque* crevi: 55  
 Gigno, pono, cano; genui, posui, cecini, *dant.*

Po *fit* PSI: scalpo scalpsi; rumpo *excipe* rupi,  
*Et* strepo *quod format* strepui, crepo *quod* crepui *dat.*

Quo *fit* QUI: linquo liqui; coquo *demito* coxi.

**Ro fit VI:** sero *ceu pro planto et semino* sevi, 60  
*Quod serui melius semper dabit ordino signans;*  
*Vult verro verri, vult uro ussi, gero gessi,*  
*Quæro quæsi, tero trivi, curro cucurri.*

**So, veluti probat arcesso, incesso atque lacesso,**  
*Formabit sivi: sed tolle capesso capessi* 65  
*Quodque capessivi facit, atque facesso facessi,*  
*Et viso visi; sed pinso pinsui habebit.*

**Sco fit VI:** pascō pavi; vult posco poposci,  
*Vult didici disco, quæxi formare quinisco.*

**To fit TI:** verto verti; sed sisto notetur 70  
*Pro facio stare activum, nam jure stiti dat;*  
*Dat mitto misi, peto vult formare petivi;*  
*Sterto stertui habet, meto messui. Ab ECTO fit EXI;*  
*Ut flecto flexi; necto dat nexui habetque*  
*Nexi; etiam pecto dat pexui, habet quoque pexi.* 75

**Vo fit VI:** volvo volvi; vivo excipe vixi.

**Xo fit UI:** monstrat texo, quod texui habebit.

**Fit CIO CI:** facio feci, jacio quoque jeci:  
*Antiquum lacio lexi, specio quoque spexi,*  
*Elicio, elicui, a lacio sed cætera lexi.* 80

**Fit DIO DI:** fodio fodi. GIO, *ceu fugio, GI.*

**Fit PIO PI:** capio cepi; cupio excipe pivi;  
*Et rapio rapui, sapio sapui, atque sapivi.*

**Fit RIO RI:** pario peperī. TIO SSI, *geminans s,*  
*Ut quatio quassi, quod vix reperitur in usu.* 85

**Denique VO fit UI:** statuo statui; pluo pluvi  
*Format, sive plui; struo sed struxi, fluo fluxi.*

#### FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Is makes ivi.*

**Quarta dat IS IVI:** ut monstrat scio scis tibi scivi.

*Excipias vënio dans vëni, et vëneo vëni;*  
**Raucio** rausi, **farcio** farsī, **sarcio** sarsī, 90  
**Sepio** sepsi, **sentio** sensi, **fulcio** fulsi,  
**Haurio** item hausi, **sancio** sanxi, **vincio** vinxi;  
*Pro salto salio salui, dabit amicio et amicu.*

## II. PRETERPERFECT TENSE OF COMPOUND VERBS.

*Præteritum dat idem simplex tibi compositumque:*  
*Ut docui edocui monstrat. Sed syllaba, semper* 95  
*Quam simplex geminat, composito non geminatur:*  
*Præterquam tribus his, præcurro, excurro, repungo;*  
*Atque a DO, DISCO, STO, POSCO, rite creatis.*

*A PLICO compositum cum SUB vel nomine, ut ista,*  
*Supplico, multiplico, gaudet formare plicavi;* 100  
*Applico, complico, replico, et explico, ut quoque formant.*  
*Quamvis vult OLEO simplex olui, tamen inde*  
*Quodvis compositum melius formabit olevi;*  
*Simplicis at formam redolet sequitur, suboletque.*

*Composita a PUNGO formabunt omnia punxi;* 105  
*Vult unum pupugi, interdumque, repungo, repunxi.*

*Natum a DO, quando est inflexio tertia, ut addo,*  
*Credo, edo, dedo, reddo, perdo, abdo vel obdo,*  
*Condo, indo, trado, prodo, vendo didi: at unum*  
*Abscondo abscondi. Natum a sto stas, stiti habebit.* 110

## COMPOUND VERBS, which change the first Vowel into E.

*Verba hæc simplicia præsentis præteritique,*  
*Si componantur, vocalem primam in E mutant:*  
*Damno ut condemno, lacto delecto, sacroque*  
*Consecro dans, et sic, fallo, arceo, tracto, fatiscor,*  
*Cando vetus, capto, jacto, patior, gradiorque,* 115  
*Partio, carpo, patro, scando, spargo; parioque,*  
*Cujus nata per I duo, comperit et reperit, dant;*  
*Cætera sed per UI, velut hæc, aperire, operire.*

*A pasco pavi tantum composita notentur*  
*Hæc duo, compesco, dispesco, pescui habere;* 120  
*Cætera, ut epasco, servabunt simplicis usum.*

## COMPOUND VERBS which change the first Vowel into I.

*Hæc habeo, lateo, salio, statuo, cado, lædo,*  
*Et tango, atque cano, sic quæro, cædo cecidi,*  
*Sic egeo, teneo, taceo, sapio, rapioque,*  
*Si componantur, vocalem primam in I mutant,* 125  
*Ut rapio rapui, eripio eripui: a cano natum*  
*Præteritum per UI, ceu concino concinui, dat.*

- A* placeo sic displiceo; *sed simplicis usum*  
*Hæc duo, complaceo cum perplaceo, sibi servant.*
- Composita a verbis calco, salto, A per v mutant:* 130  
*Id tibi demonstrant conculco, inculco, resulto.*
- Composita a claudio, quatio, lavo, rejiciunt A:*  
*Id docet a claudio, occludo, excludo; a quatioque,*  
*Percutio, excutio; a lavo, proluo, diluo, nata.*

COMPOUND VERBS, which change the first Vowel of the Present Tense into I, but not the Preterperfect Tense.

- Hæc si componas, ago, emo, sedeo, rego, frango,* 135  
*Et capio, jacio, lacio, specio, premo, pango,*  
*Vocalem primam præsentis in I sibi mutant,*  
*Præteriti nunquam: ceu frango, refringo refregi;*  
*A capio, incipio incepti: sed pauca notentur:*  
*Namque suum simplex perago sequitur, satagoque;* 140  
*Atque ab ago, dego dat degi, cogo coegi;*  
*A rego, sic pergo perrexi; vult quoque surgo*  
*Surrexi: medid præsentis syllabâ ademptâ.*
- Composita a pango retinent A quatuor ista:*  
*Depango, oppango, circumpango, atque repango.* 145
- Nil variat facio, nisi præposito præeunte,*  
*Id docet olfacio, cum calfacio, inficioque.*
- A LEGO nata, re, per, præ, sub, trans, ad, præeunte,*  
*Præsentis servant vocalem; in I cætera mutant;*  
*De quibus hæc, intel-ligo, diligo, negligo, tantum* 150  
*Præteritum lexi faciunt; reliqua omnia legi.*

### III. SUPINES OF SIMPLE VERBS.

- Nunc ex præterito discas formare supinum.*  
*BI sibi TUM sumit: sic namque bibi bibitum fit.*
- CI fit CTUM: vici victum testatur, et ici*  
*Dans ictum, feci factum, jeci quoque jactum.* 155
- DI fit SUM: vidi visum: quædam geminant s;*  
*Ut pandi passum, sedi sessum; adde scidi quod*  
*Dat scissum, atque fidi fissum, fodi quoque fossum.*



*Sic etiam advertas, quod syllaba prima supinis,  
 Quam vult præteritum geminari, non geminatur: 160  
 Idque totondi dans tonsum docet, atque cecidi  
 Quod cesum, et cecidi quod dat casum, atque tetendi  
 Quod tensum et tentum, tütüdi tunsum, atque dedi quod  
 Jure datum poscit, morsum vult atque momordi.*

*GI fit CTUM: legi lectum; pegi pepigique 165  
 Dant pactum, fregi fractum, tetigi quoque tactum,  
 Egi actum, pupugi punctum; fugi fugitum dat.*

*LI fit SUM: salli, stans pro sale condio, salsum;  
 Dat pepuli pulsum, cęculi culsum, atque fefelli  
 Falsum; dat velli vulsum; tuli habet quoque latum. 170*

*MI, NI, PI, QUI, TUM formant, velut hic manifestum :  
 Emi emptum, veni ventum, cęcini a cano cantum;  
 A capio cepi captum; cœpi quoque cœptum:  
 A rumpo rupi ruptum; liqui quoque licium.*

*RI fit SUM: ut, verri versum; pepererit excipe partum. 175*

*SI fit SUM: visi visum; tamen s geminato  
 Misi formabit missum; fulsi excipe fultum,  
 Hausi haustum, sarsi sartum, farsi quoque fartum,  
 Ussi ustum, gessi gestum; torsi duo tortum  
 Et torsum; indulsi indultum indulsumque requirit. 180*

*PSI fit PTUM: scripsi scriptum; sculpsi quoque sculptum.*

*TI fit TUM: a sto namque steti, a sistoque stiti, dant  
 Ambo rite statum: verti tamen excipe versum.*

*VI fit TUM: flavi flatum; pavi excipe pastum:  
 Dat lavi lotum, interdum lautum atque lavatum; 185  
 Potavi potum, interdum facit et potatum,  
 Sed favi fautum, cavi cautum; a sero sevi  
 Formes rite satum, livi linique litum dant,  
 Solvi a solvo solutum, volvi a volvo volutum;  
 Vult singultivi singultum, veneo venis 190  
 Venivi venum, sepelivi rite sepultum.*

*Quod dat UI dat ITUM: domui domitum; excipe quodvis  
 Verbum in uo, quia semper ui formabit in utum,  
 Exui ut exutum: a ruo deme rui ruitum dans:  
 Vult secui sectum, necui nectum, fricuique 195*

Frictum, miscui *item* mistum, *dat et amicui amictum*;  
 Torruī *habet* tostum, docui doctum, tenuique  
 Tentum, consului consultum, alui altum alitumque ;  
 Sic salui saltum, colui ocului quoque cultum ;  
 Pinsui *habet* pistum, rapui raptum, seruique 200  
*A sero vult sertum* ; . *sic* texui *habet* quoque textum.

*Hæc sed UI mutant in SUM* : nam censeo censum,  
 Cellui *habet* celsum, meto messui *habet* quoque messum ;  
 Nexui *item* nexum, *sic* pexui *habet* quoque pexum.

XI *fit CTUM* : vinxi vinctum, *quinque abjiciunt n* ; 205  
*Ut* finxi fictum, minxi mictum, *adjice* pinxi  
*Dans* pictum, strinxi strictum, rinxi quoque rictum.

XUM flexi, plexi, fixi *dant*, et fluo fluxum.

---

#### IV. SUPINES OF COMPOUND VERBS.

*Compositum ut simplex formatur quodque supinum,*  
*Quamvis non eadem stet syllaba semper utrique.* 210  
*Composita a tunsum, demptâ n, tusum ; a ruitum fit,*  
*I mediâ demptâ, rütum ; et a saltum quoque sultum ;*  
*A sero, quando satum format, composita situm dant.*

*Hæc* captum, factum, jactum, raptum, *A per E mutant* ;  
*Et* cantum, partum, sparsum, carptum, *quoque* fartum. 215

*Verbum edo compositum non estum sed facit esum ;*  
*Unum duntaxat comedo formabit utrumque.*

*A nosco tantum duo cognitum et agnïtum habentur ;*  
*Cætera dant nôtum* : nullo est jam noscitur in usu.

---

#### V. PRETERPERFECT TENSE OF VERBS IN OR.

*Verba in OR admittunt ex posteriore supino* 220  
*Præteritum, verso U per US, et SUM consociato*  
*Vel fui ; ut a lectu, lectus sum vel fui. At horum*  
*Nunc est deponens, nunc est commune notandum.*  
*Nam labor lapsus ; patior dat passus et ejus*  
*Nata ; ut, compatiōr compassus, perperiorque* 225  
*Formans perpersus ; fateor dat fassus, et inde*  
*Nata ; ut, confiteor confessus, diffiteorque .*

*Formans diffessus; gradior dat gressus, et inde  
Nata; ut digredior, digressus: junge fatiscor  
Fessus sum, mensus sum metior, utor et usus.* 230

*Pro texo orditus, pro incepto dat ordior orsus,  
Nitor nisus vel nixus sum, ulciscor et ultus;  
Irascor simul iratus, reor atque ratus sum;  
Obliviscor vult oblitus sum, fruor optat  
Fructus vel fruitus; misereri junge misertus.* 235

*Vult tuor et tueor non tutus, sed tuitus sum:  
A loquor adde locutus, et a sequor adde secutus.*

*Experior facit expertus; formare paciscor  
Gaudet pactus sum, nanciscor nactus; apiscor,  
Quod vetus est verbum, aptus sum, unde adipiscor adeptus.*

*Junge queror questus, proficiscor junge profectus, 241  
Expurgiscor sum expurrectus; et hæc quoque commi-  
niscor commentus, nascor natus, moriorque  
Mortuus, atque orior quod præteritum facit ortus.*

---

VI. VERBS WHICH MAKE THE PRÆTERPERFECT TENSE  
BOTH IN THE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES.

*Præteritum activæ et passivæ vocis habent hæc: 245  
Cæno cenavi et cenatus sum tibi format,  
Juro juravi et juratus, potoque potavi  
Et potus, titubo titubavi vel titubatus.*

*Prandeo prandi et pransus sum, placeo placui dat  
Et placitus, suesco dat suevi vult quoque suetus.* 250

*Nubo nupsi nuptaque sum, mereor meritus sum  
Vel merui: adde libet libuit libitum, et licet adde  
Quod licuit licitum, tædet quod tædui et dat  
Pertæsum: adde pudet faciens puduit puditumque;  
Atque piget, tibi quod format piguit pigitumque.* 255

---

VII. OF THE PRÆTERPERFECT TENSE OF VERBS  
NEUTER PASSIVE.

*Neutro-passivum sic præteritum tibi format:  
Gaudeo gavisus sum, fido fisus, et audeo  
Ausus sum, fio factus, soleo solitus sum.*

VERBS which want the Preterperfect Tense.

*Præteritum fugiunt* vergo, ambigo, glisco, fatisco,  
 Polleo, nideo: *ad hæc inceptiva; ut, puerasco;* 260  
*Et passiva, quibus caruere activa supinis;*  
*Ut metuor, timeor: meditativa omnia, præter*  
 Partūrio, esurio, quæ præteritum duo servant.

VERBS which seldom admit a Supine.

*Hæc raro aut nunquam retinebunt verba supinum:*  
 Lambo, mico micui, rudo; tum scabo, parco peperci, 265  
 Dispesco, posco, disco, compesco, quinisco,  
 Dego, ango, sugo, lingo, ningo; satagoque,  
 Psallo, volo, nolo, malo, tremo, strideo, strido,  
 Flaveo, liveo, avet, paveo, conniveo, fervet.

*A nuo compositum, ut renuo: a cado, ut accido, præter* 270  
*Occido quod facit occasum, recidoque recasum:*  
 Respuo, linquo, luo, metuo, cluo, frigeo, calveo,  
*Et sterto, timeo: sic luceo et arceo, cujus*  
*Composita erciturum habent: sic a gruo, ut ingruo, nata;*  
*Et quæcunque in U I formantur neutra secundæ;* 275  
 Excipias oleo, doleo, placeo, taceoque,  
 Pareo, item careo, noceo, jaceo, lateoque,  
*Et valeo, caleo; gaudent hæc namque supino.*



# SYNTAXIS:

OR THE

## CONSTRUCTION OF WORDS.



### CONCORDANTIA PRIMA.



#### NOMINATIVUS ET VERBUM.

VERBUM personale concordat cum nominativo numero et personâ: ut,

*Sera nimis vita est crastina vive hodie.*—Mart.

Vide suprâ, p. 91.

Nominativus pronominum raro exprimitur, nisi distinctionis aut emphasis gratiâ: ut,

*Vos damnâstis: quasi dicat, præterea nemo.*

*Tu nidum servas ego laudo ruris amœni*

*Rivos.*—Hor.

Cum personæ sunt diversæ, verbum digniorem sequitur: ut,

*Si tu et Tullia valetis, bene est, ego et Cicero bene vale-*  
*mus.*—Cic.

*Egregiam vero laudem et spolia ampla refertis*

*Tuque puerque tuus.*—Virg.

*Ipse meique*

*Ante larem proprium vescor.*—Hor.

Hi nominativi, *homines, nos*, sæpe subaudiuntur: ut,  
*Illic, ut perhibent, aut intempesta silet nox.*—Virg.

*Credimus altos*

*Defecisse amnes, epotaque flumina, Medo  
 Prandente.*—Juv.

Nomen, in *appositione* positum cum pronomine primæ vel secundæ personæ, verbum primæ vel secundæ personæ exigit: ut,

*Hannibal peto pacem: sc. Ego Hannibal.*

*Trecenti juravimus: sc. nos.*

*Maxima pars vatum decipimur specie recti.*—Hor.

VERBA Substantiva, ut, *sum, fio, existo*; Verba Vocandi passiva, ut, *nominor, appellor, dicor, vocor, nuncupor*; et iis similia, ut, *videor, appareo, audio, existimor*, utrinque eisdem casus habent: ut,

*Deus est summum bonum.*

*Fis anus, et tamen*

*Vis formosa videri.*—Hor.

*Brevis esse laboro,*

*Obscurus fio.*—Ibid.

*Cato esse, quàm videri bonus, malebat.*—Sall.

*Liber de Amicitia qui inscribitur Lælius.*—Cic.

*Lælius qui sapiens usurpatur.*—Ibid.

*Subtilis veterum iudex et callidus audis.*—Hor.

*Perpusilli vocantur nani.*

*Natura beatis*

*Omnibus esse dedit.*

*Si quæret Pater Urbium*

*Subscribi statuis.*—Hor.

*Infirmo non vacat esse mihi.*—Ovid.

*Creditur olim*

*Velificatus Athos.*—Juv.

*Nobis non licet esse tam disertis.*—Mart.

ITEM omnia fere verba post se adjectivum admittunt, quod cum substantivo verbi, casu, genere, et numero concordat: ut,  
*Omnem crede diem tibi diluxisse supremum.*

VERBA affirmandi et sciendi interdum utrinque nominativum habent, quòd, quod quis affirmat, id non de alio ququam sed de se ipso affirmat: ut,

*Vir bonus et sapiens dignis ait esse paratus.*—Hor.

*Retulit Ajax*

*Esse Jovis pronepos.*—Ovid.

*Uxor invicti Jovis esse nescis?*—Hor.

Sed non in futuro infinitivi: ut,

*Uxorem nescis tu te Jovis esse futuram?*

VERBA *videor, dicor, audior*, et similia, *personaliter* multo sæpius quàm *impersonaliter* usurpari solent: ut,

*Dicitur Afran̄ toga convenisse Menandro.*—Hor.

*Videmur in Formiano hiematuri.*—Cic.

Ne dicas igitur—*Dicitur togam convenisse; videtur nos hiematueros.*

Aliquando Oratio (*the sentence*) est verbo nominativus: ut,

*Ingenuus didicisse fideliter artes*

*Emollit mores nec sinit esse feros.*—Ovid.

*Pars sanitatis velle sanari fuit.*—Sen.

Aliquando adverbium cum genitivo: ut,

*Partim virorum ceciderunt in bello.*

---

### Exceptions.

QUUM alterum verbum (præcipuè si sit verbum sentiendi) præcedit, verbum ponitur in infinitivo, et nomen in accusativo: ut,

*Te rediisse incolumem gaudeo.*



Aliquando prius verbum omittitur: ut,  
*Mene incepto desistere victam!*—Virg.  
*Hunc sine solem*  
*Tam nigrum surrexe mihi!*—Hor.

VERBUM inter duos nominativos diversorum numerorum positum, cum alterutro concordare potest: ut,  
*Amantium iræ amoris integratio est.*—Ter.  
*Pectus quoque robora fiunt.*—Ovid.

NOMEN multitudinis singulare aliquando verbo plurali jungitur: ut,  
*Quo ruitis, generosa domus?*—Ovid.  
*Pars abiere.*  
*Quærit pars semina flammæ:*  
*Pars in frustra secant.*—Virg.

---

## CONCORDANTIA SECUNDA.

---

### SUBSTANTIVUM ET ADJECTIVUM.

ADJECTIVA, participia, et pronomina, cum substantivo, genere, numero, et casu, concordant: ut,  
*Rara avis in terris, nigroque simillima cygno.*—Juv.

Cum substantiva sunt diversi generis, adjectivum dignioris genus, aliquando et numerum, sequitur: ut,  
*Cerere nati sunt Liber et Libera.*—Cic.  
*Vir mulierque boni. Rex Regina beati.*  
*Sociis et rege recepto.*—Virg.

Nisi cum significant rem non animatam, ubi adjectivum in neutro genere ponitur: ut,  
*Arcus et calami bona sunt.*

Vide suprâ, p. 93.

Aliquando Oratio (*the sentence*) supplet locum substantivi, adjectivo in neutro genere posito: ut,

*Audito, regem Doroberniam proficisci.*

*Excepto quod non simul esses, cætera lætus.*—Hor.

Aliquando infinitivus ponitur pro substantivo: ut,

*Scire tuum nihil est. Nostrum illud vivere triste.*

*Velle suum cuique est, nec voto vivitur uno.*—Pers.

*Dulce et decorum est pro patriâ mori.*—Hor.

Adjectivum sæpe in neutro genere ponitur sine substantivo: ut,

*Atque verecundâ laxamus seria mens.*—Pers.

Elliptica sunt:

*Triste lupus stabulis.*—Virg.

*Turpe senex miles.*—Ovid.

*Centauro invehitur magnâ: sc. navi.*—Virg.

*Excisa ferro Pergamum: sc. urbs.*—Sen.

*Eunûchus bis die acta est: sc. Terentii Fabula.*—Suet.

Quædam explicanda sunt per *Synësim* (*the sense*): ut,

*Quid agis, dulcissime rerum?*—Hor.

nam non de *re* sed de *homine* dicitur.

SUBSTANTIVA interdum adjectivè usurpantur: ut,

*Ecce modò heroas sensus afferre videmus.*—Pers.

---

### CONCORDANTIA TERTIA.

---

#### RELATIVUM ET ANTECEDENS.

RELATIVUM cum antecedente concordat, genere, numero, et personâ: ut,

*Vir bonus est quis?*

*Qui consulta patrum, qui leges juraque servat.*—Hor.

Vide suprâ, p. 93.

Eleganter Oratio ponitur pro antecedente: ut,  
*In tempore ad eam veni, quod rerum omnium est primum.*—Ter.

Aliquando pronomen *id* relativo præponitur: ut,  
*In tempore venit, id quod est gratissimum.*

Relativum, inter duo substantiva ejusdem rei sed diversorum generum et numerorum collocatum, ferè cum posteriore concordat: ut,

*Homines tuentur illum globum quæ terra dicitur.*—Cic.  
*Thebæ quod Bæotiæ caput est.*—Liv.

Aliquando relativum concordat cum personali pronomine, quod in possessivo subauditur: ut,

*Omnes omnia*  
*Bona dicere, et laudare fortunas meas,*  
*Qui gnatum haberem tali ingenio præditum.*—Ter.

ubi personale *ego* in possessivo *meas* subauditur.

Per *Synësim* est,  
*Daret ut catenis*  
*Fatale monstrum; quæ generosius*  
*Perire quærens.*—Hor.

nam de Cleopatrá sermo est.

Relativum *QUI*, primæ vel secundæ personæ appositum, verbum primæ vel secundæ personæ exigit: ut,

*Ego quæ Divûm incedo Regina.*—Virg.  
*Adsum qui feci.*—Id.

*Quæ præmia Niso*  
*Digna dabis, primam merui qui laude coronam?*—Id.

*Tu Maximus ille es,*  
*Unus qui nobis cunctando restituis rem.*—Virg.  
*Nos ii sumus qui Ciceronem admiramur.*

Aliquando antecedens mutuatur casum relativi: ut,

*Urbem quam statuo vestra est.*—Virg.

*Quis non malarum, quas amor curas habet,*

*Hæc inter obliviscitur?*—Hor.

Interdum relativum per attractionem ponitur in casu antecedentis: ut,

*Judice, quo nōsti, populo.*—Hor.

Aliquando substantivum relativo additum mutuatur casum relativi: ut,

*Cui nomen Iulo.*—Virg.

*Cui nomen amello*

*Fecere agricolæ.*—Id.

Persæpe antecedens postponitur relativo: ut,

*Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hæc se exerceat.*

Relativum interdum adjectivum antecedentis post se habet, et præsertim numeralia, comparativa, et superlativa: ut,

*Archilochus, Parios fudit qui primus iambos.*

NE DIC—Archilochus, *primus qui fudit iambos.*

*Tarquinius Superbus, qui ultimus Romæ regnavit.*

*Consiliis pare, quæ nunc pulcherrima Nautes*

*Dat senior.*—Virg.

*Ego te, quæ plurima fando*

*Commemorare vales nunquam, Regina, negabo*

*Promeritam: nec me meminisse pigebit Elisæ.*—Virg.

Ellipticum est,

*Velis tantummodo, quæ tua virtus,*

*Expugnabis.*—Hor.

*i. e.* pro virtute, quæ tua est.

Si substantivum relativo et verbo interponatur, relativum

regitur a verbo, aut ab aliâ dictione, quæ cum verbo in oratione locatur: ut,

*Gratia ab officio, quod mora tardat, abest.—Ovid.  
Cujus numen adoro.*

### NOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

QUUM duo substantiva diversæ significationis concurrant, posterius in genitivo ponitur: ut,

*Crescit amor nummi, quantum ipsa pecunia crescit.—Juv.*

Hic genitivus aliquando in dativum vertitur: ut,

*Urbi pater est, urbiq; maritus.—Luc.*

Aliquando in adjectivum: ut,

*Herculeus labor; pro labor Herculis.*

Adjectivum et pronomen, in neutro genere, sine substantivo positum, aliquando genitivum postulat: ut,

*Paululum pecuniæ.*

*Per aperta viarum.*

*Rectum animi servas.—Hor.*

*Hoc ad te literarum dedi.—Cic.*

*Quid causæ est?—Hor.*

Sed hæc adjectiva, *primus, medius, ultimus, extremus, imus, summus, supremus, reliquus, cæterus*, cum substantivis juncta, pro parte *primâ, mediâ, ultimâ*, etc. poni solent: ut,

*Primâ nocte domum claude.—Hor.*

*Hæc Janus summus ab imo*

*Prodacet.—Id.*

*Prima fabula*, i. e. *prima pars* vel *initium fabulæ*; *media nox*, i. e. *media pars noctis*; et simili modo, *summa arx, ima cera, cætera turba*.

Ponitur interdum genitivus tantum, priore substantivo per ellipsin subaudito: ut,

*Ubi ad Dianæ veneris: sc. templum.*—Ter.

*Hectoris Andromache: sc. uxor.*—Virg.

*Hasdrubal Gisconis: sc. filius.*—Liv.

*Deiphobe Glauci: sc. filia.*—Virg.

*Hujus Byrrhia: sc. servus.*—Ter.

Duo substantiva rei ejusdem in eodem casu ponuntur: ut,

*Effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum.*—Ovid.

*Nymphæ, noster amor, Libethrides.*—Virg.

*Et certamen erat, Corydon cum Thyrside, magnum.*—Virg.

*Effugimus scopulos Ithacæ, Laertia regna.*—Virg.

LAUS, vituperium, vel qualitas rei, ponitur in ablativo, etiam genitivo substantivi; sed non sine adjectivo: ut,

*Ingenui vultus puer, ingenuique pudoris.*—Juv.

*Vir nullâ fide.*

OPUS et usus ablativum exigunt, præsertim participii passivi: ut,

*Nunc animis opus, Ænea. Nunc viribus usus.*—Virg.

*Priusquam incipias, consulto, et, ubi consulueris, maturè facto opus est.*—Sall.

OPUS autem adjectivè pro necessarius aliquando poni videtur: ut,

*Dux nobis et auctor opus est.*—Cic.

*Dices nummos mille opus esse.*—Cic.

Aliquando nominativus ponitur pro vocativo: ut,

*Vos o patricius sanguis.*—Pers.

*Projice tela manu, sanguis meus.*—Virg.

Aliquando vocativus pro nominativo: ut,

*Macte esto.*

*Prætoremve tuum vel quod, trabeate, salutas.*—Pers.

---

### GENITIVUS.

GENITIVUS indicat *subjectum* cui quid pertinet: ut, *Oratio Ciceronis*. *Personam*, a quâ venit: ut, *Vulnus Ulyssi*. *Causam* ob quam fit: ut, *ereptæ virginis irâ*. *Qualitatem*: ut, *homo summi ingenii*. *Objectum* quò tendit: ut, *amor summi*. *Quantitatem*: ut, *fossa decem pedum*.

### GENITIVUS POST NOMEN.

ADJECTIVA quæ desiderium, notitiam, memoriam, timorem significant, atque iis contraria, genitivum exigunt: ut,

*Est natura hominum novitatis avida.*—Plin.

*Conscia mens recti famæ mendacia ridet.*

*Memor esto brevis ævi. Immemor beneficii.*

*Imperitus rerum. Rudis belli.*

*Timidus Deorum.*—Ovid.

*Impavidus sui.*—Claud.

Cum plurimis aliis, quæ *qualitatem* denotant: ut, *æger animi; lætus laboris; maturus ævi; seri studiorum; truncus pedum; vanus veri; notus in fratres animi paterni:—vel relationem; ut, potens sui; voti reus; terræ fastidiosus.*

Huc pertinent etiam substantiva significationis cognatæ cum illis adjectivis: ut,

*Segetis certa fides meæ.*—Hor.

*Generis fiducia vestri.*—Virg.

ADJECTIVA verbalia in *az* genitivum exigunt: ut,

*Audax ingenii.—Tempus edax rerum.—Justitiæ tenax.*

NOMINA partitiva, numeralia, comparativa, et superlativa; et quædam adjectiva partitive posita, genitivum substantivi, a quo et genus mutuatur, exigunt: ut

*Utrum horum mavis accipe.*

*Primus regum Romanorum fuit Romulus.*

*Manuum fortior est dextera.*

*Indus omnium fluminum maximus.*

*Sapientum octavus.*

*Sequimur te, sancte deorum.*—Virg.

Interdum adjectivum subauditur: ut,

*Fies nobilium tu quoque fontium: sc. unus.*—Hor.

*Scribe tui gregis hunc.*—Hor.

Usurpantur autem et cum his præpositionibus, *a, ab, de, e, ex, in, inter, ante*: ut,

*Ajax heros ab Achille secundus.*—Hor.

*Deus e vobis alter es.*—Ovid.

*Thales sapientissimus in septem fuit.*—Cic.

*Primus inter omnes.*

*Primus ante omnes.*

SECUNDUS aliquando dativum exigit: ut,

*Haud ulli veterum virtute secundus.*—Virg.

INTERROGATIVUM, et ejus redditivum, ejusdem casûs et temporis erunt: ut,

*Quarum rerum nulla est satietas? Divitiarum.*

#### GENITIVUS POST VERBUM.

SUM genitivum postulat, quoties significat possessionem, officium, signum, partem, aut id quod ad rem quampiam pertinet: ut,

*Pecus est Melibæi.*—Virg.



*Adolescentis est, majores natu revereri.*—Cic.

*Totum muneris hoc tui est.*—Hor.

Sed usurpantur eodem sensu hi neutri nominativi, *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum, humanum, belluinum*, et similia: ut,

*Non est meum contra auctoritatem senatûs dicere.*—Cic.

*Quod placeo, tuum est.*—Hor.

*Humanum est errare.*—Cic.

VERBA accusandi, damnandi, absolvendi, et similia, genitivum postulant, vocabulo *crimine* subaudito: ut,

*Qui alterum accusat probri (sc. crimine), eum ipsum se intueri oportet.*—Plaut.

*Sceleris condemnat generum suum.*—Cic.

*Furti absolutus est.*

*Cæsar repetundarum Dolabellam postulavit.*—Suet.

*Accusat me capitis; absolvit voti; damnat voti.*

*Damnatusque longi*

*Sisyphus Æolides laboris.*—Hor.

Item verba monendi genitivum exigunt: ut,

*Adversæ res admonuerunt religionum.*—Liv.

Vertitur hic genitivus aliquando in ablativum, vel cum præpositione, vel sine præpositione: ut,

*Putavi eâ de re te esse admonendum.*—Cic.

*Si in me iniquus es judex, condemnabo eodem ego te crimine.*—Id.

UTERQUE, *nullus, alter, neuter, alius, ambo*, et superlativus gradus, non nisi in ablativo id genus verbis junguntur: ut,

*Accusas furti, an stupri? utroque, vel de utroque—ambobus, vel de ambobus—neutro, vel de neutro.*

*De plurimis simul accusaris.*

SUM, *causam* significans, jungitur participiis in *duo* casûs genitivi et dativi: ut,

*Regium imperium libertatis conservandæ fuit.*—Sall.

*Est etiam ille labor curandis vitibus alter.*—Virg.

SATAGO, *miseror*, et *miseresco*, genitivum postulant; sed *miseror* et *commiseror* accusativum: ut,

*Is rerum suarum satagit.*—Ter.

*Oro miserere laborum*

*Tantum, miserere animi non digna ferentis.*—Virg.

*Et generis miserescere tui.*—Stat.

*Aut doluit miserans inopem, aut invidit habenti.*—Virg.

REMINSOR, *obliviscor*, *memini*, *recordor*, genitivum, aut accusativum, admittunt; ut,

*Data fidei reminiscitur.*

*Hæc olim meminisse juvabit.*—Virg.

*Proprium est stultitiæ, aliorum vitia cernere, oblivisci suorum.*—Cic.

*Quisquis es, amissos hinc jam obliviscere Graios.*—Virg.

*Hujus meriti in me recordor.*—Cic.

*Si rite audita recordor.*—Virg.

REGNO interdum genitivo jungitur: ut,

*Daunus agrestium*

*Regnavit populorum.*—Hor.

POTIOR, vel genitivo, vel ablativo, jungitur: ut,

*Romani signorum et armorum potiti sunt.*—Sall.

*Egressi optatâ potiuntur Troes arenâ.*—Virg.

## DATIVUS.

DATIVUS indicat *objectum*, ad quod vel *nomen* vel *verbum directè refertur*, vel *id cui aliquid fit*, vel *acquiritur*, vel *admititur*.

## DATIVUS POST NOMEN.

ADJECTIVA quibus commodum, incommodum, similitudo, dissimilitudo, propinquitas, distantia, voluptas, submissio, aut relatio ad aliquid significatur, dativum postulant: ut,

*Si facis, ut patriæ sit idoneus, utilis agris.*—Juv.

*Turba gravis paci, placidæque inimica quieti.*—Mart.

*Patri similis.*—Cic.

*Qui color albus erat, nunc est contrarius albo.*—Ovid.

*Jucundus amicis.*—Mart.

*Omnibus supplex.*

*Proximus huic, magno sed proximus intervallo.*—Virg.

Huc referuntur nomina ex *con* præpositione composita: ut, *contubernalis, commilito, conservus, cognatus, &c.*

Quædam ex his quæ *ingenii* similitudinem significant genitivo, quæ *corporis*, dativo, junguntur: ut,

*Ille tui similis moribus, ore mihi.*

COMMUNIS, *alienus, immunis*, et similia, genitivo, dativo, et ablativo cum præpositione, junguntur: ut,

*Commune animantium omnium est.*—Cic.

*Mors omnibus est communis.*—Id.

*Hoc mihi tecum commune est.*

*Non aliena consilii.*—Sall.

*Alienus ambitioni.*—Sen. Præf.

*Non alienus a Scævola studiis.*—Cic:

*Vobis immunibus hujus*

*Esse mali dabitur.*—Ovid.

*Caprificus omnibus immunis est.*—Plin.

*Immunes ab illis malis sumus.*

*Ager publicus est factus populi Romani.*—Cic.

*Affinis hujus culpæ.*—Id.

*Studium eloquentiæ non erat commune Græciæ, sed proprium Athenarum.*—Id.

ALIUS aliquando ablativo jungitur sine præpositione: ut,  
*Neve putes alium sapiente bonoque beatum.*—Hor.

NATUS, *commodus, incommodus, utilis, inutilis, vehemens, aptus*, cum multis aliis, interdum dativo, interdum accusativo cum præpositione, junguntur: ut,

*Natus rebus agendis.*—Hor.

*Natus ad gloriam.*—Cic.

*Utilis ad eam rem.*

*Non est aptus equis Ithacæ locus.*—Hor.

VERBALIA in *bilis* accepta passivè, et participialia in *dis*, dativum postulant: ut,

*Nulli penetrabilis astro*

*Lucus iners.*—Stat.

*O mihi post nullos Juli memorande sodales!*—Mart.

#### DATIVUS POST VERBUM.

OMNIA verba regunt dativum ejus rei, vel personæ, cui aliquid acquiritur, aut adimitur: ut,

*Mihi istic nec seritur, nec metitur.*—Plaut.

*Quis te mihi casus ademit?*—Ovid.

*Non præceptor, quod discis, sed tibi discis.*

VERBA significantia commodum, aut incommodum, regunt dativum: ut,

*Non potes mihi commodare, nec incommodare.*

Excipe *juvo, lædo, delecto*, et alia quædam, quæ accusativum exigunt: ut,

*Fessum quies plurimum juvat.*

*Quæ lædunt oculum festinas demere.*—Hor.

*Lectorem delectando, pariterque monendo.*—Hor.

VERBA certandi et comparandi regunt dativum: ut,

*Solus tibi certet Amyntas.*—Virg.

*Cæpto pugnemus amori.*—Ovid.

*Tabescat? neque se majori pauperiorum*

*Turbæ comparet?*—Hor.

Interdum vero ablativum regunt cum præpositione *cum*; interdum regunt accusativum cum præpositionibus *ad* et *inter*: ut,

*Comparo Virgilium cum Homero.*

*Si ad eum comparatur, nihil est.*

*Hæc non sunt inter se conferenda.*

VERBA dandi et reddendi regunt dativum: ut,

*Fortuna multis dat nimis, satis nulli.* Mart.

*Ingratus est, qui gratiam bene merenti non reponit.*

Aliquando accusativum *personæ* cum ablativo *rei*: ut,

*Hoc juvenem egregium præstanti munere donat.*—Virg.

VERBA promittendi ac solvendi regunt dativum: ut,

*Quæ tibi promitto, ac recipio sanctissimè esse observaturum.*—Cic.

*Æs alienum mihi numeravit.*—Id.

VERBA imperandi et nuntiandi regunt dativum: ut,

*Imperat, aut servit, collecta pecunia cuique.*—Hor.

*Quid de quoque viro, et cui dicas, sæpe videto.* Id.

**Excipe** *judeo*, *rego*, *guberno*, quæ accusativum habent: ut,  
*Pauper eris! fortem hoc animum tolerare jubebo.*—Hor.  
*Luna regit menses—orbem Deus ipse gubernat.*

**Excipe et tempero et moderor**, quæ posita pro *modum im-*  
*no* vel *parco*, dativum, pro *guberno*, accusativum habent: ut,  
*Temperat ipse sibi—Sol temperat omnia luce.*  
*Hic moderatur equos—qui non moderabitur iræ.*

**VERBA** fidendi dativum regunt: ut,  
*Utrumque vitium est, nulli credere, et omnibus.*  
*Vacuis committere venis*  
*Nil nisi lene decet.*—Hor.

**VERBA** obsequendi et repugnandi dativum regunt: ut,  
*Deo qui obēdit optimam offert victimam.*  
*Parenti oportet potius quàm amori obsequi.*—Ter:  
*Semper obtemperat pius filius patri.*  
*Ignavis precibus fortuna repugnat.*—Ovid.

**HÆC** verba,

**NUBO, VACO, STUDEO, FAVEOQUE, INDULGEO, PARCO,**  
**GRATULOR, AUXILIOR, MEDEORQUE, IRASCOR, ADŪ-**  
**LOR,**

regunt dativum: ut,

*Uxorem ducit vir; nubit sponsa marito.*  
*Carminibus vacat; et Musas amat, huic studet uni—*  
*Altera frumentis quoniam favet, altera Baccho.*—Virg.  
*Indulge ordinibus.*—Virg.  
*Parce pio generi.*—Virg.  
*Irascor tibi; sic meos amores!*—Catull.  
*Nunquam Atticus potenti adulatus est Antonio.*—Nep.  
*Non universis tantum sed singulis a Deo consultitur.*—Cic.  
*Ignoscet verrucis illius.*—Hor.

HÆC verba,

EXCUSO, IGNOSCO, PERSUADEO, DEFENDOQUE,  
CONDONO, CAVEO, MINOR, INVIDEOQUE, PROBOQUE,  
et quædam alia, regunt dativum *personæ* et accusativum *rei*: ut,

*Ille Philippo*

*Excusare laborem, et mercenaria vincla.*—Hor.

*Ignoscis aliis multa, sed nihil tibi.*

*Hoc tibi persuades: hoc probat ille mihi.*

*Solstitium pecori defendite.*—Virg.

*Æstum arcebis gravido pecori.*—Id.

*Te suis matres metuunt juvenis.*—Hor.

*Utrique mortem est minitatus.*—Cic.

*Ascanione pater Romanas invidet arces?*—Virg.

SUM, cum compositis, præter *possum*, regit dativum: ut,  
*Mihi nec obest, nec prodest.*

DATIVUM ferme regunt verba composita cum his adverbis,  
*benè, satis, malè*; et cum his præpositionibus, *præ, ab, ad,*  
*con, sub, ante, post, ob, in, inter*: ut,

*Dii tibi benefaciant!*—Ter.

*Vobis faciam satis.*—Cic.

*Intempestivè qui occupato adluserit.*—Phædr.

*Conducit hoc tuæ laudi. Convixit nobis.*

*Subolet jam uxori, quod ego machinor.*—Plaut.

*Iniquissimam pacem justissimo bello antefero.*—Cic.

*Postpono famæ pecuniam.*

*Ea quoniam nemini obtrudi potest,*

*Itur ad me.*—Ter.

*Venienti occurrite morbo.*—Pers.

*Murus fenestris officit.*

*Impendet omnibus periculum.*

*Non solum interfuit his rebus, sed etiam præfuit.*—Cic.

Non pauca ex his mutant dativum in alium casum: ut,  
*Præstat ingenio alius alium.*—Quinct.

Est pro *habeo* regit dativum: ut,  
*Est mihi namque domi pater, est injusta noverca.*—Virg.

Huic simile est *suppetit*: ut,  
*Pauper enim non est, cui rerum suppetit usus.*—Hor.

SUM, cum multis aliis, geminum admittit dativum, unum  
*personæ*, alterum vero *rei*: ut,

*Exitio est avidis mare nautis.*—Hor.  
*Speras tibi id laudi fore, quod mihi vitio vertis?*  
*Est tibi cordi; est tibi curæ.*

Dativus *rei* eleganter etiam aliis verbis additur: ut,  
*Virtus neque datur dono, neque accipitur.*—Sall.  
*Pecuniam fœnori dat.*  
*Rem habet religioni.*  
*Habere quæstui Rempublicam, est turpissimum.*—Cic.  
*Receptui canit.*—Cæs.  
*Habet illum despiciatui, ludibrio, et derisui.*

Est ubi hic dativus, *tibi*, aut *sibi*, aut etiam *mihi*, elegantissimè  
*causâ* additur: ut,

*Suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo.*—Ter.  
*Quid mihi Celsus agit?*—Hor.  
*Quid tibi vis, mulier?*—Hor.

---

### ACCUSATIVUS.

ACCUSATIVUS indicat *objectum*, quod directè ab actione  
*patitur*.



## ACCUSATIVUS POST NOMEN.

ACCUSATIVUS *partem* indicans subjicitur verbis, adjectivis, et participiis: ut,

*Os humerosque Deo similis. Vultum demissa tacebat.  
Micat auribus et tremit artus.—Virg.  
Cætera Graius.—Virg.  
Ingenium placidâ mollimur ab arte.—Ovid.*

## ACCUSATIVUS POST VERBUM.

VERBA transitiva cujuscunque generis, sive activi, sive deponentis, exigunt accusativum: ut,

*Percontatorem fugito, nam garrulus idem est.—Hor.  
Imprimis venerare Deum.*

VERBA neutra accusativum habent cognatæ significationis: ut,

*Longam incommitata videtur  
Ire viam.—Virg.  
Mirum somniavi somnium.  
Duram servit servitutum.—Plaut.  
Ludum insolentem ludere pertinax.—Hor.*

SUNT et alia verba cùm neutra tum passiva quæ post se figuratè accusativum habent: ut,

*Nec vox hominem sonat, o Dea certe!—Virg.  
Hortus olet violas.  
Hyblæum sapiunt dulcia mella thymum.  
Et duræ quercus sudabunt roscida mella.—Virg.  
Emptum cenat olus.—Hor.  
Qui Curios simulant, et Bacchanalia vivunt.—Juv.  
Carnem pluere.—Liv.  
Stadium currit.  
Stadio qui sæpe peracto  
Vicit Olympia.—Enn.*

*Maria aspera juro.*—Virg.

*Agrestem saltaret uti Cyclopa, rogabat.*

*Nunc Satyrum nunc agrestem Cyclopa movetur.*—Hor.

NEUTRA interdum passivam formam accipiunt cum nominativo cognatæ significationis: ut,

*Libenter hoc et omne militabitur*

*Bellum.*—Hor.

*Tertia vivitur ætas.*

VERBA rogandi, docendi, cogendi, vestiendi, celandi, fere duplicem regunt accusativum, unum *personæ*, alterum *rei*: ut,

*Pacem te poscimus omnes.*—Virg.

*Insuevit pater optimus hoc me.*—Hor.

*Dedocebo te istos mores.*

*Ridiculum est te istuc me admonere.*—Ter.

*Quid non mortalia pectora cogis,*

*Auri sacra fames?*—Virg.

*Induit se calceos, quos prius exuerat.*

*Ea ne me celet, consuefecit filium.*—Ter.

Hujusmodi verba etiam in passivâ voce accusativum post se habent: ut,

*Posceris exta bovis.*

*Doctus iter melius.*—Hor.

*Id celabar.*

*Multa in extis monemur.*—Cic.

*Quod Paris, ut salvus regnet vivatque beatus,*

*Cogi posse negat.*—Hor.

*Inutile ferrum*

*Cingitur.*—Virg.

*Flores inscripti nomina regum.*—Id.

*Pascuntur et arbuta passim,*

*Et glaucas salices.*—Id.

*Magnum agri modum censei.*—Cic.

*Magna coronari contemnat Olympia?*—Hor.

NOMINA appellativa adduntur fere cum præpositione ver-  
bis quæ denotant motum: ut,

*Ad templum Palladis ibant.*—Virg.

INFINITIVUS aliquando supplet locum accusativi.

*Reddes dulce loqui: reddes ridere decorum.*—Hor.

VERBUM aliquando omittitur.

*Quò mihi fortunam, si non conceditur uti?*—Hor.

*Cantando tu illum?*—Virg.

ACCUSATIVUS aliquando omittitur: ut,

*Hannibal movit: sc. castra:—solvit: sc. anchoras.*

Præsertim si sit pronomen.

*Quadrigæ*

*Addunt in spatia: sc. se.*—Virg.

*Tantum abhorret, ac mutat.*—Catull.

*Solidam in glaciem vertère lacunæ.*—Virg.

*Miscetque viris, neque cernitur ulli.*—Id.

VERBALIA nomina interdum regunt casus suorum verbo-  
rum: ut,

*Quid tibi hoc curatio est?*—Plaut.

*Hanno vitabundus castra.*—Liv.

---

### ABLATIVUS.

ABLATIVUS indicat *conditionem* vel *qualitatem* rei: *i. e.* nu-  
merum, pretium, qualitatem, modum, instrumentum, causam,  
locum, tempus, et similia.

## ABLATIVUS POST NOMEN.

ADJECTIVA, quæ ad copiam, egestatemve pertinent, interdum genitivum, interdum ablativum exigunt: ut,

*Dives equum, dives pictat vestis, et auri.*—Virg.

*Dives agris, dives positus in fœnore nummis.*—Hor.

*Amor et melle, et felle, est fœcundissimus.*—Plaut.

*Expers fraudis. Gratiâ beatus.*

*Pauper aquæ.*—Hor.

*Mancipiis locuples eget æris Cappadocum rex.*—Hor.

ADJECTIVA et substantiva regunt ablativum significantem causam et formam, instrumentum vel modum rei: ut,

*Pallidus irâ.*

*Nomine grammaticus, re barbarus.*

*Trojanus origine Cæsar.*—Virg.

*Ennius ingenio maximus, arte rudis.*—Ovid.

*Pericles et Thucydides grandes verbis, crebri sententiis, compressione rerum breves.*—Cic.

DIGNUS, *indignus, præditus, captus, contentus, extorris, fretus, liber*, et similia, cum adjectivis *pretium* significantibus, ablativum exigunt: ut,

*Curantem quicquid dignum sapiente bonoque est.*—Hor.

*Qui gnatum haberem tali ingenio præditum.*—Ter.

*Oculis capti fodere cubilia talpæ.*—Virg.

*Agesilaus fuit claudus altero pede.*—Nep.

*Sorte tuâ contentus abi.*

*Terrore liber animus.*—Liv.

*Neque purpurâ venale, neque auro.*—Hor.

Horum nonnulla interdum genitivum admittunt: ut,

*Magnorum indignus avorum.*—Virg.

*Carmina digna Deæ.*

*Extorris regni.*—Stat.

COMPARATIVA, nisi exponantur per *quàm*, ablativum exigunt: ut,

*Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum: i. e. quàm aurum, quàm virtutes sunt.*—Hor.

*O matre pulchrâ filia pulchrior!*—Hor.

*Meliorem, quàm ego sum, suppono tibi.*—Plaut.

*Ego hominem callidiorem vidi neminem*

*Quàm Phormionem.*—Ter.

*Minus firmum nil est quàm ventus et unda.*—Ovid.

*Quid magis est durum saxo? Quid mollius undâ?*

*Dura tamen molli saxa cavantur aquâ.*—Ovid.

ABLATIVUS post comparativa aliquando eleganter omititur: ut,

*Adolescentia fervidior est: i. e. justo.*

*Rusticius tonso toga defuit.*—Hor.

*Parcius hic vivit; frugi dicatur.*—Id.

*Voluptates commendat rarior usus.*—Juv.

COMPARATIVA interdum exponuntur per *magis*: ut,

*Velleius, qui adulatur Tiberio, disertus est magis quàm sapiens: i. e. Disertus quidem est; sapiens non item.*

DUO COMPARATIVA eleganter concurrunt: ut,

*Velleius disertior est quàm sapientior: i. e. sapiens quidem est, sed non tam sapientiâ clarus, quàm eloquentiâ.*

COMPARATIVUM sæpe in verbo continetur: ut,

*Accipere quàm facere præstat injuriam.*—Cic.

*Ridenda pœmata malo,*

*Quàm te conspicuæ divina Philippica famæ,*

*Volveris a primâ quæ proxima.*—Juv.

COMPARATIONES sæpe exprimuntur per præpositiones *ante*, *inter*, *præ*, *præter*, *supra*: ut,

*Felix ante alias Virgo!*

*Inter paucos doctus*  
*Præ nobis beatus.*

COMPARATIVIS, quàm præter spem aliquid accidit, voculæ quàm pro eleganter adjici solent: ut,

*Prælium atrocius erat, quàm pro numero pugnantium.*

TANTO, quanto, hoc, eo, et quo, cum quibusdam aliis, quæ mensuram excessûs significant; item, ætate et natu, comparativis et superlativis sæpe junguntur: ut,

*Tanto pessimus omnium poëta,*

*Quanto tu optimus omnium patronus.*—Catull.

*Quo plus sunt potæ plus sitiuntur aquæ.*—Ovid.

*Major et maximus ætate.*

*Major et maximus natu.*

SUPERLATIVIS in *singulari* numero jungitur pronomen *quisque*, singulos ejus generis eximios significans; in *plurali* vero, eximios diversorum generum: ut,

*Optima quæque dies miseris mortalibus ævi*

*Prima fugit.*—Virg.

*Si scriptorum sunt antiquissima quæque*

*Scripta vel optima.*—Hor.

*Pro jucundis aptissima quæque dabunt Dî.*—Juv.

SUPERLATIVIS adjiciuntur particulæ *ut, ita*, cum pronomine *quisque*: ut,

*Ut quisque optimè dicit, ita maximè dicendi difficultatem pertimescit.*—Cic.

SUPERLATIVA eleganter exprimuntur per *tam, quam; tantum, quantum; ut, qui; is, qui*; adjecto pronomine *QUI*.

*Tàm sum mitis, quàm QUI lenissimus.*

*Tantum huic tribuo, quantum cui plurimum.*

*Grata res est, ut quæ maximè.*

*Eo jure fecit, quo quis optimè.*

SUPERLATIVIS adjicitur particula *quàm*, verbo *possum* interdum addito: ut,

*Dicam quàm brevissimè.*

*Dicam quàm potero brevissimè.*

#### ABLATIVUS POST VERBUM.

QUODVIS verbum admittit ablativum sine præpositione significantem *instrumentum*, aut *causam*, aut *modum actionis*: ut,

*Hi jaculis, illi certant defendere saxis.*—Virg.

*Dente lupus, cornu taurus petit.*

*Et corde et genibus tremit.*—Hor.

*Vehementer irâ excanduit.*

*Mirâ celeritate rem peregit.*

ABLATIVO *modi* interdum additur præpositio, sed plerumque cum adjectivo: ut,

*Magnâ cum diligentia scripsit.*—Cic.

QUIBUSDAM verbis subjicitur nomen *pretii* in ablativo casu: ut,

*Spem pretio non emo.*—Ter.

*Teruncio, seu vitiosâ nuce non emerim.*

*Multorum sanguine ea Pœnis victoria stetit.*—Liv.

*Vendidit hic auro patriam.*—Virg.

VALOR rei in *genitivo*, PRETIUM vero, quod vel penditur vel poscitur, in *ablativo* ponitur: ut,

*Quanti emptæ? parvo. Quanti ergo? octussibus.*—Hor.

*Emerere denario, quod est mille denarium.*—Cic.

*Quod non opus est, asse carum est.*—Sen.

VILI, paulo, minimo, magno, nimio, plurimo, dimidio, duplo, per se sæpe ponuntur, subaudita voce *pretio*: ut,

*Vili venit triticum.*

FLOCCI, *nauci, nihili, pili, assis, hujus, teruncii*, verbis æstimandi adduntur: ut,

*Ego illum flocci pendo, neque hujus facio, qui te pili æstimat.*

Excipiuntur hi genitivi sine substantivis positi: *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, tantidem, quantivis, quantilibet, quancūque*, &c. : ut,

*Tanti eris aliis, quanti tibi fueris.*—Cic.

*Multo majoris Ælæpæ mecum vèneunt.*—Phæd.

VERBA abundandi, implendi, onerandi, instruendi, abstinendi, et his diversa, ablativo junguntur: ut,

*Amore abundas, Antipho.*—Ter.

*Vacare culpâ maximum est solatium.*—Cic.

*Sylla omnes suos divitiis explevit.*—Sall.

*Te quibus mendaciis homines levissimi onerârunt!*—Cic.

*Hæ sunt artes quibus ætas puerilis informari, instrui, erudiri solet.*

*Te hoc crimine expèdi.*—Ter.

Ex quibus quædam nonnunquam genitivum regunt: ut,

*Desine mollium tandem querelarum.*—Hor.

*Abstineto,*

*Dixit, irarum calidæque rixæ.*—Hor.

*Implentur veteris Bacchi, pinguisque ferinæ.*—Virg.

*Nec medici credis nec curatoris egere.*—Hor.

FUNGOR, *fruor, utor, vescor, dignor, muto, communico, supersedeo*, ablativo junguntur: ut,

*Officiis vitæ bene fungitor: hoc erit, uti*

*Præsenti vitâ, præteritâque frui.*

*Quicunque terræ munere vescimur.*—Hor.

*Haud equidem tali me dignor honore.*—Virg.

*Diruit, ædificat, mutat quadrata rotundis.*—Hor.



*Communicabo te mensâ meâ.*—Plaut.

*Verborum multitudinē supersedendum est.*—Cic.

VERBA sacrificandi ablativo junguntur: ut,

*Cum faciam vitulâ pro frugibus, ipse veniō.*—Virg.

*Hæc cędō ut admoveam templis, et farre litabo.*—Pers.

MEREOR et MEREIO, cum adverbis *bene, male, melius, pejus, optime, pessime*, ablativo junguntur cum præpositione *de*: ut,

*De me semper benè meritus est.*

*Si benè quid de te merui.*—Virg.

QUÆDAM accipiendi, distandi, et auferendi verba, aliquando dativo junguntur: ut,

*Paulum sepultæ distat inertia*

*Celata virtus.*—Hor.

*Eripe te moræ.*—Id.

QUIBUSLIBET verbis additur ABLATIVUS ABSOLUTE sump-  
tus: ut,

*Imperante Augusto, natus est Christus; imperante Tibe-  
rio, crucifixus.*

*Aut ego, lecto*

*Aut scripto, quod me tacitum juvet, ungor olivo.*—Hor.

*Pericle Athenis principe, Sophocles, Euripides, Aristophanes Poætæ, Phidias, Ictinus et Callicrates Sculptores et Architecti, clari habebantur.*

ABLATIVUS ABSOLUTUS, pro *si, quamdiu, simulac, quoniam, quamvis*, interdum ponitur: ut,

*Me duce, tutus eris.*—Ovid.

*Nil desperandum, Teucro duce, et auspice Teucro.*—Hor.

*Rege incolumi, mens omnibus una est;*

*Amisso, rupere fidem.*—Virg.

*Lacrymæ cadunt, nolentibus nobis.*—Sen.

## PRONOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

GENITIVI *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, ponuntur, cum *persona* significatur: ut,

*Languet desiderio tui.*

*Parsque tui lateat corpore clausa meo.*—Ovid.

*Imago nostri.*

MEUS, *tuus, suus, noster, vester*, ponuntur, cum *actio* vel *possessio rei* significatur: ut,

*Favet desiderio tuo.*

*Imago nostra: i. e. quam nos possidemus.*

GENITIVI *nostri, vestri*, ponuntur, cum OBJECTUM, quo quid *tendit*; *nostrum* vero et *vestrum*, cum SUBJECTUM, quo quid *constat*, significatur: ut,

*Amor nostri; frequentia vestrum.*

*Uterque vestrum sit memor nostri, precor.*

*Lucili ritu, nostrum melioris utroque.*—Hor.

HÆC POSSESSIVA, *meus, tuus, suus, noster, et vester*, hos genitivos post se recipiunt, *ipsius, solius, unius, duorum, trium, &c. omnium, plurium, paucorum, cujusque*, et genitivos participiorum et adjectivorum, qui ad primitivum subauditum referuntur: ut,

*Dixi meum unius operam rempublicam esse salvam.*—Cic.

*Cum mea nemo*

*Scripta legat vulgo recitare timentis.*—Hor.

*Nostram omnium memoriam.*

*Mea defuncti molliter ossa cubent!*

*Nostros vidisti flentis ocellos.*—Ovid.

*Tuum hominis simplicis pectus vidimus.*—Cic.

SUI et *suis* reciproca sunt, et semper reflectuntur ad id quod præcipuum in sententiâ præcessit: ut,

*Petrus nimium admiratur se, parcit erroribus suis.*

*Magnopere Petrus rogat, ne se deserat.*

*Hannibalem sui ex urbe ejecerunt.*—Cic.

*Trahit sua quemque voluptas.*—Virg.

*Suis et ipsa Roma viribus ruit.*—Hor.

HÆC demonstrativa, *hic, is, iste, ille*, sic distinguuntur: *hic* *miki* proximum demonstrat; *is*, de quo mentionem fecimus; *iste* eum, qui apud *te* est; *ille* eum, qui ab *utroque* remotus est.

HIC et *ille*, cum ad duo anteposita referuntur, *hic* plerumque ad posterius, *ille* ad prius refertur: ut,

*Quocunque aspicias, nihil est, nisi pontus et aer,*

*Nubibus hic tumidus, fluctibus ille minax.*—Ovid.

HIC aliquando ponitur pro *ego*: ut,

*Hunc hominem si velles tradere: i. e. me.*—Hor.

IS et IDEM cum conjunctionibus ob *emphasim* sæpe ponuntur: ut,

*Homo habet memoriam et eam infinitam.*—Cic.

*Erant in Torquato multæ literæ nec eæ vulgares.*—Cic.

*Operam in res obscuras conferunt, easdemque non necessarias.*—Cic.

IDEM usurpatur pro *item*, et *ipse* pro *etiam*: ut,

*Nil liberale, quod non idem justum.*—Cic.

*Nil prodest, quod non lædere possit idem.*—Ovid.

*Vespasiano Titus successit, qui et ipse Vespasianus est dictus.*—Eut.

ILLE *emphasin* auget: ut,

*Aut Ille sinit regnator Olympi.*—Virg.

*Non ille pro caris propinquis  
Et patriâ timidus perire.*—Hor.

ILLE et IS eleganter in principio sententiæ ponuntur; distinctionis et affectionis exprimendæ gratiâ: ut,

*Ipse Pater, mediâ nimborum in nocte, coruscâ  
Fulmina molitur dextrâ, quo maxima motu  
Terra tremit: fugere feræ, et mortalia corda  
Per gentes humilis stravit pavor. ILLE flagranti  
Aut Atho, aut Rhodopen, aut alta Ceraunia, telo  
Dejicit.*—Virg.

*Quo fletu manes, quâ numina voce moveret?*

ILLA quidem Stygiâ nabat jam frigida cymbâ.—Id.

*Cum Proteus, consueta petens e fluctibus antra,  
Ibat; EUM vasti circum gens humida ponti  
Exultans rorem late dispergit amarum.*—Id.

IPSE numeralibus exactè definiendis adhibetur: ut,

*Cato mortuus est annis octoginta tribus ipsis ante me  
consulem.*—Cic.

IPSE sæpe ultro vel sponte significat: ut,

*Ipsæ veniunt ad mulctra capellæ.*—Virg.

*Huc ipsi potum veniunt per prata juvenci.*—Virg.

IPSE personali pronomini subjicitur, et, si in actionem emphasis cadit, ponitur ipse in casu recto; si in passionem, in obliquo: ut,

*Non egeo medicina; me ipse consolor.*—Cic.

*Te ipse vicisti: i. e. nemo alius te vicit.*

*Te ipsum vicisti: i. e. vicisti eum, quem nemo alius vincere poterat.*

Pronominibus IDEM et ALIUS adjiciuntur *que, ac, et*; et Græcè dativus: ut,

*Vesta eadem est quæ terra.*—Ovid.

*Vita est eadem et animus erga te idem ac fuit.—Liv.*

*Dissimulatio est cum alia dicitis, ac sentias.—Cic.*

*Invitum qui servat, idem facit occidenti.—Hor.*

*Idem rex ille, poema*

*Qui tam ridiculum tam carè prodigus emit,*

*Edicto vetuit, ne quis se præter Apellem*

*Pingeret, aut alius Lysippo duceret æra*

*Fortis Alexandri vultum simulantia.—Id.*

QUI interrogativum adjectivè, Quis substantivè adhibetur:  
ut,

*Qui rex tum Romæ fuit? Quis tum Romæ fuit Rex?*

HIS vocibus, *si, nisi, num, ne, ubi, unde, quo, quanto*, subjicitur prononem *quis*, nisi ob emphasin quandam, quum adhibetur *aliquis*: ut,

*Si mala condiderit in quem quis carmina, jus est  
Judiciumque.—Hor.*

*Ne quis cui noceat.—Cic.*

*Nisi quid te detinet, audi.—Hor.*

*Quid volui? dices, ubi quid te læserit.—Hor.*

*Quo quis callidior est, hoc suspectior.—Cic.*

QUOD SCIAM pro *quantum sciam* eleganter ponitur: ut,  
*Nemo, quod sciam, domi est.*

QUISQUIS interdum jungitur verbo *plurali*: ut,  
*Tum procul absitis, quisquis colit arte capillos.—Tib.*

---

### VERBA PASSIVA.

PASSIVIS additur ablativus agentis, sed antecedente *a* vel *ab* præpositione; et interdum dativus: ut,

*Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis.—Hor.*

*Honesta bonis viris, non occulta, quæruntur.—Cic.*

*Barbarus hic ego sum, quia non intelligor ulli.—Ovid.*

Cæteri casus manent in passivis, qui fuerunt activorum: ut,  
*Accusaris a me ferti. Habebis ludibrio.*  
*Dedocberis a me istos mores. Privaberis magistratu.*

VAPULO, *veneo, liceo, exulo, flo*, neutralia-passiva, passivam  
 ignificationem habent: ut,

*A præceptore vapulabis.*  
*Malo a cive spoliari quàm ab hoste vènire.*  
*Virtus parvo pretio licet ab omnibus.*  
*Cur a convivantibus exulet philosophia?*  
*Quid fiet ab illo?*

#### VERBA INFINITA.

VERBIS quamplurimis, præsertim *sensum et affectum* ex-  
 rimentibus, ut *audio, dico, sentio, credo, promitto, simulo,*  
*pero*, item participiis et adjectivis *qualitatem* denotantibus,  
 dduntur verba infinita, et poeticè substantivis: ut,

*Audiet cives acuisse ferrum.—Hor.*

*Esse apibus partem divinæ mentis, et haustus*

*Æthereos dixere.—Virg.*

*Inclinare meridiem*

*Sentis?—Hor.*

*Brutus promittit se facturum; simulat se furere; sperat  
 se victurum.*

*Credimus aliquando corpora humana suscitatum iri.*

*Vis fieri dives? nil cupuisse velis.*

*Erat tum dignus amari.—Virg.*

*Primus vere rosam atque autumnò carpere poma.—Id.*

*Niveus videri.—Spernere fortior.—Hor.*

*Audax omnia perpèti.—Immeritus mori.—Id.*

*Metuens solvi.—Levior tolli.—Id.*

*Quælibet in quemvis opprobria fingere sævus.—Id.*

*Tempus abire tibi.*

*Obs. Vide suprâ, pag. 115, ad fin.*

SED VERBIS *intentionem* vel *propositum* significantibus; item verbis *rogandi*, *imperandi*, *hortandi*, *tentandi*, postponitur *subiunctivus cum* ut conjunctione in *affirmando*, et cum *ne*, in *negando* et *prohibendo*: ut,

*Ut vivas, vigila.*—Hor.

*Insuevit pater optimus hoc me,  
Ut fugerem exemplis vitiorum quæque notando.  
Cum me hortaretur, parcè, frugaliter, atque  
Viverem uti contentus eo quod mi ipse parasset.*—Hor.  
*Roscius orabat, sibi adesses ad Puteal cras.*—Id.  
*Edicto vetuit ne quis se, præter Apellem,  
Pingeret.*—Id.

Excipe *jubeo*, quod accusativum cum infinitivo exigit: ut,  
*Græcus Aristippus, servos qui projicere aurum  
In mediâ jussit Libyâ.*—Hor.

PARTICIPIIUM interdum fungitur vice infinitivi: ut,  
*Sensit medios delapsus in hostes.*—Virg.

His PRÆTERITIS *memini*, *vidi*, *audivi*, et quibusdam aliis interdum subjicitur infinitivus temporis *præsentis*: ut,

*De cælo tactas memini prædicere quercus.*—Virg.  
*Tecum etenim longos memini consumere soles.*—Pers.  
*Postquam te talos, Aule, nucesque  
Ferre sinu laxo, donare et ludere vidi;  
Te, Tiberi, numerare, cavis abscondere tristem;  
Extimui, ne vos ageret vesania discors.*—Hor.

Ponuntur interdum sola, per ellipsin, verba infinita: ut,  
*Hinc spargere voces  
In vulgum ambiguas, et quærere conscius arma.*—Virg.  
ubi subauditur *incipiebat*.

## GERUNDIA ET SUPINA.

## I. GERUNDIA.

GERUNDIA in *di* eandem quam genitivi constructionem habent, et pendent a quibusdam tum substantivis, tum adjectivis: ut,

*Cecropias innatus apes amor urget habendi.*—Virg.

*Æneas celsâ in puppi jam certus eundi.*—Id.

*Ars amandi; cura colendi.*

GERUNDIA in *do* eandem quam dativi et ablativi constructionem obtinent: ut,

*Hic aqua potando benè commoda, panis edendo.*

*Qui cultus habendo*

*Sit pecori.*—Virg.

*Si non est solvendo, præs pro eo solvere debet.*

*Scribendi ratio conjuncta cum loquendo est.*—Quinct.

*Alitur vitium, vivitque tegendo.*—Virg.

*Cantando rumpitur anguis.*—Id.

*Fando pervenit ad aures.*—Id.

GERUNDIA in *dum* eandem interdum quam accusativi constructionem obtinent: ut,

*Locus ad agendum amplissimus.*—Cic.

CUM significatur necessitas, ponuntur gerundia in *dum*, addito verbo *est*: ut,

*Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.*—Juv.

*Vigilandum est ei, qui cupit vincere.*



GERUNDIA interdum regunt casus verborum suorum: ut,  
*Multa novis verbis præsertim cùm sit agendum.*—Lucr.  
*Æternas quoniam pœnas in morte timendum.*—Id.

PARTICIPIA in *dus* sæpè gerundiorum loco adhibentur, et appellantur GERUNDIVA; ut,

*Ad accusandos homines duci præmio, proximum latrocinio est.*—Cic.

GERUNDIVA usurpantur loco substantivorum: ut,  
*Timotheus peritus erat civitatis regendæ.*—C. Nep.  
*Palpebræ ad claudendas et ad aperiendas pupillas sunt aptissimæ.*—Cic.

*In deligendis amicis cautio est adhibenda.*

*Semper in augendâ festinat et obruitur re.*—Hor.

*Orationem Latinam legendis Ciceronis scriptis efficies pleniorem.*

*Regulus captus a Pœnis de commutandis captivis Romam missus est.*

---

## II. SUPINA.

SUPINUM in *um* activè significat, et sequitur verbum, aut participium, significans motum ad locum: ut,

*Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsæ.*—Ovid.

*Milites sunt missi speculatum arcem.*

*Lusum it Mæcenas, dormitum ego Virgiliusque.*—Hor.

SUPINUM in *u* passivè significat, et sequitur nomina adjectiva: ut,

*Mala tactu vipera.*—Virg.

*Quod factu fœdum est, idem est et dictu turpe.*

*Sapiens vitatu quidque petitu*

*Sit melius, causas reddet tibi.*—Hor.

Sequitur etiam *opus, fas, nefas*: ut,  
*Opus dictu; fas conspectu; nefas scriptu.*

### PECULIARIS USUS TEMPORUM.

PRÆSENTIS vice, in literis dandis, adhibentur IMPERFECTUM et PRÆTERITUM: ut,

*Hæc tibi dictabam post fanum putre Vacunæ.—Hor.*  
*Pridie idus hæc scripsi ante lucem.—Cic.*

*Obs.* In his omnibus non ad scribentem sed ad lecturum est relatio.

Pro PRÆTERITO ponitur PRÆSENS, quod historicum appellatur: ut,

*Roma crescit Albæ ruinis, duplicatur civium numerus,  
 Cælius urbi additur mons, eam sedem Tullius regie  
 capit, ibique habitavit.—Liv.*

PERFECTUM eleganter usurpatur de rebus uno impetu præter spem confectis: ut,

*Terra tremit; fugere feræ.—Virg.*  
*Brutus si conservatus sit, vicinus!—Cic.*

PERFECTUM etiam eleganter exprimit id quod fieri solet: ut,  
*Qui studet optatam cursu contingere metam  
 Multa tulit fecitque puer.—Hor.*

*Rege incolumi, mens omnibus una;  
 Amisso, rupere fidem, constructaque mella  
 Diripere ipsæ, et crates solvere favorum.—Virg.*

PLUSQUAM-PERFECTUM INDICATIVI interdum PLUSQUAM-PERFECTI CONJUNCTIVI locum supplet: ut,

*Me truncus illapsus cerebro  
 Sustulerat, nisi Faunus ictum  
 Dextrâ levasset.—Hor.*

FUTURUM PRIMUM urbanitatis gratiâ pro IMPERATIVO adhibetur: ut,

*Nec verbum verbo curabis reddere, fidus*

*Interpres.*—Hor.

DUÆ res FUTURÆ tribus modis enunciantur:—Si UTRAQUE duratura est simul, utraque in FUTURO PRIMO ponitur: ut,

*Beati erimus, cùm, corporibus relictis, cupiditatum erimus expertes.*—Cic.

*Loqui ignorabit, qui tacere nesciet.*

*Dicam, si potero.*

*Obs. CAVE dicas, dicam, faciam, &c. si possum.*

Si, illâ confectâ, hæc evenire incipiet, hæc in FUTURO PRIMO ponitur, illa in FUTURO SECUNDO: ut,

*Non, si te ruperis, inquit,*

*Par eris.*—Hor.

*De Carthagine vereri non ante desinam, quàm illam esse excisam cognovero.*—Cic.

*Carmina tum melius, cùm venerit ipse, canemus.*—Virg.

*Tempora si fuerint nubila, solus eris.*—Ovid.

Si utraque conficietur simul, utraque in FUTURO SECUNDO ponitur: ut,

*Qui Antonium oppresserit, bellum confecerit.*—Cic.

*Qui utramvis rectè nōrit, ambas noverit.*—Ter.

FUTURUM SECUNDUM comiter et modestè adhibetur vice FUTURI PRIMI, præsertim post conjunctionem: ut,

*Neque,*

*Si chartæ sileant, quod bene feceris,*

*Mercedem tuleris.*—Hor.

*Non possidentem multa vocaveris*

*Rectè beatum.*—Hor.

*Haud paravero,  
 Quod aut, avarus ut Chremes, terrâ premam,  
 Discinctus aut perdam nepos.—Hor.  
 Dum loquimur, fugerit invida  
 Ætas!—Hor.  
 Frustra vitium vitaveris illud  
 Si te aliud pravum detorseris.—Hor.*

PERFECTUM conjunctivi sententiam modestè exprimit; interdum vice IMPERATIVI: ut,

*Nil ego contulerim jucundo sanus amico.—Hor.  
 Non alios primâ nascentis origine mundi  
 Illuxisse dies, aliumve habuisse tenorem  
 Crediderim.—Virg.  
 Tecum habita, et nôris quàm sit tibi curta supellex.—Pers.  
 Nullam, Vare, sacrâ vite priùs sèveris arborem.—Hor.*

Inter FUTURUM PRIMUM et FUTURUM IN RUS hoc distat: illud rem haud dubiè futuram, hoc *intentionem* tantùm præsentem, indicat: ut,

*Ii qui non vivunt, sed semper victuri sunt, nunquam vivent.*

TEMPORA INFINITIVI a Poetis inter se permutantur: ut,

*Fertur Prometheus addere principi  
 Limo coactis particulam undique  
 Desectam.—Hor.  
 Dictus et Amphion, Thebanæ conditor arcis,  
 Saxa movere sono testudinis.—Id.  
 Magnum si pectore possit  
 Excussisse Deum.—Virg.*

## CONSECUTIO TEMPORUM.

ABSOLUTIS temporibus absoluta tempora, RELATIVIS relativa subiiciuntur.

*Obs.* Vide suprà, pag. 29.

PRÆSENTI, PERFECTO (*definito, Angl. have*), FUTURO, et IMPERATIVO, subiicitur *Præsens Subjunctivi*, ubi res adhuc duret; *Perfectum*, ubi res confecta sit; *Futurum in rus*, ubi postea eventura sit: ut,

*Nulla est, quæ non pulchra legat tua carmina, Publi;*

*Nulla, tuos versus quæ non laudaverit, ætas;*

*Nulla, tuas quæ non sit laudatura Camænas.*

*Vidit enim, quæ sint, fuerint quæ, sintque futura.*

*Jam scribam, quid dem, dederim quid, simque daturus.*

*Dic mihi tu, quid agat, quò venerit, aut sit iturus.*

IMPERFECTO, PERFECTO (*indefinito*), et PLUSQUAM-PERFECTO, subiicitur *Imperfectum Subjunctivi*, ubi de re *contemporaneâ* agitur; *Plusquam-perfectum*, ubi de *præteritâ*; *Futurum in rus*, ubi de *futurâ*: ut,

*Dubitabam, ubi essem, quid fecissem, quid facturus essem.*

*Quæsiuit, ubi esset, unde venisset, quid iturus esset?*

*Scripseram, cur neque darem, neque dedissem, neque essem daturus.*

CONDITIONI exprimendæ inseruiunt *si, si forte, modo, nisi*, et similia:—

CONDITIO, si nudè dicitur, ponitur in *indicativo*; si opineris eam vel veram esse vel verisimilem, in *præsente subjunctivi*;

si neque veram neque verisimilem, in *imperfecto* vel *plusquam-perfecto subjunctivi*: ut,

*Ut moneam, si quid monitoris eges tu.*—Hor.

*Tamen hæc quoque, si quis  
Inserat, aut scrobibus mandat mutata subactis,  
Exuerint silvestrem animum.*—Virg.

*Si, quantum cuperem, possem quoque.*—Hor.

*Non, si plura velim, tu dare denèges.*—Id.

*Non dare, Mæcenas, vellem si plura, negares.*

*Non, si, Mæcenas, voluissem plura, negásset.*

### ORATIO OBLIQUA.

ORATIO *obliqua* dicitur, ubi narrat quis, quæ ipse vel quæ alius dixerit.

IN ORATIONE OBLIQUA, res *principales* in infinitivo, res *parentheticæ* in subjunctivo ponuntur: ut,

*Non, ut magna dolo factum negat esse suo pars,  
Quòd non ingenuos habeat clarosque parentes,  
Sic me defendam.*—Hor.

*Certè hinc Romanos olim, volventibus annis,  
Hinc fore ductores, revocata a sanguine Teucris,  
Qui mare qui terras omnes ditione tenerent,  
Pollicitus.*—Virg.

*Sese interea, quando optima Dido  
Nesciat, et tantos rumpi non speret amores,  
Tentaturum aditus, et quæ mollissima fundi  
Tempora.*—Id.

*Post paulò scribit, sibi millia quinque  
Esse domi chlamydum: partem vel tolleret omnes.*—Hor.

## DE MENSURA, TEMPORE, ET LOCO.

## MENSURA.

MENSURA, PONDUS, vel QUANTITAS rei post adjectiva et adverbia in accusativo ponitur, post substantiva in genitivo: ut,

*Perpetuæ fossæ quinos pedes altæ.*—Cæs.

*Orbis crassus digitos sex.*—Cato.

*Fossa quindecim pedum.*—Cæs.

*Corona parvi ponderis.*—Liv.

MENSURA distantiae rei quiescentis ablativo substantivi cum adjectivo conjuncti exprimitur: ut,

*Toto cælo distat.*

*Medius Titan venientis et actæ*

*Noctis erat, spatioque pari distabat utrinque.*—Ov.

Obs. IN HIS, ubi Anglicè dicimus *of*, genitivus adhibetur; ubi Anglicè abest præpositio, accusativus; ubi dicimus *by*, ablativus.

ORDINALIA etiam sæpissimè temporis et spatii mensuram exprimunt: ut,

*Mithridates ab illo tempore annum jam tertium et vicissimum regnat.*—Cic.

*Nestor tertiam ætatem hominum vivebat.*—Id.

*Albani ab urbe duodecimo milliario absunt.*

## TEMPUS.

QUÆ significant *partem temporis* in ablativo frequentius ponuntur: ut,

*Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.*—Plin.

QUÆ autem *durationem temporis* significant in accusativo ferè ponuntur: ut,

*Pericles quadraginta annos præfuit Athenis.*—Cic.

*Hic jam ter centum totos regnabitur annos.*—Virg.

*Noctes vigilabat ad ipsum*

*Mane, diem totum stertebat.*—Hor.

*Septem horas dormisse, sat est.*

*Annos ad quinquaginta natus. Per tres annos studui.*

*Italiam Hannibal variis cladibus per sexdecim annos  
fatigavit.*

*Puer id ætatis. Non plus triduum, aut triduo.*

*Tertio, vel tertium Kalendas, vel Kalendarum.*

*Pridie Kalendas, vel Kalendarum.*

#### SPATIUM LOCI.

SPATIUM, extensio, et progressio, post verba in accusativo, distantia vel in accusativo vel ablativo ponitur: ut,

*Millia tum pransi tria repimus.*—Hor.

*Campus Marathon ab urbe Atheniensium abest millia  
passuum decem.*

Item, *abest bidui*: ubi intelligitur *spatium* vel *spatio*, *iter* vel *itinere*.

#### NOMINA LOCORUM.

OMNE verbum admittit genitivum OPPIDI nominis, in quo fit actio; modo primæ vel secundæ declinationis, et singularis numeri sit: ut,

*Quid Romæ faciam? mentiri nescio.*—Juv.

Hi genitivi, *humi, domi, militiæ, belli*, oppidorum sequuntur formam: ut,

*Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi.*—Cic.

*Unà semper militiæ et domi fuimus.*—Ter.

Verum si OPPIDI nomen pluralis duntaxat numeri, aut tertiæ declinationis fuerit, in ablativo ponitur: ut,

*Colchus, an Assyrius; Thebis nutritus, an Argis.*—Hor.

*Romæ Tibur anem, ventosus, Tibure Romam.*—Id.



VERBIS significantibus motum ad locum ferè additur nomen loci in accusativo sine præpositione: ut,

*Concessi Cantabrigiam ad capiendum ingenii cultum.*

*Quo tendis? non mihi Cumas*

*Est iter, aut Baias.*—Hor.

*Paulus Apostolus misit epistolas Romam, Corinthum, Galätas, Ephesum, Philippos, Colossas, Thessalonicam, et ad Timöthëum, Titum, et Philëmönem.*

Ad hunc modum utimur *domus* et *rus*: ut,

*Ite domum saturæ, venit Hesperus, ite, capellæ.*—Virg.

*Ego rus ibo.*

Nominibus REGIONUM, MONTIUM, VILLARUM præfiguratur ferè præpositiones: ut,

*Ilium in Italiam portans.*—Virg.

*Ad Amanum iter feci.*—Cic.

*In Formiano videntur hiematuri.*—Id.

INSULÆ autem oppidorum ferè regimen sequuntur: ut,

*Ipsa Paphum sublimis abit.*—Virg.

*Cretæ jussit considerare Apollo.*—Id.

VERBIS significantibus motum a loco ferè additur nomen loci in ablativo sine præpositione: ut,

*Nisi antè Româ profectus esses, nunc eam relinques.*

### VERBA IMPERSONALIA.

HÆC impersonalia, *interest* et *refert*, quibuslibet genitivis junguntur, præter *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, *vestra*, et *cujâ*: ut,

*Interest magistratûs tueri bonos.*

*Refert omnium animadverti in malos.*

*Non tam meâ quam reipublicæ interest.*

*Tua refert teipsum nôsse.*

Adduntur et hi genitivi, *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, quanticunque, tantidem*: ut,

*Tanti refert honesta agere.*

*Magni mea interest esse privatam.*

DATIVUM postulant impersonalia acquisitivè posita, ut *placet, libet, licet, liquet*; quæ autem transitivè ponuntur, accusativum: ut,

*A Deo nobis beneficit.*

Sic *juvat, decet, delectat, oportet, fallit, fugit, præterit*, regunt accusativum: ut,

*Me juvat ire per altum.*

*Non omnibus, quod libet, licet; nec omnes, quod decet, delectat.*

Vide suprâ, p. 128.

His vero, *attinet, pertinet, spectat*, propriè additur præpositio *ad*: ut,

*Me vis dicere quod ad te attinet.*—Ter.

*Spectat ad omnes bene vivere.*

His impersonalibus *pœnitent, tædet, miseret, miserescit, pudet, piget*, subjicitur accusativus personæ, cum genitivo rei: ut,

*Si ad centesimum virisset annum, senectutis eum suæ non pœniteret.*—Cic.

*Miseret me tui.*

*Fratris me quidem piget pudetque.*—Ter.

*Me puditum est pigitumque tui.*

Verba, quæ in activâ voce *dativum* exigunt, ferè in passivâ fiunt IMPERSONALIA: ut,

*Non bene ripæ*

*Creditur.*—Virg.

*Huic ætati favetur, magis quam invidetur.*—Cic.

VERBUM impersonale passivæ vocis pro singulis personis utriusque numeri eleganter accipi potest: ut,

*Siletur in noctem.*—Virg.

*Vivitur parvo bene.*—Hor.

*Totum ex ordine mensem*

*Pascitur.*—Virg.

*Usque adeò turbatur agris.*—Id.

*Ventum erat ad limen.*—Id.

*Non potest jucundè vivi, nisi cum virtute vivatur.*—Cic.

### PARTICIPIORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

PARTICIPIA regunt casus verborum a quibus derivantur: ut,

*Duplices tendens ad sidera palmas,*

*Talia voce refert.*—Virg.

PARTICIPIIS passivæ vocis additur interdum dativus, præsertim si exeunt in *dus*: ut,

*Magnus civis obiit, et formidatus Othoni.*—Juv.

*Restat Chremes, qui mihi esorandus est.*—Ter.

PARTICIPIA, cum fiunt nomina, sæpè genitivum admittunt: ut,

*Alieni appetens, sui profusus.*—Sall.

PARTICIPIA interdum suppleunt locum substantivi: ut,

*Ante conditam condendamve urbem.*—Liv.

*Saguntum urbs deleta causa secundi belli Punici fuit.*

EXOSUS et perosus activè significant, et accusativum exigunt: ut,

*Exosus ad unum*

*Trojanos.*—Virg.

*Genus omne perosus*

*Fœmineum.*—Id.

**NATUS, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, ortus, editus,**  
 ablativum exigunt, et sæpè cum præpositione: ut,

*Bona bonis prognata parentibus.*—Ter.

*Sate sanguine divum!*—Virg.

*Quo sanguine cretus.*—Id.

*Venus orta mari mare præstat eunti.*—Ovid.

*Terrâ editus.*

*Edita de magno flumine nympa fui.*

### ADVERBIORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

**EN et ecce,** demonstrandi adverbia, nominativo frequentius junguntur, accusativo rariùs: ut,

*En Priamus.*—Virg.

*En quatuor aras,*

*Ecce duas tibi, Daphni, duoque altaria Phæbo.*—Virg.

**EN et ecce,** exprobrandi, soli accusativo junguntur: ut,

*En animum et mentem.*—Juv.

**QUÆDAM** adverbia loci, temporis, et quantitatis, genitivum admittunt—

**LOCI;** ut, *ubi, ubinam, nusquam, eò, longè, quò, ubivis, hucine,* &c.: ut,

*Ubi gentium?*—Hor.

*Ubicunque locorum*

*Vivitis.*—Hor.

*Nusquam loci invenitur.*

*Eò impudentiæ ventum est.*

*Quò terrarum abiit? Minimè gentium.*

**TEMPORIS;** ut, *nunc, tunc, tum, interea, pridie, postridie,* &c.: ut,

*Nihil tunc temporis amplius, quàm flere, poteram.*

*Pridie ejus diei pugnam inierunt.*

*Pridie calendarum, vel calendas.*

QUANTITATIS; ut, *parùm, satis, abundè, &c.*: ut,  
*Sat habet favorum semper; qui rectè facit.*—Ter.  
*Satis eloquentiæ, sapientiæ parùm.*—Sall.  
*Abundè fabularum audivimus.*

QUÆDAM casus admittunt nominum unde deducta sunt: ut,  
*Sibi inutiliter vivit.*  
*Proximè Hispaniam Mauri sunt.*—Sall.  
*Melius, vel optimè, omnium.*—Cic.  
*Amplius opinione morabatur.*—Sall.

ADVERBIA diversitatis, *aliter, secus*; et illa duo, *ante, post*, ablativo non raro junguntur: ut,  
*Multo aliter. Paulo secus.*  
*Multo ante. Paulo post.*  
*Longo post tempore venit.*—Virg.

INSTAR (*like*) et *ergo* (*on account of*) genitivum post se habent: ut,  
*Instar montis equum divinâ Palladis arte*  
*Ædificant.*—Virg.  
*Donari virtutis ergo.*—Cic.

ADJECTIVA, in neutro genere, ponuntur adverbialiter: ut,  
*Torva tuens. Dulce ridens. Sole recens orto.*

ADVERBIIS diversitatis et similitudinis, ut, *æque, juxta, pariter, perinde, aliter, contra, secus*, adduntur particulæ *ac, atque*: ut,

*In medias res,*  
*Non secus ac notas auditorem rapit.*—Hor.

SI, *ut, ne, ac, licet* interdum subaudiuntur: ut,  
*Græcûlus esuriens in cælum, jusseris, ibit.*—Juv.  
*Merses profundo, pulchrior evenit.*—Hor.

*Dic*  
*Ad cœnam veniat.*—Hor.

*Valeat possessor oportet.*  
*Si comportatis rebus bene cogitat uti.—Id*  
*Cave, facis*  
*Te quidquam indignum.—Id.*  
*Taygētē simul os terris ostendit honestum.—Virg.*  
*Naturam expellas furcā, tamen usque recurret.—Hor.*

---

### CONJUNCTIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

CONJUNCTIONES copulativæ, et disjunctivæ, similes casus, modos, et tempora conjungunt: ut,

*Socrates docuit Xenophontem et Platonem.*  
*Recto stat corpore, despicitque terras.*  
*Nec scribit, nec legit.*

Nisi variæ constructionis ratio aliter poscat: ut,

*Emi librum centussi et pluris.*  
*Vixit Romæ et Venetiis.*  
*Nisi me lactasses amantem et falsâ spe produceres.*

QUAM sæpe intelligitur, non exprimitur, post *amplius*, *plus*, et *minus*: ut,

*Noctem non amplius unam.—Virg.*  
*Neque enim plus septima ducitur æstas.—Id.*  
*Nunquam nix minus quatuor pedes alta jacuit.—Liv.*

---

### QUIBUS VERBORUM MODIS QUÆDAM CONGRUANT ADVERBIA ET CONJUNCTIONES.

AN, NE, NUM, dubitativè aut indefinitè posita, subjunctivo junguntur: ut,

*Nihil refert fecerisne an persuaseris.*  
*Vise, num redierit.*

CUM (*when*) *temporalis* conjunctio, indicativo et subjunctivo, *causalis* (*since*) subjunctivo, jungitur: ut,

*Facile omnes, cum valemus, recta consilia ægrotis damus.*—Ter.

*Teucer Salamina patremque*

*Cum fugeret.*—Hor.

*Cum tot sustineas et tanta negotia solus.*—Id.

DUM pro *dummodo* (*provided that*), *dum* et *donec* pro *quousque* (*until*) de futurâ re, subjunctivum postulant: ut,

*Dum prosim tibi.*—Ter.

*Tertia dum regnantem viderit ætas.*—Virg.

*Carus eris Romæ donec te deserat ætas.*—Hor.

*Donec templa refeceris.*—Id.

Sed, de præteritâ, admittunt indicativum: ut,

*Cerrus equum pugna melior communibus herbis*

*Pellebat, donec, minor in certamine tanto,*

*Imploravit opes hominis, frænumque recepit.*—Hor.

Ne, prohibendi sensu, jungitur subjunctivo: ut,

*Ne facias hoc.*

*Immortalia ne speres, monet annus.*—Hor.

CONJUNCTIONES *quia*, *quominus*, subjunctivum, post negationem præcedentem, exigunt: ut,

*Nihil est, quin malè narrando possit depravari.*

*Nec requies; quin, aut pomis exuberet annus*

*Aut furtu pecorum, aut cerealis mergite culmi.*—Virg.

*Quis est, quin audiverit?*

*Senectus nihil obstat, quominus literarum studia teneamus.*—Cic.

Si imperfecto et plusquamperfecto subjunctivi jungitur: ut,

*Si furet in terris, videret Democritus.*—Hor.

*Et, si non aliquis nocuisses, mortuus esses.*—Virg.

UT pro *quàm* (*how!*), *postquam*, *sicut*, et *quomodo*, indicativo jungitur: cum autem *quanquam*, *utpote*, vel *finalem causam* denotat, subjunctivo: ut,

*Ut sæpe summa ingenia in occulto latent!*

*Ut sumus in Ponto, ter frigore constitit Ister.*—Ovid.

*Ut tute es, ita omnes censes esse.*—Plaut.

*Ut valet? ut meminit nostri?*—Hor.

*Ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas.*

*Non est tibi fidendum, ut qui toties fefelleris.*

*Te oro, Dave, ut redeat jam in viam.*—Ter.

*Edit ut vivat, non vivit ut edat.*

POST verba timendi, UT negat, NE affirmat: ut,

*O Puer, ut sis*

*Vitalis, metuo, et majorum ne quis amicus*

*Frigore te feriat.*—Hor.

*Ne quid*

*Summâ deperdat, metuens, aut ampliet ut rem.*—Id.

UT, post *adeo*, *ita*, *sic*, *tam*, et similia, subjunctivum exigit: ut,

*Nemo adeo ferus est, ut non mitescere possit,*

*Si modo culturæ patientem commodet aurem.*—Hor.

UT, post impersonalia *est*, *accidit*, *placet*, *restat*, *sequitur*, et similia, subjunctivum exigit: ut,

*Est ut viro vir latius ordinet*

*Arbusta sulcis.*—Hor.

*Restat, ut his ego me ipse regam solerque elementis.*—Id.

OMNES denique voces *indefinitè* positæ, quales sunt *qui*, *quis*, *quantus*, *quotus*, *qualis*, *ut*, *ubi*, *cur*, &c. subjunctivum postulant: ut,

*Novit namque omnia vates,*

*Quæ sint, quæ fuerint, quæ mox ventura trahantur.*—Virg.



*Qualem commendes, etiam atque etiam aspice.*—Hor.

*Est ubi plus tepeant hyemes?*—Id.

*Multa quidem dixi, cur excusatus abirem.*—Id.

*Experto credite, quantus*

*In clypeum assurgat, quo turbine torqueat hastam.*—Virg.

*Tu quotus esse velis, rescribe.*—Hor.

QUI, cum in *talīs* vel *talīs* qui resolvi potest, subjunctivum exigit: ut,

*Sunt, qui non habeant.*—Hor.

*Est, qui vinci possit.*—Id.

*Condo et compono quæ mox depromere possim.*—Id.

*Fontesque lymphis obstrēpunt manantibus,*

*Somnos quod invitet leves.*—Id.

QUI, cum jungitur verbis *sum*, *habeo*, *reperio*, vel adjectivis *dignus*, *aptus*, *idoneus*, subjunctivum exigit: ut,

*Est mihi purgatam crebrò qui personet aurem.*—Hor.

*Habes qui*

*Assideat, fomenta paret.*—Id.

*Qui modeste paret, qui aliquando imperet, dignus est.*—Cic.

*Dignus Aricinos qui mendicaret ad axes.*—Juv.

*Idonea mihi visa est Lælii persona quæ de Amicitia dissereret.*—Cic.

QUI, cum in *ut ego*, *quamvis ego*, *quoniam ego*, *ut tu*, *quamvis tu*, *quoniam tu*, *ut ille*, *quamvis ille*, *quoniam ille*, et similia, resolvi potest, subjunctivum exigit: ut,

*Major sum, quàm cui possit fortuna nocere: i. e. ut mihi.*

*Sapiens posteritatem, cujus sensum habiturus non sit, putat ad se pertinere.*—Cic. — Ubi *cujus* pro *quamvis* ejus.

QUI, *causam* significans, subjunctivum exigit: ut,

*Stultus es, qui huic credas.*

*Nihil habeo quod incusem senectutem.*—Cic.

**TENUS** ablativo et singulari et plurali jungitur: ut,  
*Pube tenus.—Pectoribus tenus.—Ovid.*

At genitivo tantùm plurali, et semper casum suum sequitur: ut,  
*Crurum tenus.—Virg.*

**PRÆPOSITIO** interdum ponitur suum inter substantivum et adjectivum: ut,

*Te propter eundem*  
*Extinctus pudor.—Virg.*  
*Fronde super viridi.—Id.*

Interdum post suum substantivum: ut,  
*Vitiis nemo sine nascitur.—Hor.*

*Transtra per et remos et pictas abiete puppes.—Virg.*

**CUM** postponitur pronomini *me, te, se, nobis, vobis*; et aliquando *quî, quibus*: ut, *mecum, tecum, quicum, quibuscum.*

### INTERJECTIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

**INTERJECTIONES** non rarò sine casu ponuntur: ut,  
*Spem gregis, ah! silice in nudâ connixa reliquit.—Virg.*  
*Quæ, malum, dementia!*

**NOMINA** interdum fiunt interjectiones: ut,  
*Pecudesque locutæ,*  
*Infandum! Sistunt amnes.—Virg.*

**O**, exclamantis, nominativo, accusativo, et vocativo, jungitur: ut,

*O festus dies hominis!—Ter.*  
*O fortunatos nimium, sua si bona n̄brint,*  
*Agricolâs!—Virg.*  
*O formose puer! nimium ne crede colori.—Id.*

## PRÆPOSITIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

PRÆPOSITIO subaudita interdum facit ut addatur ablativus: ut,

*Habeo te loco parentis: i. e. in loco.*

PRÆPOSITIO in compositione eundem nonnunquam casum regit, quem et extra compositionem regebat: ut,

*Detrudunt naves scopulo.—Virg.*

*Prætereo te insalutatum.*

VERBA composita cum *a, ab, ad, con, de, e, ex, in*, nonnunquam *repetunt* easdem præpositiones cum suo casu extra compositionem, idque eleganter: ut,

*Abstinerunt a vino.*

IN, pro *erga, contra, ad*, et *supra*, accusativum exigit: ut,

*Accipit in Teucros animum, mentemque benignam.—Virg.*

*In commoda publica peccem.—Hor.*

*In regnum quæritur hæres.*

*Reges in ipsos imperium est Jovis.*

PER adjurandi figuratè ponitur: ut,

*Per te Deos oro.*

*Per ego has lacrymas, dextramque tuam, te*

*Oro.—Virg.*

SUB, cum ad *tempus* refertur, accusativo ferè jungitur: ut,

*Sub idem tempus: i. e. circa, vel per idem tempus.—Liv.*

*Sub galli cantum.—Sub Trojæ funera.—Hor.*

SUPER, pro *ultra*, accusativo; pro *de*, ablativo apponitur: ut,

*Super et Garamantas, et Indos*

*Proferet imperium.—Virg.*

*Multa super Priamo rogitans, super Hectore multa.—Id.*

**HEU** et *proh*, nunc nominativo, nunc accusativo, junguntur: ut,

*Heu pietas, heu prisca fides!*—Virg.

*Heu stirpem invisam!*—Id.

*Proh Jupiter, tu, homo, adigis me ad insaniam!*—Ter.

*Proh deum atque hominum fidem!*

Item vocativo. *Proh sancte Jupiter!*—Cic.

**HEI** et *væ* dativo junguntur: ut,

*Hei mihi, quod nullis amor est medicabilis herbis!*—Ovid.

*Væ misero mihi, quantã de spe decidi!*—Ter.

MEMORANDUM

TO : [Illegible]

FROM : [Illegible]

SUBJECT: [Illegible]

[Illegible text follows, including a list of items or points.]

[Vertical line of text or markings on the left margin]

# PROSODIA.

## DEFINITIONES.

**PROSODIA** est pars Grammaticæ, quæ quantitatem syllabarum docet.

**TEMPUS** est syllabæ proferendæ mensura.

Tempus breve sic notatur: ut, *Dōmīnūs*. Longum autem sic: ut, *cōntrā*.

**PES** duarum syllabarum pluriumve constitutio est, ex certâ Temporum observatione.

**SPONDEUS** duabus longis fit: ut, *virtūs*.

**DACTYLUS** unâ longâ et brevibus duabus: ut, *scribĕrĕ*.

**SCANSIO** est legitima versûs in singulos pedes distributio.

Scansioni accidunt figuræ, *Synalæpha*, *Ecthlipsis*, *Synæresis*, *Diaeresis* (*συναλοιφή*, *ἐκθλιψις*, *συναίρεσις*, *διαίρεσις*).

**SYNALÆPHA** est elisio vocalis in fine *dictionis*, ante alteram vocalem in initio sequentis: ut,

*Sera nimis vit' est crastina, viv' hodie.*—Mart.  
pro *vita, vive*.

At *heu* et *o* nunquam intercipiuntur.

Aliquando *Synalæpha* fit, etiam in fine *versûs*: ut,

*Omnia Mercurio similis vo|cemque co|lorem|que  
Et crines flavos, et membra decora juvenæ.*—Virg.

*Inseritur verò factu nucis|arbutus|horrid|a,  
Et steriles platani malos gessere valentes.*—Id.

Aliquando vocalis ante vocalem non eliditur: ut,

*Ter sunt cona|ti im|ponere|Pelio|Ossam.*

ECTHLIPSIS est quoties *m* cum suâ vocali perimitur, proximâ dictione a vocali exorsâ: ut,

*Monstr' horrend' inform' ingens, cui lumen ademptum.*—Virg. pro *monstrum, horrendum*.

Et aliquando *s*: ut, *hōrridū' miles* pro *horridus miles*, et similia apud Ennium et Lucretium.

SYNÆRĒSIS est duarum syllabarum in unam contractio: ut,  
*Seu lento fuerint alvearia vimine texta.*—Virg. quasi scriptum esset *alvāria*.

Sic passim *ābiētē, pāriētē, gēnūā, flūviōrūm*, quasi scripta essent *ābjētē pārijētē, gēnvā, flūvjōrūm, &c.*

DIÆRĒSIS est, ubi ex unâ syllabâ fiunt duæ: ut,  
*Debuerant fusos evoluisse suos.*—Ov. Ep. *evoluisse* pro *evoluisse*. Sic *silvæ* aliquando pro *silvæ*.

ARSIS (*ἀρσις*) est *elatio*, THESIS (*θέσις*) est *depressio* vocis.

ARSIS vel ICTUS in Heroicis versibus in *primam* syllabam pedis cadit: cæteræ syllabæ pedis dicuntur esse in *thesi*.

Post pedem absolutum syllaba brevis in fine dictionis aliquando vi ictûs producitur: ut,

*Pectori|būs inhi|ans spirantis consulit exta.*—Virg. ubi *būs*, naturâ brevis, producitur.

VERSUS HEROICUS, qui *Hexameter* etiam dicitur, constat sex pedibus seu metris; quintus locus dactylum, sextus spondeum sibi vindicat; reliqui hunc vel illum, prout volumus: ut,

*Tityrē, | tū pātā|læ rēcū|bāns sūb| tēgmānē | fugī.*—Virg.

Hic, syllabæ *ti, tū, læ, bāns, tēg, fa* sunt in *arsi*, cæteræ in *thesi*.

Reperitur aliquando, post dactylum, spondeus etiam in quinto loco: ut,

*Cūrā Dē|ūm sūbū|læ, mūg|nām Jōris | incrē|mentūm.*—Virg.

ULTIMA VERSUS SYLLABA habetur communis, hoc est, vel longa vel brevis esse potest.

VERSUS ELEGIACUS, qui et *Pentameter* vocatur, duabus constat partibus: quarum prior duos pedes, vel dactylicos vel spondiacos, habet, cum syllabâ longâ; altera etiam duos pedes, sed dactylicos tantum, cum syllabâ item longâ: ut,

*Rēs est | sōlicī | tī || plēnā tī | mōris ā | mōr. ||*—Ov. Ep.

## PRIORUM ET PENULTIMARUM SYLLABARUM QUANTITAS.

DUARUM consonantium concursus vocatur *Positio*.

VOCALIS ANTE DUAS CONSONANTES, vel duplicem consonantem in eâdem dictione, positione longa est: ut, *vēntus*, *āvis*, *patrizo*, *cijus*.

Excipe composita *bijugus*, *quadrjjugus*, *jurjjurando*, et similia.

Si consonans priorem dictionem claudat, sequente item a consonante incipiente, vocalis præcedens positione longæ est: ut,

*Majōr sūm quām cui possit fortuna nocere:*

ubi syllabæ *jor*, *sum*, *quam*, et *sit*, positione longæ sunt.

Vocalis brevis ante mutam, sequente liquida *l*, et præcipue *r*, communis redditur: ut *pātris*, *volūcris*. Sed non in compositis, ut, *āb-luo*, *ōb-ruo*: et longa naturâ nunquam corripitur, ut, *mātris*, a *māter*; *ācris*, ab *ācer*; *salūbris*, a *salūber*.

VOCALIS ANTE VOCALEM et ante litteram *h* in eâdem dictione brevis est: ut *Dēus*, *mēus*, *tīus*, *pūs*, *nihil*.

Excipias genitivos in *ius*: ut, *unūus*, *illūus*, &c. ubi *i* communis reperitur, licet in *alterūus* et *utrūus* semper sit brevis, in *alius* et fortasse *solius* semper longa.



Excipiendi sunt etiam genitivi antiqui in *ai* ut *aulāi*, genitivi et dativi quintæ declinationis, ubi *e* inter geminum; longa fit; ut, *faciēi*; alioqui non; ut, *rēi*, *spēi*, *fidēi*; aliquando et vocativi *Cūi*, *Pompēi*.

Sæpe autem, vocalis brevis ante alteram vocalem in unam longam coalescit, ut *prōinde*, *prōinde*; sic *dēin*, *dēinde*, *dēest*, *dēeram*, *rēice*, *dēerraveram*, a *dēin*, *dēinde*, &c.; cum quibusdam aliis; ut, *pitūta*, *pītūta*.

*Fi* in *fo* longa est, nisi sequuntur *e* et *r* simul: ut, *fierem*, *fieri*.

*Omnia jam fiunt, fieri, quæ posse negabam.*

*Dius*, *āer*, *ēheu* primam syllabam habent longam; *Diana* communem.

*Ohe* interjectio priorem syllabam communem habet; *ēheu* semper longam.

Vocalis ante vocalem in Græcis dictionibus subinde longa est: ut,

*Dicite Pierides; Respice Læerten; Vertitur ær.*

Et in possessivis Græcis: ut, *Ænēia nutrix; Rhodopēius Orpheus.*

DIPHTHONGUS OMNIS apud Latinos longa est: ut, *āurum*, *neūter*, *musā*: nisi sequente vocali; ut, *præire*, *præustus*, *præamplus*: aliquando et in fine dictionis; ut, *Insulæ Ionio.*

COMPOSITA simplicium quantitatem fere sequuntur: ut, a *lēgo* *lēgis*, *perlēgo*; *lēgo* *lēgas*, *allēgo*; ab *æquus*, *iniquus*; a *pōtens*, *impōtens*; a *sōlor*, *consōlor*.

Excipe *intereā*, *posteā*, *anteā*.

Excipiuntur item hæc brevia a longis enata: *dejēro*, *pejēro*, a *jūro*; *innūba*, *pronūba*, a *nūbo*.

*Idem* in masculino primam producit, in neutro corripit: ut,

*Per quod quis peccat, per idem quoque plectitur idem.*

DERIVATIVA eandem fere cum primitivis quantitatem habent: ut, *amator, amicus, amabilis*, prima brevi, ab *amo*.

Excipiuntur tamen pauca, quæ a *brevibus* deducta primam syllabam *producunt*: ut,

*fomes, fomentum*, a *foveo*,  
*humanus*, ab *homo*,  
*imbecillus*, a *baculus*,  
*jucundus*, a *juvo*,  
*jumentum*, a *juvo*,  
*junior*, a *juvenis*,  
*laterna*, a *lateo*,  
*lex legis*, a *lego*,  
*macer*, sed *macer*,  
*mobilis*, a *moveo*,

*nonus*, a *novem*,  
*persona*, a *persono*,  
*regula*, a *rego*,  
*rex regis, regina*, a *rego*  
*secius*, a *seco*,  
*sedes*, a *sedeo*,  
*suspicio*, a *suspicio*,  
*tegula*, a *tego*,  
*trigula*, a *traho*,  
*vix vocis*, a *voco*.

Sed multa ex his ex contractione explicanda sunt: ut, *fomentum*, a *fovimentum*; *junior*, a *juvenior*; *mobilis*, a *movibilis*; ubi duæ breves in unam longam coeunt: ut, a *cõgo*, *cõgo*.

SE, DE, et DI—ante consonantes in compositis producuntur: excipe *dirimo, disertus*.

Sunt etiam, quæ a *longis* deducta primam *corripiunt*: ut,

*arena, arista, arundo*, ab *areo*,  
*arsupes*, ab *ara*,  
*dicax, maledicus, veridicus*,  
 &c., a *dico*,  
*ditio*, a *ditis*,  
*disertus*, a *dissero*,  
*dux ducis, educo-as*, a *duco*,  
*fides*, a *fido*,  
*frigor, fragilis*, a *frango*,

*lucerna*, a *luceo*,  
*molestus*, a *moles*,  
*nato natus*, a *natu*,  
*noto notus*, a *notu*,  
*posui*, a *pono*,  
*quater*, a *quatuor*,  
*sopor*, a *sopio*,  
*vadum*, a *vado*.

Et alia nonnulla ex utroque genere, quæ relinquuntur studiosis inter legendum observanda.

SED in horum quibusdam, id præsertim est notandum, cum *conjugatio* vel *significatio* verbi mutatur, mutari etiam *quanti-*

*tatem*: ut, *sēdo-as* activum, a *sēdeo-es* neutro; sic *plāco*, a *plāceo*; a *lēgo-is* fit *lēgo-as*; a *cādo* neutro fit *cādo* activum.

OMNE PRÆTERITUM DISYLLABUM priorem habet longam. ut, *lēgi*, *ēmi*, *mōvi*, *ōdi*.

Excipe, *Bībi*, *dēdi*, *fīdi*,  
*Stēti*, *stīti*, *tūli*, *scīdi*.

Tria præterita corripiunt primam longam præsentis, *gēnui*, *pōtui*, *pōsui*, a *gīno*, *pōssum*, *pōno*.

Quæ primam præteriti geminant, primam brevem habent: ut, *cēcīdi*, a *cūdo*; *cēcīdi*, a *cædo*; *didīci*, *fēfelli*, *mōmordi*, *pēpendi*, *pūpugi*, *tētēdi*, *tētīgi*, *tōtondi*, *tūtūdi*.

SUPINUM DISSYLLABUM priorem habet longam: ut, *vīsum* *lātum*, *lōtum*, *mōtum*.

Excipe, *Dātum*, *ītum*, *lītum*, *quītum*,  
*Rātum*, *rūtum*, *sātum*, *sītum*,

*stātum*, a *sisto*; et *cītum*, a *cīeo cīes*: nam *statum*, a *sto*, et *citum*, a *cīo cīs*, quartæ, priorem habent longam.

NE, privativa particula, in compositione brevis est: ut, *nēfas*, *nēqueo*: cum vero *contrahitur*, ut a *nē hōmo*, *nēmo*, vel cum *conjunctio* fit, producitur; ut *nēquam*, *nēquidquam*, *nēquaquam*.

PRO in compositione longa est; excipe *prōfundus*, *prōfugio*, *prōfiteor*, *prōficiscor*, *prōcella*, *prōfanus*, *prōtervus*, *prōfecto*, *prōnēpos*, et quædam alia.

RE in compositione brevis est, nisi *longa* fiat positione: sed in *rēliquæ*, *rēligio*, et in præteritis, *rēperit*, *rēpulit*, *rētudit*, *rētulit*, producitur.

Brevia sunt composita a BIS, DIS, TRIS: ut, *biceps*, *tribāphum*, *trivium*: excipe *bigæ*, *trigæ*.

Notanda sunt *prīdie*, *merīdies*, *biduum*, *quotīdie*, in quibus omnibus prior *i* producitur.

NOMINA desinentia in *x*, et genitivum in *gis* facientia, penultimam corripunt: ut, *remex*, *remīgis*.

Excipe *lex*, *rex*, *lēgis*, *rēgis*, et *frūgis* ab inusitato *frux*.

Corripitur item penultima genitivorum in *icis*, a nominativo *ex*: ut, *vertex*, *verticis*.

Cætera in *x* penultimam genitivi producunt: ut, *pax*, *pācis*; *vervex*, *vervēcis*; *radix*, *radīcis*; *velox*, *velōcis*; *lux*, *lūcis*; *bombyx*, *bombŷcis*.

Excipe *nex*, *nēcis*, et nominativo carentia *vīcis*, *prēcis*; *nix*, *nīvis*; *cruz*, *crūcis*; *pix*, *pīcis*; *nux*, *nūcis*; *trux*, *trūcis*, et plurima alia, a Græcis derivata: ut, *anthrax*, *ācis*; *climax*, *ācis*; *colax*, *ācis*.

ADVERBIA in *tim* penultimam habent longam: ut, *virītim*, *catervātīm*. Excipe *affātīm*, *stātīm*, *perpētīm*.

---

### ULTIMARUM SYLLABARUM QUANTITAS.

VOCALIS BREVIS finalis ante *sc*, *sp*, *sq*, *st*, *x*, *z*, interdum vi ictūs producitur: ut,

*Occultā spolia, et plures de pace triumphos.*

et RARISSIME brevis manet: ut,

*Ponitē; spes sibi quisque, sed hæc quàm angusta, videtis.*

LONGA VOCALIS finalis ante initialem vocalem aliquando corripitur: ut,

*Et longum formose valē, valē, inquit, Iola.*

*Tē, amice, nequivi*

*Aspicere.*

*Sic, cocto nūm adest honor idem?*

*Sed dūm abest quod avemus, id exsuperare videtur.*

*A* FINITA producantur; ut, *amā, contrā, ergā, antea, postea.*

Excipias *putā, itā, quā, eja*: item omnes casus in *a*, cujus-  
cunque fuerint generis, numeri, aut declinationis; praeter vo-  
cativos a Graecis in *as*: ut, *o Aeneā, o Pallā*: et ablativum  
primae declinationis: ut, *musā*.

Leguntur item vocativi Latini, *Atridā, Alcīdā*.

Excipe et nomina literarum: ut, *alphā, betā*.

In *B, D, T*, desinentia brevia sunt: ut, *āb, ād, captū*.

In *C* desinentia producantur: ut, *āc, sic*, et *hic* adverbium.  
Sed tria in *c* corripuntur, *fic, nec* et *donēc*.

Interdum, *hic* et *hoc*, sed non nisi in *thesi*, corripuntur.  
*Hoc* ablativum semper producantur.

*E* finita brevia sunt: ut, *marē, penē, legē, scribē*.

Excipiendae sunt omnes voces quintae inflexionis in *e*: ut,  
*fidē* et *diē*; una cum particulis inde enatis; ut, *hodiē, quotidē,*  
*pridiē, postridiē*; item *quarē, quaderē, earē, rē-fert* imper-  
sonale, et si qua sunt similia.

Et secundae item personae singulares imperativae secundae  
conjugationis: ut, *docē, movē*.

Producantur etiam monosyllaba in *e*: ut, *mē, tē, sē*; praeter  
*quē, nē, vē*, conjunctiones encliticas, et *cē, tē, psē, ptē*, prono-  
minibus addita: ut *hiccē, euāptē*.

Quin et adverbia in *e*, ab adjectivis secundae declinationis  
deducta, *e* longam habent: ut, *pulchrē, doctē, valdē* pro *va-*  
*lidē*.

Quibus accedunt *fermē, ferē*; *benē* tamen et *malē* corripun-  
tur omnino.

*E* in *tēmēre* apud optimos auctores semper eliditur.

Postremo, quae a Graecis per  $\eta$  scribuntur, naturā produ-

cuntur, cujuscunque fuerint casus, generis, aut numeri: ut, *Lethē, Anchisē, cetē, Tempē*.

*I* finita longa sunt: ut, *domini, magistri, amari*.

Præter, *mihi, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi*, quæ sunt communia. Sed in *necubi, sicubi, ubinam, ubivis, utinam, utique*, I semper corripitur.

*Nisi* quoque et *quasi* corripuntur.

Corripuntur etiam dativi et vocativi Græcorum, quorum genitivus singularis in *oç* breve exit: ut, Dativ. *Minoidi, Palladi, Phyllidi*; Vocat. *Alexi, Amarylli, Daphni*.

*L* finita corripuntur: ut, *animäl, Hannibäl, mël, pugil, consül*. Præter *nül* contractum a *nihil, säl (sälis)*, et *söl (sölis)*.

*M* in *circum* aliquando in compositione corripitur: ut, *circumdägo, circumëo*.

*N* finita producuntur: ut, *Pæän, Hymën, quän, Xenophön, nön*.

Excipe *forsän, forsitän, än, tamën, attamën, veruntamën, et in*.

Accedunt his et voces illæ, quæ apocopen patiuntur: ut, *vidën' ? audën' ?* etiam *exän, subën, dëän, proän*.

In *än* quoque a nominativis in *ä*: ut, Nominativo, *Iphigeniä, Äginä*; Accus. *Iphigeniän, Äginän*. Nam in *an*, a nominativis in *äs* producuntur: ut, Nom. *Æneäs, Marsyäs*; Accus. *Æneän, Marsyän*.

Nomina item in *en*, quorum genitivus *inis* correptum habet: ut, *carmën, crimën, pectën, tibicën, -inis*.

Quædam etiam in *in* per *i*: ut, *Alexin*; et in *yn* per *y*: ut, *Ityn*.

Græca etiam in *on* per *o parvum*, cujuscunque fuerint casus: ut, Nom. *Ilion, Pelion*; Accus. *Caucasön, Pylön, Troilon*.

*O* finita longa sunt, ut *dicō, virgō, templō, legendō*.

Excipe quaedam: ut, *sciō, nesciō, volō, putō*, quæ passim apud bonos auctores correpta leguntur; et non pauca alia, quæ in levioris argumenti vel sequioris ævi carminibus corripuntur.

Cæterum *citō, egō, modō, quomodō, et cēdō* pro *dic* vel *da*, semper corripuntur.

*Duo et homo, nisi in arsi, vix leguntur producta.*

*R* finita corripuntur: ut, *Cæsār, jubār, pēr, vīr, uxōr, turtūr*.

Producuntur autem *fār, Lār, Nār, vēr, fūr, cūr, et pār*, cum compositis: ut, *compār, impār, dispār*.

Græca etiam in *er*, quæ illis in *η* desinunt: ut, *aēr, cratēr, charactēr, æthēr, sotēr*: præter *patēr* et *matēr*, quæ apud Latinos ultimam brevem habent.

*AS* finita producuntur: ut, *amās, musās, majestūs, bonitūs*.

Præter Græca, quorum genitivus singularis in *dos* et non in *ntos* exit: ut, *Arcūs, Pallās*; Genitivo, *Arcūdos, Pallādos*.

Et præter accusativos plurales nominum crescentium: ut, *heros, heroes*; *Phyllis, Phyllidos*; Accus. plural, *heroūs, Phyllidūs*.

*ES* finita longa sunt: ut, *Anchisēs, sedēs, docēs, patrēs*.

Excipiuntur nomina in *es* tertiæ inflexionis, quæ penultimam genitivi crescentis corripiunt: ut, *milēs, militis*; *segēs, segētis*; *divēs, divītis*.

Sed *ariēs, abiēs, pariēs, Cerēs, et pēs*, unà cum compositis, ut, *bipēs, tripēs*, longa sunt.

*Es* quoque a *sum*, unà cum compositis, corripitur: ut, *potēs, adēs, prodēs, obēs*; quibus *penēs* adjungi potest.

Item neutra, et nominativi plurales Græcorum: ut, *cacothēs, heroēs, lampadēs, Cyclopēs, Naiadēs*.

*IS* finita brevia sunt: ut, *Parīs, panīs, tristīs, hilarīs*.

Excipe obliquos casus plurales in *is*, qui producuntur: ut, *musīs, mensīs* a *mensa*, *dominīs, templīs*, et *quis* pro *quibus*: his accedant nonnulli ablativi adverbialiter sumpti: ut, *forīs, gratīs*.

Item producentia penultimam genitivi crescentis: ut, *Samnīs, Salamis*; Genitivo, *Samnitīs, Salaminīs*.

Adde huc quæ in *is* contracta ex *eis* desinunt, sive Græca, sive Latina, cujuscunque fuerint numeri aut casus: ut, *Simois, Pyrois, partis, omnis*, e *Simoeis, Pyroeis, parteis, omneis*.

Et monosyllaba item omnia: ut, *vīs, līs*; præter, *is* et *quīs* nominativos, et *dis*.

Istis accedunt secundæ personæ singulares verborum in *is*, quorum secundæ personæ plurales desinunt in *itis*, penultimâ productâ: ut, *audīs, velīs*; plurali, *audītīs, velītīs*.

*Is* secundæ personæ singularis futuri secundi indicativi, et præteriti perfecti subjunctivi, *communis* est: ut, *amaverīs*: *communis* etiam est penultima secundæ personæ pluralis: ut, *amaverītīs*.

*OS* finita producuntur: ut, *arbōs, honōs, nepōs, dominōs, servōs*.

Præter, *compōs, impōs*, et *ōs ossis*.

Et Græca per *o parvum*: ut, *Delōs, Iliōs, chaōs, melōs, epōs, Palladōs, Phyllidōs*.

*US* finita corripuntur: ut, *famulūs, regiūs, tempūs, amamūs*.

Excipiuntur producentia penultimam genitivi crescentis: ut, *salūs, tellūs, incūs, jūs*; Genitivo, *salūtīs, tellūris, incūdis, jūris*.

Longæ sunt etiam omnes voces quartæ inflexionis in *us*, præter nominativum et vocativum singulares: ut, Gen. sing. *manūs*; Nom. Accus. Voc. plur. *manūs*.



His accedunt etiam monosyllaba: ut, *crūs, thūs, mūs, sūs*.  
 Et Græca item per *ovc* diphthongum, cujuscunque fuerint casus: ut, Nom. *Panthūs, Melampūs*; Gen. *Sapphūs, Clūs*.  
 Atque piis cunctis venerandum nomen **IESUS**.

*YS* finita, nisi in *thesi*, longa sunt: ut, *Tethys, Erinnyes*.  
*U* finita producuntur: ut, *manū, genū, amatū, diū*; sed *indū* et *nenū* apud Lucretium, pro *in* et *non*, corripiuntur.  
 Postremo, *Y* finita corripiuntur: ut, *Tiphj, molj*.

---

### PEDES.

**PYRRHICHIUM** brevibus videas properare duabus,    --  
**SPONDEUM** binis contra consistere longis.        --  
 Syllaba longa brevi subjecta vocatur **IAMBUS**;        --  
 Quod si longa brevem præcesserit, ecce **TROCHÆUS!**    --  
     **DACTYLUS** efficitur longâ, brevibusque duabus,    ---  
 Post curtas geminas **ANAPÆSTUS** simplice longâ.    ---  
 Tres breviat **TRIBRACHYS**, tot producere **MOLOSSI**;    ---:---  
 Longa dat **AMPHIBRACHYN** brevibus conclusa duabus,    ---  
 At brevis **AMPHIMACRUM** binis intersita longis.    ---  
**BACCHEIUS** curtâ constat longisque duabus,        ---  
**ANTI-que-BACCHEIUS** pes est contrarius illi,        ---  
 In quo subjicitur binis brevis unica longis.        ---  
     Præfixus dat te, **CHORIAMBE**, trochæus iambo;    ---  
 At **PROCELEUSMATICUM** curtæ genere quaternæ.    ---  
**A** MAJORE sequatur **IONICUS**, **A-que** MINORE:  
 Pyrrhichius *ducit* spondeum hîc; *excipit* illic.    ---:---  
     Curta tribus longis miscetur? **EPITRITUS** audit;    ---  
 Longa tribus brevibus comes addita **PÆONA** gignit.    ---  
 Tu quis es, **ANTISPASTE**? trochæum ducat iambus:    ---  
 His longa accedat si syllaba, **DOCHMIUS** exit.        ---

## CÆSURÆ IN HEXAMETRO.

CÆSURA in versu est locus, ubi verbum terminatur et vox paullum acquiescit.

In versu HEROICO, sive HEXAMETRO, CÆSURÆ præcipue sunt quinque, quarum unam vel plures nisi versus habeat, erit vitiosus :

PENTHEMIMERIS, i. e. post quintum semipedem, omnium usitatissima: ut,

*Tityre | tu patu|læ || recubans sub tegmine fagi.*

HEPTHEMIMERIS, i. e. post septimum semipedem: ut,

*Formo|sam reso|nare do|cēs || Amaryllida sylvas.*

Post SECUNDUM DACTYLUM: ut,

*In tenu|i lābōr || at tenuis non gloria, si quem.*

*Aggeri|būs sōcēr || Alpini, atque arce Monæci*

*Descen|dēns, gēnēr || adversis instructus Eois.*

Post TERTIUM TROCHÆUM: ut,

*Orphei | Callio|pēā, || Lino formosus Apollo.*

*Falleret inde | prēnsūs || et irremeabilis error.*

Post TERTIUM DACTYLUM, quæ rarior est: ut,

*Cui non | dictus Hy|lūs pūēr, || aut Latonia Delos.*

Quibus adde Cæsuram post QUARTUM DACTYLUM, quæ et CÆSURA BUCOLICA, ut a Bucolicis Poetis frequentata, appellatur: ut,

*Ambo | floren|tes æ|tātībūs || Arcades ambo.*

CÆSURA et Interpunctio pulcrè ad sensum variantur: ut,

*Nonne vides? || cūm præcipiti || certamine campum*

*Corripüere, || ruuntque effusi carcere currus;*

*Cūm spes arrectæ || juvenum, exultantiaque haurit*

*Conda pavor pulsans; || illi instant verbere torto,*

*Et proni dant lora, || volat vi fervidus axis;*

*Jamque humiles, || jamque elati || sublimè videntur*

*Aëra per vacuum || ferri atque assurgere in auras :  
 Nec mora, nec requies : || At fulvæ nimbus arenæ  
 Tollitur : humescunt || spumis flatuque sequentum :  
 Tantus amor laudum || tanta est victoria curæ.—Virg.*

Quum post QUINTUM DACTYLUM interpungitur, plerumque sequuntur duo monosyllaba, vel repetitur eadem vox quæ modo præcesserit: ut,

*At Bore|æ de | parte tru|cis cum | fulmīnāt; || et cum—  
 Ipsæ | consi|dent medi|catis | sēdībūs, || ipsæ—*

Raro, nisi in propriis nominibus, voce hypertrisyllaba versus terminatur: ut,

*Dic mihi, Damæta, cujūm pecus? an Melibœi?*

#### PENTAMETRI REGULÆ.

PRIUS hemistichium integrâ voce finiendum est.

ÆLITER mendosum est: ut,

*Hæc quoque nostræ sen||tentia mentis erat.*

DURA est post prius hemistichium elisio: ut,

*Troja virūm et virtut||um omnium acerba cinis.*

NEUTRUM hemistichium benè monosyllabo terminatur, nisi vel alterum monosyllabum vel elisio præcedat: ut,

*Non tamen est cur sis || tu mihi causa necis.*

*Præmia si studio consequor ista, sat est.*

*Invitis oculis litera lecta tua est.*

PENTAMETER optimè clauditur voce *disyllabâ*, raro *tetra-*  
*syllabâ*, rarius *trisyllabâ*: ne imiteris, igitur, qui sequuntur,

*Maxima de nihilo nascitur historia.*

*Et caput impositis pressit amor pedibus.*

SOLET distichon absolvere sententiam vel saltem in colum desinere.

## VERSUS ALCAICI.

*Virtūs | rēpū|sā || nēscū | sōrdīdā|*  
*Intā|mīnā|tīs || fūlgēt hō|nōrībūs,|*  
*Nēc sū|nūt aut | pōnīt | sēcū|rēs*  
*ārbītrī|ō pōpū|lārīs | āurā.*

Duo priores strophæ versus melius a longâ syllabâ incipiunt quam a brevi; tertius vix unquam a brevi incipit.

CÆSURA post quintum semipedem rarò negligitur nisi quando elisio sequitur: ut,

*Mentem | sacer|do||tum incola Pythius.*

vel in verbis compositis: ut,

*Hosti|le ara|trum ex||ercitus insolens.*

*Antehac | nefās | de||promere Cæcubum.*

TERTIUS strophæ versus vel a quadrisyllabâ voce, vel a duabus disyllabis vel a monosyllabâ et trisyllabâ inchoare nequit: vitiosi sunt qui sequuntur,

*Tranquillitas | segura vitæ.*

*Virtus piam | gentem tuetur.*

*Et nobiles | gignit nepotes:*

nisi ultima quadrisyllabæ elidatur: ut,

*Rubiginem aut | dulces alumni.*

TERTIUS strophæ versus rarò duabus disyllabis, rarissimè voce quadrisyllabâ, nunquam trisyllabâ et encliticâ terminatur: minus igitur laudandi sunt qui sequuntur,

*Pronos relabi | posse | rivos.*

*Nodo coerces | viperino.*

*Pæana dicit | supplicesque.*

HI qui sequuntur versus omnes bonæ notæ sunt:

1. *Deprome | quadrimum | Sabina.*

2. *Declive | contempleris | arvum.*

3. *Spargent | olivetis | odorem.*

4. *Morem | verecundumque | Bacchum.*

5. *Non | erubescendis | adurit.*

6. *Nunc | in | reluctantes | dracones.*  
 7. *Non | Liber | æquè | non | acuta.*

QUARTUS strophæ versus non libenter Pentametri numeros  
 finales accipit: ut vix imiteris qui sequuntur,

*O Thaliarche metum | diota.*  
*Teque tuasque decet | sorores.*

Neque finales Hexametri numeros: ut,

*Me cichorea levesque | malocæ.*  
*Arvaque jungere quærit | arvis.*

HI qui sequuntur bonæ notæ sunt:

1. *Compositâ | repetuntur | horâ.*
2. *Concutitur. | Valet | ima | summis.*
3. *Sardinia | segetes | feracis.*
4. *Levia | personuere | saxa.*
5. *Flumina | constiterint | acuto.*
6. *Aut | digito | male | pertinaci.*

#### VERSUS SAPPHICI.

*Aurē|ām quīs|quīs mē|dīō|critā|tēm*  
*Dilā|gīt tū|tūs cā|rēt ōb|sōlē|tī*  
*Sōrdī|būs tēc|tī, cā|rēt in|vidēn|dū*  
*Sōbrūs | aulā.*

SAPPHICUM versum commendat cæsura *penthemimeris*: ut,

*Jām sã|tis tēr|rīs || nivīs atquē dirã.*

UNAM tantum aliam cæsuram, *post tertium trochæum*, hic  
 versus admittit: ut,

*Mercur|i fa|cundē || nepos Atlantis.*

*Conci|nes ma|jorē || Poëta plectro:*

nam *Pertinax et luxurians juvena*, et similia, vitiosa sunt.

QUARTUS strophæ versus appellatur *Adonius*: ut,

*Terriūt | urbēm.*

## ALIORUM VERSUUM NOMINA.

DANT ASCLEPIADIS clarum tibi nomine versum  
 Spondeus junctoque duplex Choriambus iambo:  
 ut, *Mæcē|nūs ātāvīs | ēdītē rē|gibus|*.

Idem, si demas Choriambum, erit ille GLYCONIS.  
 ut, *Sic tē | divā pōtēns | Cypri|*.

Anne PHERECRATICO versu vis ludere? binos  
 Inter spondeos medius tibi dactylus esto:  
 ut, *Grātō | Pýrrhā sūb | ānrō*.

In primā posuit spondeum sede PHALÆCUS,  
 Dactylus insequitur; terni subiere trochæi:  
 ut, *Sūmmām | nēc mētū|ās dī|ēm nē|que ōptēs|*.  
 Nomen si quæras, hic HENDECASYLLABUS audit.

Extremo SCAZON pede claudicat; id nisi fiat,  
 Reddat Iambeum trimetro tibi carmine versum;  
 Spondeum nunc sextus habet, pes quintus iambum:  
 ut, *O quid | solu|tis est | bea|tūs | cūris|*.

## METRA VERSUUM.

METRA versuum, qui pedibus hyperdisyllabis fiunt, (exceptis Anapæsticis), *singulis pedibus* constant; cæterorum, *binis*: sic, *Hexameter Dactylicus* sex pedibus constat; sex item pedibus, *Trimeter Iambicus*.

VERSUS, *sex* metris constans, HEXAMETER; *quinque*, PENTAMETER; *quatuor*, TETRAMETER; *duobus*, DIMETER; *uno*, MONOMETER appellatur.

VERSUS qui *unā* caret syllabâ, CATALECTICUS; qui *nullâ*, ACATALECTICUS; qui integro *pede*, BRACHYCATALECTICUS, vocatur: qui unâ *abundat* syllabâ, HYPERCATALECTICUS.

*Duo* Pedes continui DIPODIA, interdum etiam SYZYGIA nominantur.

## VERSUS MIXTI.

VERSUS vocantur *mixti*, qui ex duobus diversi generis versibus conflati sunt: sic,

*Solvitur | acris hy|ems gra|ta vice || Veris | et Fa|vonā.*  
qui ARCHILOCHIUS appellatur, ex Dactylico Tetrametro et Trochaico Dimetro Brachycatalectico constat.

Versus mixti, quibus prioris membri ultima syllaba *communis* est, neque, si in vocalem exit, a vocali insequente eliditur, ASYNARTETI nominantur: ut,

*Findunt | Scaman|dri flu|mina || lubricus | et Simo|is.*  
ubi *mīnā* Pyrrhichius locum Iambi occupat, et

*Fervidi|ore me|ro || arca|na pro|mōrat | loco.*  
ubi *o* in *mero* non eliditur.

DE PLAUTI ET TERENTII VERSIBUS, ET DE  
ACCENTIBUS LATINIS.

DE PLAUTI et TERENTII Versibus hoc præcipue notandum:

Hī qui pedestres fabulas *socco* premunt,  
Ut, quæ loquuntur, sumpta de vitâ putes,  
Vitiant *Iambum* tractibus *Spondaicis*;  
Pro cōm|mōda|vi com|mōda|vi com|moda,  
Dant com|mēnda|vi com|mēnda|vi com|moda.

Et, ut breves producunt, ita corripunt *positione* longas, (sed non longas *naturā*), et præcipue in *primo* versuum pede: ut, in Trimetro Iambico,

*Prōptēr hōs|pitā|i hujus|ce con|suetu|dinem.*

## ACCENTUS LATINI.

ACCENTUS, nisi in monosyllabis, nunquam erit in *ultimā*.  
In hyperdisyllabis, accentus erit in penultimā, si penultima

sit *longa* naturâ: ut, *ambræ, eurârum*: si penultima sit *brevis*, acuitur antepenultima: ut, *Tullia, Gallia*.

Sed in quadrisyllabis, ubi tres breves una longa excipit, acuitur prima: ut, *mûliêres*.

In *secundâ* Trimetri dipodiâ, sedulo caverunt Comici, ne ictus in *ultimas* syllabas, accentu carentes, caderet, nisi ob peculiarem quandam emphasis gratiam: ut,

*Scelêsta ovem | lupó commi|si; dispudet!*

Super Iambicos Trochaicosque, etiam Creticis, Bacchiacis, Choriambicisque versibus, sed semel tantum singulis, et nusquam in diverbio, utitur TERENCEUS.

## PEDES FINALES IN SOLUTA ORATIONE.

In *Solutâ* Oratione, Pedes, qui numerosissimè claudunt sententiam, sunt

*Creticus cum Ditrochæo*: ut—glôriâm cômparâvit.

*Trochæus cum Antibaccheio*: ut—mêmbrâ firmântür.

*Dochmius*: ut—irâ victôriæ.

*Tribrachys cum Trochæo*: ut—essê vidêâtür.

*Duo Cretici*: ut—tûrpitêr sêntiünt.

## DIFFERENTIA VOCUM.

CANTAT *acanthis* agris; sed in horto floret *acanthus*.

In silvis *âcer* est; equus *âcer* Olympia vincit.

Qui fert *arma humeris*, *armo* dux fertur equino.

Vexat *asilus* equos; miseris aperitur *asylum*.

Qui sculpsit, *cælat*; qui servat condita, *cêlat*.

Voce *cânes*; duc eja *cânes*, nisi tempora *cânes*.

Tenduntur nexi *casses*; nitet *ærea cassis*.

*Casside* conde caput; capiuntur *cassibus* ursi.



*Cædo facit cessi; cecidi cædo; cædo cecidi.*  
*Clava ferit; clavus figit; clavisque recludit.*  
*Arva cõlis; nes fila cõlis; humentia cõlas.*  
*Cominus ense feris; jactâ cadis eminus hastâ.*  
*Ut placeas comiti mores cõmēs indue cõmēs.*  
*Consule doctores; sic tu tibi consulis ipsi.*  
*Lucrandi cupido nocuit sua sæpe cupido.*  
*Carmina dicuntur, DOMINO dum templa dicantur.*  
*Solvere diffidit nodum qui diffidit ense.*  
*Dissimulas, quæ sunt; simulas tu, quæ tibi non sunt.*  
*Educat hic catulos, ut mox educat in apros.*  
*Si tibi non est æs; ãs arida; rarus ãs hospes.*  
*Cui sublesta fides sit, ei malè, Pontice, fides.*  
*Fallit sæpe frætum placido nimis æquore frætum.*  
*Fructus arboribus; fruges nascuntur in agris.*  
*Sol nubes fugat; et fugit irreparabile tempus.*  
*In silvis lepõres, in verbis quære lepõres.*  
*Non licet asse mihi, qui te non asse licetur.*  
*Tange lýram digitis, dum líram vomere duco.*  
*Tu bona mãla bono mãlis decerpere mãlo,*  
*Quam mãlã mãla tuã nequidquam frangere mãlã.*  
*Merx vënit; mercesque vënit quæsita labore.*  
*Anne nõtère, puer, gestis? age, nõtère gestis?*  
*Oblita quæ fuco rubet, est oblita decoris.*  
*Opperior Fabium qui longo operitur amictu.*  
*Õs õris mandat, sed õs ossis manditur õre.*  
*Uxoris, pärère et pārère; päräre, mariti est.*  
*Si pendère völes, tu debita pendère nõles.*  
*Torquetur pílum; sphæra est pila; pila columna.*  
*Quæ probus ille rëfert, nostrã cognoscere rëfert.*  
*Tribula grana terunt; tribulĩ nocuere novali.*  
*Vas caput, at nummos tantum præes præstat amico.*  
*Vãs vãdis est sponsor: spumat vas vãsis Iaccho.*  
*Si transire vëlis undas maris, utere vëlis.*

# APPENDIX.

## AUCTORES CLASSICI LATINI.

POETE.		PEDESTRES ORATIONIS SCRIPTORES.	
A. C.	A. C.	A. C.	A. C.
Ennius <i>natus</i> 239	<i>mortuus</i> 169	Varro <i>natus</i> 116	<i>mortuus</i> 27
Terentius . . . . .	184	Cicero . . . . .	106 . . . . . 43
Plautus . . . . .	192 . . . . . 159	Cæsar, C. J. . . . .	99 . . . . . 44
Ætius . . . . .	95 . . . . . 55	C. Nepos . . . . .	90 (?) . . . . . —
Ælius . . . . .	86 . . . . . 56	C. Sallustius Crispus	86 . . . . . 35
Ælius . . . . .	70 . . . . . 19	Livius . . . . .	59 . . . . . 19
Ælius . . . . .	65 . . . . . 8	Vitruvius . . . . .	— . . . . . —
Ælius . . . . .	59 . . . . . 18	Paterculus . . . . .	19 (?) . . . . . —
Ælius . . . . .	— . . . . . 15	Valerius Maximus . . . . .	— . . . . . —
Ælius . . . . .	43 . . . . . A.D. 18	Cælius . . . . .	— . . . . . —
Ælius . . . . .	— . . . . . —	Columella . . . . .	— . . . . . —
Ælius <i>mortuus anno ætat.</i> 28	—	M. Annæus Seneca	19 (?) . . . . . —
Ælius . . . . .	A. D. A. D.	L. Annæus Seneca	2 . . . . . —
Ælius . . . . .	38 . . . . . 65	C. Plinius (Major)	23 . . . . . —
Ælius Flaccus . . . . .	— . . . . . 88	Quintilianus . . . . .	42 (?) . . . . . —
Ælius Italicus . . . . .	25 . . . . . 100	Tacitus . . . . .	52 (?) . . . . . —
Ælius . . . . .	61 . . . . . —	C. Plinius (Minor)	62 . . . . . —
Ælius . . . . .	— . . . . . —	C. Suetonius Tranquillus	72 (?) . . . . . —
Ælius . . . . .	38 . . . . . 119		

## SIGLARIUM ROMANUM.

### VIRORUM PRÆNOMINA.

A. — Anulus.	L. — Lucius.	Ser. — Servius.
C. — Caius.	M. — Marcus.	Sex. — Sextus.
Cn. — Cnæus.	M'. — Manius.	Sp. — Spurius.
D. — Decimus.	P. — Publius.	T. — Titus.
K. — Kæso.	Q. — Quintus.	Tl. — Tiberius.

### FEMINARUM.

J. — Cæia.	J. — Liberta.	J. — Filia.
------------	---------------	-------------

Et cætera verso caractère.

### ALIA QUÆDAM COGNITU NECESSARIA.

<p>AED. CVR.—Ædilis Curulis.          AED. PL.—Ædiles Plebis.          A. U. C. — Anno Urbis Conditiæ.          COS. — Consul. Consule.          COSS.* — Consules. Consulibus.          C. D. — Consul Designatus.          D. O. M.—Deo Optimo Maximo.          D. D. — Dono Dedit.          D. D. D.—Dat, Dicat, Dedicat.          DD. — Dederunt.          D. M. — Dis Manibus.          F. — Filius. M. F.—Mardi Filius.          F. F. F. — Felix, Faustum, Fortunatum.          H.S. — Sestertius.          IMP. — Imperator.</p>	<p>ID. — Idus. A. D. III. ID.          OCT.—Antedie tertium Idus Octobris.          KAL. — Kalendæ.          L. — Libertus.          M. P. — Mille Passus.          NON. — Nonæ.          N. — Nepos.          P. C. — Patres Conscripti.          P. M. — Pontifex Maximus.          T. P. — Tribunitiæ Potestatis.          S. C. — Senatûs Consultum.          S. P. D.—Salutem Plurimam Dat.          S.P.Q.R.—Senatus Populus Quæ Romanus.          S. V. B. E. E. V.—Si Vales, Bene est, Ego Valeo.</p>
--	---

### Quibus adde.

<p>À. — Absolvo.          C. — Condemno.          N. L.— Non Liquet.          U. R.— Uti Rogas.          F. C.— Faciendum Curavit.</p>	<p>H. S. E. — Hic Situs Est.          S. T. T. L.— Sit Tibi Terra Levis!          III. VIRI.— Triumviri.          A. A. A. — Auro, Argento, Aere.          F. F. — Flando Feriundo.</p>
--	---

### Apud Recentiores.

<p>A. B. — Artium Baccalaureus.          A. C. — Ante Christum.          A. D. — Anno Domini.          A. M. — Artium Magister. Anno          Cf. — Confer. [Mundi]          Cod. — Codex.          E. G. — Exempli Gratia.          I. E. — Id Est.          ICTUS. — Juris Consultus.          I.V.D.— Juris Utriusque Doctor.</p>	<p>L. B. — Lector Benevole.          L. C. — Loco Citato.          L. S. — Locus Sigilli.          M. D. — Medicinæ Doctor.          Mus. D.— Musicæ Doctor.          MSS. — Manuscripti.          N. B. — Nota Bene.          S. T. P.— Sanctæ Theologiæ Professor.          V. D. M.— Verbi Divini Minister.</p>
--	--

<p>C. — Centum.          L. — <math>\frac{1}{2}</math> C.—50.          M.— Mille.</p>	<p>CIC. — M.—Mille.          D. — IC—<math>\frac{1}{2}</math> CIC.—500.          CCIC.—10,000.          ICIC.—5,000.</p>
---	--

\* *LITÆRA geminata* indicat *Pluralem*, interdum *Superlativum*: ut, LL.—Libertissimæ.

## AFFINITAS ET COGNATIO.

*Agnati, patris, cognati, matris, habentur.*  
 Dic patris fratres *patruos; amitasque* sorores.  
 Frater *avunculus* est, soror est, *matertera, matris.*  
 Fratrem tui patris natus, *patruelis* habetur:  
 At *consobrinos* dic quos peperere sorores.  
 Nati sponsa, *nurus; gener* est tibi, nata, maritus;  
 Conjugibus materque paterque, *socrusque socerque:*  
*Vitricus* est matris conjux; patrisque, *noverca;*  
 Germanusque viri, *levir;* sed *fratria, fratris*  
 Uxor; *glos, uxor* fratri aut germana marito.

---

## SESTERTIUM ET SESTERTIUS.

SESTERTIUM unum mille habet SESTERTIOS;  
 Hic *Nummus*, atqui *Pondus* est *Sestertium*.

---

## PARTES ASSIS.

ASSIS *Romani partes sunt, uncia, sextans,*  
*Quadrans atque triens, quincunx et semis, et inde*  
*Septunx; bes, dodrans; dextanti junge* deuncem.

---

## NOTATIO TEMPORIS.

## SIGNA ZODIACI ET TEMPESTATES.

*Sunt, Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo, Virgo,*  
*Libra et Scorpius, Arcitēnens, Capri, Urna, Natantes.*  
*Æstas a Geminis, Autumnus Virgine, sævo*  
*Bruma Sagittifero, nitidis Ver Piscibus infit.*

## KALENDARIVM ROMANVM.

NOMINA mensum *adjectiva* sunt non *substantiva*; ut, "Kalendis Juliis scripta sunt hæc," non, *Kalendis Julii*.

*Prima* dies MENSIS Romani est dicta KALENDÆ;  
*Sex* NONÆ Octobri, *sex* Maio, Martis, Iuli;  
*Quatuor* at reliquis: sunt IDUS cuilibet octo.  
 Ne tu *respicias* numerando, at *prospice* semper,  
 Venturas Nonas, venturas providus Idus  
 Prospice, venturasque, puer dilecte, Kalendas;  
 Denique venturam, mortalis, prospice mortem.

	<i>Maius, Martius, Julius, October.</i>	<i>Januarius, Augustus, December.</i>	<i>Aprilis, Junius, September, November.</i>	<i>Februarius.</i>
1	KALENDÆ.	KALENDÆ,	KALENDÆ.	KALENDÆ.
2	Sexto die	Quarto die } Nonas.	Quarto die } Nonas.	Quarto die } Nonas.
3	Quinto die	Tertio die } Nonas.	Tertio die } Nonas.	Tertio die } Nonas.
4	Quarto die	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.
5	Tertio die	NONÆ.	NONÆ.	NONÆ.
6	Pridie Nonas.	Octavo die	Octavo die	Octavo die
7	NONÆ.	Septimo die	Septimo die	Septimo die
8	Octavo die	Sexto die } Idus.	Sexto die } Idus.	Sexto die } Idus.
9	Septimo die	Quinto die } Idus.	Quinto die } Idus.	Quinto die } Idus.
10	Sexto die	Quarto die } Idus.	Quarto die } Idus.	Quarto die } Idus.
11	Quinto die	Tertio die } Idus.	Tertio die } Idus.	Tertio die } Idus.
12	Quarto die	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13	Tertio die	IDUS.	IDUS.	IDUS.
14	Pridie Idus.	Undevices. die	Duodevices. die	Sextodec. die
15	IDUS.	Duodevices. die	Septimodec. die	Quintodec. die
16	Septimodec. die	Septimodec. die	Sextodec. die	Quartodec. die
17	Sextodec. die	Sextodec. die	Quintodec. die	Tertiodec. die
18	Quintodec. die	Quintodec. die	Quartodec. die	Duodecimo die
19	Quartodec. die	Quartodec. die	Tertiodec. die	Undecimo die
20	Tertiodec. die	Tertiodec. die	Duodecimo die	Decimo die
21	Duodecimo die	Duodecimo die	Undecimo die	Nono die
22	Undecimo die	Undecimo die	Decimo die	Octavo die
23	Decimo die	Decimo die	Nono die	Septimo die
24	Nono die	Nono die	Octavo die	Sexto die
25	Octavo die	Octavo die	Septimo die	Quinto die
26	Septimo die	Septimo die	Sexto die	Quarto die
27	Sexto die	Sexto die	Quinto die	Tertio die
28	Quinto die	Quinto die	Quarto die	Pridie Kalendas.
29	Quarto die	Quarto die	Tertio die	
30	Tertio die	Tertio die	Pridie Kalendas.	
31	Pridie Kalendas.	Pridie Kalendas.		

Notes.—Anni, in quibus Februarius mensis dies continet 29 (Anglicè, LEAP-YEARS) BINOS habent dies, nostris 24to et 25to Februarii respondent, qui ambo eodem notâ signantur 'SEXTO Kal. Mart.' unde hi anni appellantur BISSEXTILES.

## ACCIDENCE CONSTRUED.

Page 7.

**ADULTER** an adulterer dat gives adulteri, in genitivo singulari in the genitive singular. Sic thus, puer boy, vesper evening, gener son-in-law, socer father-in-law, asper rough, miser miserable, tener tender, lacer lacerated, prosper prosperous, liber wine and free, presbyter priest, compositaque and (words) compounded duobus verbis with the two verbs gerō and fero, ut as, armiger knight, dant give eri and ero in the genitive and dative cases singular.

Page 8.

Scilicet truly mortalem a mortal egregii altique silenti of wondrous and deep silence.

Page 9.

**Ælinōn** in sylvis *Ælinōn* in the woods. **Troilōn** *Troilus*.  
 Gen. Letum death **Andrōgēō** of *Androgeos* in foribus on the doors.  
 Gen. Mutaverat he had changed artus the limbs **Terēi** of *Tereus*.  
 Gen. Tectaque and the roof **Penthēi** of *Pentheus*.  
 Dat. **Calliopēa** *Calliopea* **Orphēi** to *Orpheus*.  
 Abl. **Blandiūs** more bland **Threicio** **Orphēō** than *Threician Orpheus*.  
 Voc. Quo loco in what state (is) summa res the highest affair, (i. e. our country's cause), **Panthū** o *Panthous*?

Page 11.

(The following words) habent im have im in accusativo in the accusative case: **Vis** force, **ravis** hoarseness, **pelvis** basin, **sitis** thirst, **tussis** cough, **sinapis** mustard, **cucumis** cucumber, **amussis** (carpenter's) rule, **præsepis** manger, **cannabis** hemp, **securis** axe, **Charybdis** *Charybdis*, **tigris** tiger, atque and **buris** plough-tail, et omnes fluvii in is and all rivers (ending in) is; ut as, **Albis** the *Elbe*, **Tibris** the *Tiber*, **Thamesis** the *Thames*.

Sed but **restia** rope, **puppis** poop, **turris** tower, **navis** ship, **strigilis** strigil, **sementis** sowing, **clavis** key, adjuuge add (to these) **febris** fever et **aqualis** and **ever**, hæc these dant give em vel im, either em or im (in the accusative), **utrum malis** whichever you may choose.

**Obs. 3.** In ablativo singulari in the ablative singular (the following) malunt choose formari to be formed in i quam e in i rather than e: appellativa appellatives (as) **Atheniensis** *Athenian*; quisque mensis in is and every month (which ends) in is, (as) **Aprilis**

*April; (and in) ober (and) ember, ut hi as these, October October, et November and November; et quæ dant im accusativo and those which give im in the accusative hæc dabunt i in ablativo these will give i in the ablative case.*

*Obs. 4. Quot as many as dabant i ablativo did give i in the ablative dant ium plurali genitivo give ium in the genitive plural; et finita s et x and words ended by s and x, tantum only consonante with a consonant eunte ante going before; plerumque and generally monosyllaba dant ium monosyllables give ium, et parisyllaba words of equal number of syllables (in all their cases) ferè ium commonly (give) ium. Sed quedam sunt excipienda but some are to be excepted, committendaque memoriæ and to be committed to memory.*

*Um, (these give) um, vates poet, senex old man, pater father, panis bread, accipiter hawk, canis dog, frater brother, mater mother, juvenis youth, apis bee, volucris bird, crux cross, dux leader, nux nut, Thrax Thracian, fax torch, grex herd, gryps griffin, Phryx Phrygian, vox voice, lynx lynx, rex king, lex law, fur thief, ren kidney, splen spleen, fraus fraud, laus praise, mos manner, crus leg, grus, crane, sus swine, præsurety, pes foot, flos flower.*

*Page 12.*

*Obs. 2. Sicanio prætenta sinu stretched before the Sicilian bay.*

*Parce metu, Cytherea spare your fear, o Venus.*

*Que gratia currum what delight of chariots (there was).*

*Page 13.*

*(The following make the dative plural) in ubus non ibus in ubus not in ibus: quercus oak, ficus fig, acus needle, arcus bow, verus spit, lacus lake, specus cave, tribus tribe, artus limb, portus haven, pecus flock, partus bringing forth.*

*Sperne spurn (the endings) me, mu, mi, mis, si if vis you wish declinare to decline domus house.*

*Ubi Libra fecerit when Libra shall have made horas die somnique pares the hours of the day and of sleep equal. Juvenem a youth constantis fide of constant faith.*

*Page 16.*

*In ablativo singulari in the ablative singular hæc these words malunt formari choose to be formed in e quam i, in e rather than i: pauper poor, puber adult, hospes host or guest, compos in possession (of his senses), superstes survivor, senex old man, sospes safe, impos powerless, compositaque cum and (those) compounded with corpus body and pes foot: bicorpor double-bodied, bipes two-footed, multipes many-footed.*

*Page 17.*

*Jactantior Ancus Ancus, too boastful. Sum paulo infirmior I am rather infirm.*

*Purissima mella very pure honey; Justissima tellus very just earth; Optimus Virgilius very excellent Virgil.*



## Page 20.

Sol aureus *the golden sun* regit *rules* per duodena astra *through twelve stars (signs of zodiac)* cæli *of heaven*.

Mææ agnæ *my lambs mille a thousand (in number)* errant *rove* in Siculis montibus *on Sicilian hills*.

Ille *he* ibat *was going* cum multis millibus *with many thousands* armatorum *of armed men*.

## Page 23.

Qui gurgis *what whirlpool*, aut quæ flumina *or what rivers* ignara lugubris belli *are ignorant of lugubrious war?* Quod mare *what sea* non Dauniæ cædes decoloravere *have not the Daunian (Italian) slaughters discoloured?* Quæ ora *what shore* caret *is* without nostro cruore *our blood?*

## Page 24.

Quicquid reges delirant *whatsoever the kings rave*, Achivi ple-  
tuntur *the Greeks rue*.

Aude aliquid *dare something dignum* brevibus Gyaris *worthy the narrow Gyari* et carcere *and a prison*, si vis esse aliquis *if you wish to be somebody*.

Non est cuiquam *it is not (possible) for any one* fallere me *to deceive me*. An quidquam sit majus nobis *should any thing be greater to us* tanto munere *than so great a reward?*

Quidam *a certain person* occurrit *meets me* notus mihi nomine tantum *known to me only by name*.

Sævus cruel fingere quælibet opprobria *to forge any sort of calumny* in quemvis *against any one you choose*. Non contingit cuivis homini *it does not fall to the lot of any one you choose* adire Corinthum *to reach Corinth*.

Ne quisque placeat sibi *let not each one please himself*; sua voluptas *his own pleasure* trahit quemque *leads each man*. Ut ætas est cuique *according as his age is to each*, ita so facetus *courteous* adopta quemque *adopt each*.

Quisquis *whosoever* studet emulari Pindarum *studies to emulate Pindar*.

Ne læst quicumque Deus *whatsoever God*, quicumque heros *whatsoever hero* adhibebitur *shall be employed*.

Quem dierum cunque *what (kind) of days* soever fors dabit *chance shall give*, appone lucro *set it down for gain*.

Non quisquam *not any one* isthic *in that place of yours* limat obliquo oculo *looks askance at* mea commoda *my comforts*. Nec deditus *not given* citharæ *to the harp* nec muse ulli *nor to any muse*.

Sis memor, *be mindful!* quivis, et *and* quilibet, *include* omnes *include all*; sed *contra* *but on the other hand*, quisquam, et *and* ullus, *exclude* omnes *exclude all*.



## Page 28.

Putes you may think Garganum nemus that the Garganian wood mugire is roaring, aut or mare Tuscum the Tuscan sea. Eloquar should I speak, an sileam or should I hold my peace? Mortalia facta peribunt mortal deeds will perish, nedum (ne dicam) not to say that, i. e. much less, honos et gratia sermonum can the honour and beauty of language stet stand vivax long-lived? Hoc this Ithacus the Ithacan (Ulysses), velit would wish et Atridae and the sons of Atreus mercentur would buy magno at a great price. Quid faceret what should he do? Quo se ferret whither should he bear himself, conjuge his wife bis raptâ having been twice snatched away. Quo fletu with what weeping moveret should he move Manes the Manes, quâ voce with what voice (moe) Numina the Deities? Sis felix may you be propitious! levesque and may you lighten nostrum laborem our labour, quacunque whoever (you are)! Proh pudor! for shame! et advena illuserit and shall a stranger have mocked nostris regnis our realms!

## Page 34.

Fuge avoid querere to inquire quid sit futurum what may be about to be cras to-morrow.

## Page 48.

Sunto let there be bini censores two censors (for each year). Transnanto ter let them thrice swim across Tiberim the Tiber, uncti anointed, quibus est opus to whom there is want somno alto of sound sleep. Laudato praise thou ingentia rura great farms, colito till thou exiguum a little one.

## Page 60.

Spargier agno to be sprinkled with a lamb: dicier to be said, hic est this is he.

## Page 61.

Quæ finis what is the end standi of standing? nos we ducimus pass (waste) horas the hours flendo in weeping. Nate Deâ o born from a goddess, omnis fortuna all fortune superanda est is to be conquered ferendo by bearing it. Putandum est it must be thought animas that souls ire go sublimes aloft ad cælum to heaven hinc hence. Parcendum it must be spared (you must spare) teneris them tender; et and dum while palmes the tendrils of the vine agit se shoots itself ad auras into the air, letus luxuriant, immissus sent forth per purum through the pure (sky) laxis habenis with loose reins (shoots), ipsa acies the edge itself (indeed) falcis of the pruning-knife nondum tentanda (is) not yet to be tried, sed but frondes the leaves carpendæ (are) to be culled manibus with the hands uncis curved, legendæque and to be plucked inter betwixt and between. Sepes hedges etiam too texendæ (are) to be woven et and pectus omne all cattle tenendum to be restrained; tellus the earth tamen yet sollicitanda (is) to be stirred pulvis que and the

*dust movendus to be moved, et and Jupiter Jupiter (the sky) metuendus to be feared avis for the grapes jam maturis now ripe.*

*Missi sunt they were sent speculatum to reconnoitre arcem the citadel.*

Page 68.

*Ait he says nil that nothing esse is prius preferable to, nil nothing melius better cœlibe vitâ than a single life. Nil nothing satis est is enough inquit says he, quia because sis you are tanti (esteemed) at so much quantum habeas as you have.*

Page 72.

*Ut valet how fares he? ut meminit nostri how does he remember us?*

*Quin exercemus why do we not exercise (ratify) potius rather pacem æternam eternal peace inter nos among ourselves pactosque hymeneos and plighted nuptials?*

Page 73.

*Num whether honor idem the same beauty adest is present cocto to it cooked?*

*Nonne vides do you not see ut how Tmolus mittit Tmolus sends eroceos odores its saffron odour, India India (sends) ebur ivory, molles Sabæi the soft Sabæans (send) sua thura their frankincense? Auditis hear ye? An or amabilis insania (does) a pleasing phrensy ludit delude me me?*

*Novistine do you know locum a place meliorem better rure beato than the happy country? Furor ne cœcus does blind madness an or vis acrior more eager violence rapit hurry on?*

*An memorem should I mention mare the sea quod which alluit bathes (Italy) supra above, quodque and that which (bathes it) infra below? Anne or (should I mention) lacus tantos so great lakes?*

*Dubito I am in doubt memorem whether I should mention Romulum Romulus post hos after these, an or quietum regnum the quiet reign Pompili of Pompilius (Numa), an or superbos fascēs the proud fascēs (rods with axes) Tarquini of Tarquinius, an or nobile lethum the noble death Catonis of Cato.*

*Quid enim for what ambigitur is questioned (whether) Castor an or Docilis (names of gladiators) sciat plus has the more skill.*

*Multum intererit there will be a wide difference Davusne whether Davus loquatur speak, an or heros a hero; maturusne senex whether a mature old man, an or (a person) fervidus warm juventâ with youth adhuc florente yet blooming; et and (there will be a wide difference whether) matrona potens a potent matron (speak), an or sedula nutrix a sedulous nurse.*

*Ipsē he himself (knows not) quis sit who he is, utrum sit whether he is at all an non sit or is not, id quoque that too nescit he knows not.*

*Quid refert what signifies it utrum whether Mutius Mutius*

ignoscat *pardon* dictis *the words* an non or not? Puellæ *maidens* nescivère *hymem have been (are usually) ignorant of the (coming) storm* carpentes *plying* ne nocturna quidem *not even nightly* pensa *tasks (in wool).*

Page 74.

Haud male *by no means ill*, Telemachus, proles *the offspring* patientis Ulysssei *of patient Ulysses (said)*. Ithacæ locus *the country of Ithaca* non est aptus *is not suited* equis *for horses*. Haud ignara *by no means ignorant* ac and non incauta *not incautious* futuri *of the future*.

Et sapit *he both is wise* et mecum facit *and makes (agrees) with me* et judicat *and judges* Jove æquo *with just Jupiter*.

Page 75.

Et and dedit *gave* septem annos *seven years* studiis *to studies*, insenuitque *and grew old*. Tribulaque *both harrows* traheaque *and drags* et and ratri *rakes* iniquo pondere *with galling weight*.

Aut *the conjunction* aut jungit *joins* diversa sibi *things different from each other*, et contraria *and things contrary to each other* sensu in sense; vel *vel emendat* *corrects* dicta *what has been said*, vel or gaudet *rejoices* addere *to add (something)* dictis *to what has been said*; sive et seu *sive and seu (rejoice)* supponere *to suppose* similes casus *similar cases* rerum *of things*; neve et neu *neve and neu* prohibent *prohibit*; aut aut vertitur *is changed* in ve into *ve* poetis *by the poets*. Omnia quæ *all which things* Flaccus Flaccus (Horace) demonstrat *shews* lyrico carmine *in a lyric ode*.

Quem virum *what man* aut heroa *or hero* sumes *will you take* celebrare *to celebrate* lyrâ *on the lyre* vel or acri tibiâ *on the shrill flute*? Aut *either* in umbrosis oris *on the shady banks* Heliconis *of Helicon (in Bœotia)* aut or super Pindo *on Pindus (in Thessaly)* gelidove in Hæmo *or cold Hæmus (in Thrace)*.—Ille *he* seu *whether* egerit *he may have driven* to flight Parthos *Parthians* imminentes *hanging over* Latio *Latium* domitos *tamed* justo triumpho *in a full triumph*, sive or Seras *the Seres (Chinese)* subjectos *lying under* oris *the shores* Orientis *of the East* et and Indos *the Indians*—Neve *and let not* ocyor *aura a quicker (too quick)* gale tollat *carry away* to thee iniquum *hostile* nostris vitiis *to our vices*—Neu *nor* sinas *do thou suffer* Medos *the Medes* equitare *to ride* in ulto *unpunished*, te *duce, you being our general, Cæsar o Cæsar!*



PROPRIA QUÆ MARIBUS,

OR

THE GENDERS OF NOUNS, CONSTRUED.

V. 1.

PROPRIA *proper names quæ which tribuuntur are assigned maribus to the male kind dicas you may call mascula masculines; ut as sunt are Divorum the names of the heathen gods; Mars the god of war; Bacchus the god of wine; Apollo the god of wisdom: Virorum the names of men; ut as, Cato Cato a noble Roman, Virgilius the poet Virgil: Fluviorum the names of rivers; ut as, Tiberis the Tiber, Orontes a river near Antioch: Mensum the names of months; ut as, September the month September: Ventorum the names of winds; ut as, Libs the south-west wind, Notus the south wind, Auster the south wind: Montium the names of mountains; ut as, Othrys a mount in Thessaly, Eryx in Sicily—Ætna let Ætna in Sicily excipiatur be excepted, et Ceta and Ceta in Thessaly, Cyllene a mount in Arcadia, Rhodope in Thrace, Calpe Gibraltar; et and Alpes let the Alps excipiantur be excepted, quæ which sunt are fœmineæ feminines; neutrum Soracte let the neuter Mt. Soracte (St. Oreste) notetur be noted.*

V. 8.

PROPRIA nomina *proper names referentia denoting fœmineum sexum the female sex tribuuntur are given fœmineo generi to the feminine gender, sive whether sint they be Dearum the names of goddesses; ut as, Juno Jupiter's wife, Venus the goddess of beauty: Muliebría the names of women; ut as, Anna Anne, Philotis Philotis: Urbium the names of cities; ut as, Elis a city of Peloponnesus, Opus a city of Locris: Regionum the names of countries; ut as, Græcia Greece, Persis Persia: item also nomen the name insulæ of an island; ceu as, Creta Creta (Candia), Britannia Britain, Cyprus Cyprus.*

Tamen *but quædam some names urbium of cities sunt are excipienda to be excepted; ut as, ista mascula these masculines; Sulmo Sirmione, in Italy, Agragas Girgenti, in Sicily: quædam neutralia some neuters; ut as, Argos Argos in Peloponnesus, Tibur Tivoli, in Italy, Præneste Palestrina, in Italy; et also Anxur Terracina, in Italy, quod which dat gives utrumque genus both genders.*

## V. 16.

FEMINEI generis of the feminine gender erunt will be Plantæ plants Gemmæque and precious stones Latinè in Latin; ut *as* myrtus myrtle, saphirus a sapphire; et and vulgò commonly nomina appellativa the names Arborum of trees erunt will be muliebria feminines; ut *as*, alnus an alder-tree, cupressus a cypress-tree, cedrus a cedar-tree. Spinus a sloe-tree mas is masculine, oleaster a wild olive-tree mas is masculine, carduus a thistle, helleborus hellebore, calamus a reed, rubus a briar, asphodèlusque and asphodel, asparagus, narcissus, amaracus, acanthus est mas is masculine. Sunt these nouns are et also neutra of the neuter gender, siler a withy-tree, suber a cork tree, thus a frankincense-tree, robur an oak, que and acer a maple-tree.

## V. 23.

ETIAM also volucrem the names of birds; ceu *as*, passer a sparrow, hirundo a swallow: Ferarum of wild beasts; ut *as*, tigris a tiger, vulpes a fox: et and Piscium the names of fishes; ut *as*, ostrea an oyster, cetus a whale, sunt are dicta called epicœna nouns of the epicene gender; quibus to which vox ipsa the termination itself feret will give genus aptum the right gender.

## V. 26.

Attamen but notandum it is to be observed ex cunctis of all the nouns suprâ above mentioned que and reliquis of those that follow, omne that every noun quod which exit in um ends in um, seu whether Græcum it be Greek sive or Latinum Latin, esse is genus neutrum of the neuter gender: sic also nomen a noun invariable undeclinabile; ut, *as* cornu horn atque and genu knee, Tempe Tempe, a vale in Thessaly, fas law, nihil nothing, instar like.

## V. 30.

NOMEN a noun non crescens not increasing genitivo in the genitive case; ceu *as*, caro carnis flesh, capra capre a she goat, nubes nubis a cloud, est is genus muliebre the feminine gender.

## V. 32.

NOMINA multa many nouns virorum denoting the offices of men in a ending in a dicuntur are called mascula masculines; ut *as*, scriba a scribe, assecla a page, scurra a buffoon, et and sic thus lixa a sutler, lanista a master of gladiators.

Quot as many nouns as declinatio prima the first declension Græcorum of the Greeks fundit in *as* supplies in *as* et in *es* and *is*; et and quot as many Latin nouns *as* fiunt are derived ab illis from them per a ending in a, mascula are masculines; ut *as*, satrapas satrapa a Persian nobleman; athletes athleta a wrestler. Item also leguntur these are read mascula of the masculine gender, verres a boar-pig, natalis a birth-day, aqualis an ewer.

Nata nouns compounded ab asse of *as* a Roman penny or pound weight; ut *as*, centussis a hundred asses; conjunge join to these

lienis the spleen, et and orbis any orb, callis a path, caulis a stalk, follis bellows, collis a hill, mensis a month, et and ensis a sword, fustis a club, funis a rope, cenchris a spotted serpent, panis bread, crinis hair, et and ignis fire, cassis a toil or net, fascis a faggot, torris a fire-brand, sentis a thorn, piscis a fish, et and unguis a nail or talon, et also vermis a worm, vectis a lever, postis a door-post; sic so axis an axle-tree, et and amnis a river.

In er nouns ending in er, ceu as, venter the belly; in os vel us nouns ending in os or us, ut as, logos a word, annus a year, mascula are masculines.

At but sunt these nouns are foeminei generis of the feminine gender, mater a mother, humus the ground, domus a house, alvus a panich, et and colus a distaff, et also ficus quartæ of the fourth declension pro for fructu a fig, que and acus a needle, porticus an arcade, atque and tribus a tribe, socrus a mother-in-law, nurus a daughter-in-law, et and manus a hand, idus the ides of a month; huc to these anus an old woman addenda est is to be added, huc to these mystica vannus the mystical fan Iacchi of Bacchus.

Jungas you may also join his to these Græca Greek nouns vertentia os in us changing os into us: papyrus paper, antidotus an antidote, costus the herb zedoary, diametrus a diameter, byssus fine flax, abyssus a bottomless pit, diphthongus a diphthong, synodus an assembly, methodus a method, dialectus a dialect, et and aretus a set of stars called the Bear, cum with multis aliis many other nouns, que which nunc at this time perscribere to write at large longum est is tedious.

## V. 52.

NOMEN a noun in e ending in e, si if gignit is it makes is in the genitive case, est neutrum is neuter; ut as, mare the sea, rete a net: et and adde add quot whatever nouns in on ending in on, crescentia in i which make i in the genitive case; ceu as, barbiton a harp or lute. Adde add his to these, virus poison, pelagus the sea; vulgus the common people modo sometimes neutrum is neuter, modo sometimes mas is masculine. Adde add chaos chaos, melos melody, a Græcis from Greek words; sic so, cetos a whale, eposque and an epic poem.

## V. 56.

SUNT these nouns are incerti generis of the doubtful gender, talpa a mole, et and dama a deer, canalis a channel, et and cytisis hadder, balanus the fruit of the palm-tree, clunis a buttock, que and finis an end or limit, que and penus all provisions, pampinus a vine-leaf, et and corbis a basket, linter a bark, torquis a chain, specus a cave, anguis a snake; ficus dans making fici in the genitive case, pro morbo for a disease, atque and phaselus a pinnace, lecythus an oil-cruse, atque and atomus an atom, grossus a green fig, pharus a watch-tower, et and paradisus paradise.



## V. 61.

COMPOSITUM a noun compounded a verbo of a verb dans a ending in a est is commune duorum the common of two genders; Grajugena a Grecian born, a from gigno to beget; agricola a farmer, a from colo to till; advena a stranger, a from venio to come, mon-strant show id that.

Adde add senex an old man or woman, auriga a charioteer, et and verna a slave by birth, sodalis a companion, vates a prophet, extorris a banished man or woman, patruelis a cousin-german, que and perduellis an open enemy in war, affinis one allied by marriage, juvenis a young person, testis a witness, civis a citizen, canis a dog or bitch, hostis an enemy.

## V. 66.

NOMEN a noun est is genus muliebre of the feminine gender si if penultima syllaba the last syllable but one genitivi of the genitive case crescentis increasing sonat sounds longa long, velut as hæc these nouns, pietas pietatis piety, virtus virtutis virtue mon-strant do show.

## V. 69.

NOMINA quædam certain nouns monosyllaba of one syllable dicuntur are mascula masculines, sal salt, sol the sun, ren a kidney, et and spleen, Car a Carian, Ser a Chinese, vir a man or husband, vas vadis a surety, as a pound weight, mas the male kind, bes eight ounces, Cres a Cretan, præs a surety for money, et and pes a foot, glis a dormouse, habens having gliris genitivo in the genitive case, mos a manner, flos a flower, ros dew, et and Tros a Trojan, mus a mouse, dens a tooth, mons a mountain, pons a bridge, et and simul also fons a fountain, seps pro for serpente a serpent, et and gryps a griffin, Thrax a Thracian, rex a king, grex gregis a herd of cattle, et and Phryx a Phrygian.

Etiam also polysyllaba nouns of more than one syllable, in n ending in n, sunt are mascula masculines; ut as, Acarnan a man of Acarnania, lichen a letter, et and delphin a dolphin; et also in o nouns ending in o, signantia signifying corpus bodily substance; ut as, leo a lion, curculio the weasand or gullet; sic also senio the number six, ternio the number three, sermo a discourse.

In er, or, et os, nouns ending in er, or, and os, mascula are masculines; ceu as, crater a bowl, conditor a builder, heros a hero: His to these conjunge join torrens a land-flood, nefrens a young toothless animal, oriens the east, que and cliens a client, atque and bidens instrumentum a fork with two spikes, cum pluribus with more nouns in dens ending in dens: Adde add to these gigas a giant, elephas an elephant, adamas a diamond, que and Garamas a man of Libya, que also tapes tapestry, atque and lebes a caldron, sic so et also magnes a loadstone, que and unum nomen one noun quintæ of the fifth declension, meridies mid-day; et also

quæ the nouns which componuntur are compounded ab of asse a pound weight, ut as, dodrans nine ounces, semis half a pound.

Mascula these masculines jungantur may be joined, Samnis a Sannite, hydrops the dropsy, et and thorax the breast; jungas you may join quoque also mascula these masculines, vervex a wether sheep, phœnix a phenix, et and bombyx pro for vermiculo a silk-worm. Tamen yet ex his of these Siren a mermaid, nenon and also soror a sister, uxor a wife, sunt are muliebre genus of the feminine gender.

## V. 87.

Et also hæc nomina these nouns monosyllaba of one syllable, sunt are neutralia neuters: mel honey, fel gall, lac milk, far bread-corn, ver the spring, æs brass, cor the heart, vas vasis a vessel, os ossis a bone, et and os oris a mouth, rus the country, thus frankincense, jus right, crus the leg, pus corruption.

Et also polysyllaba nouns of many syllables in al ending in al, que and in r ending in r; ut as, capital a priest's veil, laquear a roof or ceiling. Alec a sharp pickle neutrum is neuter, alex a kind of fish muliebre is feminine.

## V. 91.

SUNT these nouns are dubii generis of the doubtful gender: scrobs a ditch, serpens a serpent, bubo an owl, rudens a cable, grus a crane, perdix a partridge, lynx a spotted beast, limax a snail, stirps pro for trunco the body of a tree, et and calx pedis the heel of the foot.

Adde add dies a day, tantum only esto let it be mas masculine numero secundo in the plural number.

## V. 94.

SUNT these nouns are commune of the common of two genders: parens a father or mother, que and auctor an author, infans an infant, adolescens a young man or woman, dux a leader, illex a decoy or lure, hæres an heir, exlex an outlaw.

Creata nouns compounded a of fronte a forehead, ut as, bifrons one with two faces; custos a keeper, bos an ox, bull, or cow, fur a thief, sus a swine, atque and sacerdos a priest or priestess, (are also of the common of two genders).

## V. 97.

NOMEN a noun est is mas of the masculine gender, si if penultima the last syllable in do, quod which dat makes dinis in the genitive case crescentis increasing sit be brevis short; ut as, sanguis blood, genitivo in the genitive case sanguinis.

## V. 99.

HYPERDISSYLLABON let a noun of more than two syllables, in do ending in do, quod which dat makes dinis in the genitive case, sit be fœminei generis of the feminine gender; atque also in go a



noun ending in *go*, quod which makes *ginis* in genitivo in the genitive case: dulcedo sweetness faciens making dulcedinis, monstrat show id tibi tibi to you, que and compago compaginis a joint id that. Adijce add virgo a virgin, grando hail, fides faith, compes a fester, teges a mat, et and seges corn-land, arbor a tree, que and hyems winter: sic so ehlamys a mantle, et and sindon fine linen, Gorgon Medusa's head, icon an image, et and Amazon an Amazon.

Gracula Great nouns finita ending in *as*, vel or in *is*; ut *as*, lampas a lamp, iaspis a jasper, cassis a helmet, cuspis the point of a weapon: item also mulier a woman, et and pecus cattle dans making pecudis in the genitive case.

Adde and feminineis to the feminine, forfex a pair of shears, pellex a barrow, carex sedge, atque and simul also supellex household-stuff, appendix an appendage, hystrix a porcupine, coxendix a hip, que and filix fern.

## V. 106.

NOMEN a noun in a ending in *a*, signans signifying rem a thing non animatam without life est is neutrale genus of the neuter gender: ut *ae*, problema a question proposed: En nouns also ending in *en*: ut *ae*, omen a token of good or bad luck: Ar nouns ending in *ar*: ut *ae*, jubar a sun-beam: Ur que and nouns ending in *ur*: ut *ae*, secur the firer: que and Us nouns ending in *us*: ut *as*, onus a burden: Put nouns ending in *put*: ut *as*, occiput the hinder part of the head.

Attamen but ex his of these pecten a comb, furfur bran, sunt are masculinae masculines.

Sunt these nouns are neutra of the neuter gender, cadaver a carcase, verber a stripe, iter a journey, suber cork, tuber pro for fungo a mushroom, et and uber a teat, gingiber ginger, et and laser the herb ass-fennel, cicer a vetch, et and piper pepper, atque and papaver a poppy, et also siser a parsnip.

Adde sive may add his to these neutra the neutrals, equor a smooth surface, marmor marble, que and ador fine wheat, atque and pecus cattle, quando when facit it makes pecoris in genitivo in the genitive case.

## V. 117.

SENT these nouns are dubii generis of the doubtful gender, carbo a briar, mango the brim of a thing, cinis ashes, imbrex a gutter-tile, forceps a pair of tongs, pumex a pumice stone, cortex the rind or bark of a tree, pulvis dust, que and adeps fat.

Adde and culex a gnat, natrix a water-serpent, et and onyx a precious stone, cum prole with its compounds, que and silex a flint, quamvis although usus esse vult will have hæc these nouns melius rather dicier to be called masculinae masculines.

## V. 121.

ISTA these nouns sunt are communis generis of the common of

*two genders: vigil a sentinel, pugil a boxer, exul a banished man or woman, præsul a prelate, homo a man or woman, et and nemo nobody, martyr a martyr, Ligur a Ligurian, augur a soothsayer, et and Arcas an Arcadian, antistes a chief priest or priestess, miles a soldier, pedes a foot-man or woman, interpres an interpreter, comes a companion, hospes a host or guest: sic so ales any great bird, præses a president, princeps a prince or princess, aucups a fowler, eques a horse-man or woman, obses a hostage: atque and alla multa nomina many other nouns quæ which creantur are derived a verbis from verbs; ut as, conjux a husband or wife, iudex a judge, vindex an avenger, opifex a workman, et and aruspex a diviner.*

V. 127.

ADJECTIVA adjectives habentia having duntaxat only unam vocem one termination, ut as, felix happy, audax bold, retinent keep genus omne every gender sub unâ under that one ending: si if cadant they fall sub under geminâ voce a double termination, velut as, omnis et and omne all, vox prior the former word est is commune duum the common of two genders, vox altera the second word neutrum is neuter: at but si if variant they vary tres voces the three endings, ut as, sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred, vox prima the first word est is mas masculine, altera the second foemina feminine, tertia the third neutrum is neuter.

Obs. 1. At but sunt there are some adjectives quæ which vocares you may call substantiva substantives prope in a manner flexu by their declining, tamen yet reperta they are found to be adjectiva adjectives naturâ by nature que and usu by use. Talia such sunt are, pauper poor, puber ripe of age, cum with degener degenerate, uber fruitful, et and dives rich, locuples wealthy, sospes safe, comes accompanying or attending, atque and superstes surviving, cum with paucis aliis a few others quæ which lectio justa a due reading docebit will teach.

Obs. 2. Hæc these adjectives gaudent like adsciscere to take sibi to themselves proprium quendam flexum a certain peculiar way of declining, campester champaign, volucer swift, ceber famous, celer speedy, atque and saluber wholesome; junge join pedester belonging to a foot-man, equester belonging to a horseman, et and acor sharp; junge join paluster marshy, atque and alacer cheerful, sylvester woody.

At but tu you variabis shall decline hæc these adjectives sic thus: hic celer in the masculine, hæc celeris in the feminine, hoc celere neutro in the neuter gender: aut or aliter otherwise sic thus, hic atque hæc celeris in the masculine and feminine, rursum again hoc celere est is tibi neutrum your neuter.

## NOUNS HETEROCLITE OR IRREGULAR

### CONSTRUED.

#### V. 144.

QUÆ those nouns which variant change genus their gender aut or flexum declension, quæcunque and whatsoever nouns novato ritu after a new manner deficient fall short ve or superant exceed in declining, sunt let them be called heteroclita heteroclites or nouns irregular.

#### V. 146.

CERNIS you see hæc these nouns variantia varying partim in part genus their gender ac and flexum their declining.

Pergamus the city Troy gignit makes Pergama, in plurali numero in the plural number.

Prior numerus the singular number dat gives his to these nouns neutrum genus the neuter gender, alter the plural utrumque both masculinæ and neuter: rastrum a rake, cum with fræno the bit of a bridle, et and clathrum a bar, porrumque and a leek, siserque and a carrot; sed but fræna neuter et and fræni masculinæ, quo pacto after which manner formant they form et also cætera the rest, sibilus a hissing, atque and jocus sport, locus a place. Jungas you may join his to these quoque also plurima many more.

#### V. 152.

PROPAGO the stock quæ which sequitur follows est is manca defective casu in case ve or numero in number.

#### V. 153.

QUÆ nouns which variant vary nullum casum no case; ut as, fas divine law, nil nothing, nihil nothing, instar likeness or proportion: et and multa many nouns in u ending in u, simul also in i; veluti as, que both cornu a horn, que and genu a knee; sic so, gummi gum, frugi thrifty; sic so, Tempe a pleasant vale in Thessaly, tot so many, quot how many, et and omnes numeros all nouns of number a tribus from three ad centum to a hundred, vocabis you shall call aptota aptotes, or without cases.

#### V. 157.

QUÆ and nomen a noun cui vox cadit una that has but one case est is called monoptyton a monoptyote; ceu as, noctu by night, natu by birth, jussu by order, injussu without order, simul also astu by craft, promptu in readiness, permissu with leave: legimus we have

*read astus, plurali in the plural number; legimus we have read inficias a denial, sed but vox ea sola that case alone reperta est is found.*

## V. 161.

SUNT *those nouns are called diptota diptotes, quibus to which duplex flexura two cases remansit have remained: ut as, fors chance dabit will make forte sexto in the ablative case, que and spontis choice sponte; et and jugeris an acre dat makes jugere sexto in the ablative case: autem but verberis a stripe verberere, quoque also suppetiæ aid dant makes suppetias quarto in the accusative case; tantundem just so much dat makes tantidem, impetis an attack format makes impete in the ablative case; sic so repetundarum illegal exactions repetundis. Autem but verberis a stripe cum with jugere an acre optant wish for quatuor casus four cases plurali in the plural number.*

## V. 168.

VOCANTUR *nouns are called triptota triptotes quibus in which inflectis you decline tres casus three cases; sic so est it is opis nostræ in our power, legis you meet with fer open bring assistance, atque and dignus worthy ope of help: flecte decline preci prayer, atque and precem, et and blandus petit he sues amicum his friend prece with entreaties: at but frugis fruit caret wants tantum only recto the nominative case, et and also ditionis rule; vox the word vis force est is integra entire, nisi unless forte perhaps datus the dative case desit be wanting. Junge join his to these vicis a turn atque and vicem et and vice; quoque also plus more habet has pluris, et and plus, quarto in the accusative case: numerus alter the plural number datur is given, omnibus his to all these nouns.*

## V. 175.

NOTES *you may observe propria cuncta all proper names, quibus est which have natura a nature coercens restraining them ne fiant from becoming plurima plurals; et and alia multa many other nouns occurrent tibi will fall in your way legenti in reading, raro seldom excedentia exceeding numerum primum the singular number.*

## V. 178.

MASCULA *these masculines sunt are contenta confined numero secundo to the plural number tantum only, manes ghosts, majores ancestors, cancelli lattices, liberi children, et and antes the fore ranks of vines, et and lemures spectres, proceres nobles, simul also fasti annals, atque and minores posterity, posteris posterity et and hi Superi the Gods above, natales an extraction; adde add, penates household gods, et and loca names of places plurali of the plural number, quales as que both Gabii a city in Italy, que and Locri the inhabitants of Locris, et and quæcunque whatever nouns similis rationis of like nature legas you may read passim in authors.*

Hæc *these nouns sunt are* fœminei generis *of the feminine gender*, que *and numeri secundi of the plural number*: exuviæ *any thing stript off from the body*, phalæra *horse-trappings*, que *and grates thanks*, manubiæ *the spoils of war*, et *and idus the ides of the month*, nundinæ *a fair*, itemque *and also* induciæ *a truce*, item *also* que *both* insidiæ *an ambush* que *and* minæ *threats*, excubiæ *watch by day or night*, nonæ *the nones of the month*, nugæ *trifles*, que *and* tricæ *toys*, calendæ *the calends of a month*, quisquilæ *the sweepings or refuse of any thing*, thermæ *a hot-bath*, cunæ *a cradle*, diræ *curse*, que *and* exequiæ *funeral rites*, feriæ *holidays*, et *and* inferiæ *sacrifices performed to the dead*; sic *so* que *both* primitiæ *the first fruits of the year*, que *and* plagæ *signantes signifying retia nets*, et *and* valvæ *folding doors*, que *and* divitiæ *riches*, item *also* nuptiæ *a marriage* et *and* lactes *the small guts*; Thebæ *Thebes*, et *and* Athenæ *Athens* addantur *may be added*, quod *genus of which sort invenias you may find* et *also nomina plura more names locorum of places*.

Hæc *neutra these nouns neuter pluralia of the plural number* leguntur *are read* rariùs *seldom* primo *in the singular*: mœnia *the walls of a city*, cum *with* tesquis *rough and desert places*, præcordia *the midriff of a body*, lustra *the dens ferarum of wild beasts*, arma *arms*, mapalia *Numidian cottages*, sic *so* bellaria *junkets*, munia *an office or charge*, castra *a camp*; funus *a funeral* petit *requires* sponsalia *espousals*; disertus *an eloquent man* amat *loves* rostra *the pulpit*, que *and* pueri *children* gestant *carry* crepundia *rattles*, que *and* infantes *infants* colunt *lie in* cunabula *cradles*; angur *a soothsayer* consultit *consults* exta *the entrails*, et *and* absolvens *finishing his sacrifice* superis *to the gods above* recantat *chants over* effata *their decrees*; festa *the feasts* deum *of the gods*, ceu *as*, Bacchanalia *feasts dedicated to Bacchus*, poterunt *will be proper* jungi *to be joined*. Quod *si* *and if* leges *you shall read* plura *more*, licet *reponas you may place them* quoque *also* hac *classe* in *this rank*.

## V. 202.

Hæc *these nouns sunt are* simul *also* et *both* quarti *of the fourth* atque *and* secundi *flexus the second declension*; enim *for* laurus *a bay-tree* facit *makes* genitivo *in the genitive case* lauri *et* *and* laurûs; sic *so* quercus *an oak*, pinus *a pine-tree*, ficus *pro for fructu a fig*, atque *and* arbor *the tree*; sic *also* colus *a distaff*, atque *and* penus *all kinds of victuals*, cornus, *quando* *when* habetur *it signifies* arbor *a tree*; sic *so* lacus *a lake*, atque *and* domus *a house*: licet *although* hæc *these* nec *recurrant* *are not found* ubique *in every case*. Leges *you will read* quoque *also* plura *more* his *than these*, que *which* jure *relinquas you may well leave* priscis *to the ancients*.



## AS IN PRÆSENTI, &c.

OR

### THE RULES FOR VERBS, CONSTRUED.

---

#### V. 1.

AS in præsentī a verb making As in the present tense format forms perfectum the preterperfect tense in avi: ut as, no nas to swim navi, vocito vocitas to call often vocitavi. Deme except lavo to wash lavi, juvo to help juvi, que and nexo to knit dans ui making ui, et and seco to cut, quod which makes secui, neco to kill, quod which makes necui; verbum the verb mico to glitter, quod which makes micui, plico to fold, quod which makes plicui, frico to rub, quod which dat makes fricui; sic so domo to tame, quod which makes domui, tono to thunder, quod which makes tonui; verbum the verb sono to sound, quod which makes sonui; crepo to crack, quod which makes crepui, veto to forbid, quod which dat makes vetui, atque and cubo to lie along cubui; hæc these verbs rarè formantur are seldom formed in avi. Do das to give vult will formare form ritè by custom dedi, sto stas to stand steti.

#### V. 10.

ES in præsentī a verb making Es in the present tense format forms perfectum the preterperfect tense dans ui by ui: ut as nigreo nigres to grow black nigrui: excipe except jubeo to bid jussi; sorbeo to sup up habet hath sorbui, quoque also sorpsi; mulceo to stroke gently mulsi; luceo to shine vult will have luxi, sedeo to sit sedi, que and video to see vult will have vidi: sed but prandeo to dine makes prandi, strideo to scream stridi, suadeo to advise suasi, rideo to laugh risi, et and ardeo to be on fire habet hath arsi.

Syllaba prima the first syllable his quatuor in these four verbs infra following geminatur is doubled: namque for pendeo to hang down vult will have pependi, que and mordeo to bite momordi, spondeo to betroth vult will habere have spondendi, que and tondeo to clip or shear totondi.

Si ſyl vel r, l or r, stet stand ante before geo, geo vertitur is changed in si into si: ut as urgeo to urge ursi; mulgeo to milk dat makes mulsi, quoque also mulxi, frigeo to be cold frixi, lugeo to mourn luxi, et and augeo to increase habet hath auxi.

Fleo fles to weep dat makes flevi, leo les to anoint levi, que and

inde natum *its compound* deleo to wipe out delevi, pleo ples to fill plevi, neo to spin nevi.

Mansi, formatur *is formed* a from maneo to tarry; torqueo to twist vult will have torsi, hareo to stick hresi.

Veo, fit *is made* vi: as, ferveo to be hot fervi; niveo to wink or beckon, et and inde satum *its compound* conniveo to wink poscit requires nivi et and nixi: cieo to stir up civi, que and vieo to bind vievi.

V. 28. TERTIA the third conjugation formabit will form præteritum the preterperfect tense ut as manifestum *is shown* hic here:

Bo, fit *is made* bi: as lambo to lick lambi; excipe except scribo to write scripsi, et and nubo to be married nupsi; antiquum the old verb cumbo to lie down dat maketh cubui.

Co, fit *is made* ci: as vinco to overcome vici; parco to spare vult will have peperci et and parsi; dico to say dixi, quoque also duco to lead duxi.

Do, fit *is made* di: as mando to eat mandi; sed but scindo to cut dat makes scidi, findo to cleave fidi, fundo to pour out fudi; que and tundo to pound tutudi, pendo to weigh pependi, tendo to bend tetendi, que and jungo join cado to fall, quod which format forms cecidi, cædo pro for verbero to beat cecidi, cedo pro for discedere to depart, sive or locum dare to give place, cessi: vado to go, rado to shave, lædo to hurt, ludo to play, divido to divide, trudo to thrust, claudo to shut, plaudo to clap hands, rodo to gnaw, ex do from do, semper faciunt si always make si.

Go, fit *is made* xi: as jungo to join junxi; sed but the letter x ante before go vult will have si, ut as spargo to sprinkle sparsi; lego to read legi, et and ago to act facit makes egi; tango to touch dat makes tetigi, pungo to prick punxi, que and pupugi; frango to break dat makes fregi, pago for paciscor to covenant vult will have pepigi; etiam also pango to fasten pegi, sed but usus custom maluit had rather form panxi.

Ho, fit *is made* xi: ceu as traho to draw traxi docet shows, et and veho to carry vexi.

Lo, fit *is made* ui: ceu as colo to till colui; excipe except psallo to play upon an instrument cum p with p, et and sallo to season with salt sine p without p, nam for utrumque both tibi format make li; vello to pluck dat makes velli, quoque also vulsi, fallo to deceive fefelli; cello pro for frango to break ceculi, que and pello to drive away pepuli.

Mo, fit *is made* ui: ceu as vomo to vomit vomui; sed but emo to buy facit maketh emi; como to deck the hair petit requires compsi, promo to draw out prompsi: adjice add demo to take away, quod which format forms dempsi, sumo to take sumpsi, premo to press pressi.

No, fit is made vi: ceu as sino to suffer sivi; excipe except temno to contemn tempi; sterno to strew dat makes stravi, sperno to despise sprevi, lino to smear over levi, interdum sometimes lini et and livi, quoque also cerno to discern crevi; gigno to beget, pono to put, cano to sing, dant make genui, posui, cecini.

Po, fit is made psi: as scalpo to scratch scalpsi; excipe except rumpo to break rupi, et and strepo to make a noise, quod which format formeth strepui, crepo to crack, quod which dat makes crepui.

Quo, fit is made qui: as linquo to leave liqui; demito except coquo to cook or dress meat coxi.

Ro, fit is made vi: ceu as sero pro for planto to plant et and semino to sow sevi, quod which signans signifying ordino to set in order dabit will make semper always melius rather serui; verro to brush vult will have verri; uro to burn vult will have ussi, gero to bear gessi, quæro to seek quæsvi, tero to beat or bruise trivi, curro to run cucurri.

So, formabit will form sivi, veluti as arcesso to send for, incesso to attack, atque and laccio to provoke probat shows: sed but tolle except capesso to take in hand, quod which facit makes capessi, que and capessivi; atque and facesso to dispatch facessi, et also viso to go to see visi; sed but pinso to pound or grind habebit will have pinsui.

Sco, fit is made vi: as pasco to feed cattle pavi; posco to require vult will have poposci, disco to learn vult will formare form didici, quinisco to nod the head quexi.

To, fit is made ti: as verto to turn verti; sed but activum let this verb active sisto, pro for facio stare to make to stand notetur be marked, nam for dat it makes jure by right stiti; mitto to send dat giveth misi, peto to ask vult will formare form petivi; sterto to snore habet hath stertui, meto to moie messui. Exi, fit is made ab from Ecto: ut as flecto to bend flexi; necto to knit dat makes nexui, habetque and also has nexi; etiam also pecto to comb dat makes pexui, habet it hath quoque also pexi.

Vo, fit is made vi: as volvo to roll volvi; excipe except vivo to live vixi.

Xo, fit is made ui: as texo to weave, quod which habebit will have texui, monstrat showeth.

Cio, fit is made ci: as facio to do feci; quoque also jacio to cast jeci; antiquum the old verb lacio to allure lexi, quoque also specio to behold spexi, elicio to elicit elicui; sed cætera but the rest a lacio from lacio makes lexi.

Dio, fit is made di: as fodio to dig fodi.

Gio makes gi: ceu as fugio to fly fugi.

Pio, fit is made pi: as capio to take cepi; excipe except cupio to desire cupivi, et and rapio to snatch rapui, sapio to savour or taste sapui, atque and sapivi.



¶ *Rio*, fit is made *ri*: as *pario* to bring forth young *peperi*.

¶ *Tio* makes *ssi*, geminans *s* doubling the letter *s*: as *quatio* to shake *quassi*, quod which vix reperitur is scarce found in usu in use.

¶ *Denique* finally *Uo*, fit is made *ui*: as *statuo* to erect *statui*; *pluo* to rain *format* *formeth* *pluvi*, sive or *plui*, sed but *struo* to build makes *struxi*, *fluo* to flow *fluxi*.

## V. 88.

QUARTA the fourth conjugation *dat is* makes *is* in the present tense, *ivi* in the preterperfect: as *scio* *scis* to know *seivi* *monstrat tibi* shows you. *Excipias* except *venio* to come *dans* making *veni*, et and *veneo* to be sold *venii*, *rancio* to be hoarse *rausi*, *farcio* to stuff *farsi*, *sarcio* to patch *sarsi*, *sepio* to hedge *sepsi*, *sentio* to perceive *sensi*, *fulcio* to prop *fulsi*, item also *haurio* to draw *hausi*, *sancio* to establish *saxi*, *vincio* to bind *vinxi*, *salio* pro for *salto* to leap *salui*, et and *amicio* to clothe *dabit* will give *amicui*.

## V. 94.

SIMPLEX the simple verb *compositumque* and its compound *dat* makes *tibi* to you *idem* *præteritum* the same *preterperfect tense*: as *docui* I have taught, *edocui* I have taught perfectly *monstrat* showeth. Sed but *syllaba* the syllable *quam* which *simplex* the simple verb *semper* always *geminat* doubles *non geminatur* is not doubled *composito* in the compound, *præterquam* except his *tribus* in these three, *præcurro* to run before, *excurro* to run out, *repungo* to prick again, *atque* and *ritè* *creatis* in verbs rightly compounded a *of* *do* to give, *disco* to learn, *sto* to stand, *posco* to require.

*Compositum* the compound verb a *of* *plico* to fold, *cum* with *sub*, *vel* or *nomine* a noun, ut as *ista* these: *supplico* to beseech, *multiplico* to multiply, *gaudet* will *formare* form *plicavi*; *applico* to apply, *complico* to fold up, *replico* to fold back or lay open, et and *explico* to unfold, *formant* make *quoque* also *ui*.

*Quamvis* although *simplex* the simple verb *oleo* to smell *vult* will have *olui*, *tamen* yet *quodvis* *compositum* every compound verb *inde* thereof *formabit* will form *melius* rather *olevi*; at but *redolet* to cast a scent *sequitur* follows *formam* the form *simplicis* of the simple verb, *que* and *subolet* to smell a little.

*Omnia* *composita* all the compound verbs a *of* *pungo* to prick *formabunt* will form *punxi*; *unum* one *repungo* to prick again *vult* will have *pupugi*, *interdumque* and sometimes *repunxi*.

*Natum* the compound a *of* *do* to give, *quando* when *est* it is *inflexio* *tertia* the third conjugation, ut as *addo* to add, *credo* to believe, *edo* to set forth, *dedo* to yield up, *reddo* to restore, *perdo* to lose, *abdo* to put away, *vel* or *obdo* to set against, *condo* to build, *indo* to put in, *trado* to deliver, *prodo* to betray, *vendo* to sell, *make*

didi; at *but unum one abscondo to hide, makes abscondi. Natum a compound a of sto stas to stand habebit will have stiti.*

## V. 111.

VERBA hæc simplicia *these simple verbs, si if componantur they are compounded, mutant change vocalem primam the first vowel presentis of the present tense que and præteriti of the præterperfect tense, in e into e: damno to condemn, dans making condemnno, lacto to suckle, delecto to delight, sacro to dedicate, consecro; et sic and so, fallo to deceive, arceo to drive away, tracto to handle, fatisco to be weary, cando to burn, vetus an old word, capto to lie in wait, jacto to throw, patior to suffer, que and gradior to step, partio to divide, carpo to crop, patro to achieve or finish, scando to climb, spargo to sprinkle, que and pario to bring forth young, cujus duo nata whose two compounds, comperit to know for certain et and reperit to find, dant make the præterperfect tense per i in i: sed but cætera the rest per ui in ui, velut as hæc these, aperire to open, operire to cover.*

Hæc duo composita *let these two compounds a of pasco pavi to feed cattle, compesco to pasture together, dispesco to drive from pasture, notentur be observed habere to make tantum only pescui; cætera the rest, ut as, epasco to eat up, servabunt will keep usum the use simplicis of the simple verb.*

## V. 122.

Hæc *these verbs, habeo to have, lateo to lie hid, salio to leap, statuo to erect, cado to fall, lædo to hurt, et and tango to touch, atque and cano to sing, sic so quero to seek, cædo cecidi to beat, sic also egeo to want, teneo to hold fast, taceo to hold one's peace, sapio to savour, que and rapio to snatch, si if componantur they are compounded, mutant change vocalem primam the first vowel in i into i: ut, as, rapio to snatch rapui, eripio to take away by force eripui: natum a compound a of cano to sing dat makes præteritum the præterperfect tense per ui in ui, ceu as, concino to sing in concert concinui.*

Sic also displiceo to displease a of placeo to please: sed but hæc duo *these two compounds, complaceo to please cum with perplaceo to please very much, bene servant always keep usum the use simplicis of the simple verb.*

Composita *the compounds a of verbis the verbs calco to tread, salto to leap or dance, mutant change a per u a into u; conculco to tread upon, inculco to tread in, resulto to rebound, demonstrant show id that tibi to you.*

Composita *the compounds a of claudio to shut, quatio to shake, lavo to wash, rejiciunt a cast away a: ocludo to shut against, excludo to shut out, a from claudio to shut, docet teaches id this; que and percutio to strike, excutio to strike out a from quatio to strike; a from lavo to wash, nata the compounds proluo to drench, diluo to wash out.*

## V. 135.

Si *if* componas *you compound* hæc *these verbs*, ago *to act*, emo *to buy*, sedeo *to sit*, rego *to rule*, frango *to break*, et *and* capio *to take*, jacio *to cast*, lacio *to allure*, specio *to behold*, premo *to press*, pango *to fasten*, sibi *mutant they change* vocalem primam *the first vowel* presentis *of the present tense* in *i* into *i*, nunquam *never* præteriti *of the preterperfect tense*: ceu *as of* frango *to break*, refringo *to break open*, makes *refregi*; incipio *to begin* incepti, a *of* capio *to take*; sed *but* pauca *let a few* notentur *be marked*, namque *for* perago *to finish* sequitur *follows* suum *simplex* *its simple verb*, que *and* satago *to be busy*; atque *and* dego *to live ab from* ago *to act* dat *makes* degi, cogo *to bring together* coegi; sic *so* a *from* rego *to rule*, pergo *to go forward*, makes *perrexi*; quoque *and* surgo *to rise* vult *will have* surrexi, mediâ *syllabâ* *the middle syllable* presentis *of the present tense* ademptâ *being taken away*.

Ista *quatuor composita* *these four compound verbs*, a *of* pango *to fix or fasten* retinent *a keep* a, depango *to fix in the ground*, oppango *to fasten against*, circumpango *to fasten about*, atque *and* repango *to fasten again*.

Facio *to do* variat *changeth* nil *nothing*, nisi *unless* præposito *præunte* *a preposition* goes *before*; olfacio *to smell out* docet *teaches* id *that* cum *with* calfacio *to make hot*, que *and* inficio *to infect*.

Nata *the compounds* a *of* lego *to read*, re, per, præ, sub, trans, ad, præunte *going before*, servant *keep* vocalem *the vowel* presentis *of the present tense*; cætera *the rest* mutant *change it in i* into *i*; de quibus *of which* hæc *these tantum only*, intelligo *to understand*, diligo *to love*, negligo *to neglect*, faciunt *make* præteritum *their preterperfect tense* lexi; reliqua *omnia* *all the rest* legi.

## V. 152.

Nunc *now* discas *you may learn* formare *to form* supinum *the supine* ex *preterito* *from the preterperfect tense*.

Bi, sumit *takes* sibi *to itself* tum: namque *for* sic *so* bibi *to drink* fit *makes* bibitum.

Ci, fit *is made* ctum: as *vici* *to overcome* victum *testatur* *shows*, et *and* ici *to smite* dans *making* ictum, feci *to do* factum, quoque *also* jeci *to cast* jactum.

Di, fit *is made* sum: as *vidi* *to see* visum; quedam *some* geminant *s double s*; ut *as* pandi *to open* passum, sedi *to sit* sessum, adde *add* scidi *to cut*, quod *which* dat *makes* scissum, atque *and* fidi *to cleave* fissum, quoque *also* fodi *to dig* fossum.

Hic *here* etiam *also* advertas *you may mark*, quod *that* syllaba *prima* *the first syllable*, quam *which* præteritum *the preterperfect tense* vult *geminari* *will have doubled*, non *geminatur* *is not doubled* supinis *in the supines*; idque *and* this *totondi* *to clip or shear* dans *making* tonsum, docet *shows*, atque *and* cecidi *to beat*, quod *which* maketh *cæsum*, et *and* cecidi *to fall*, quod *which* dat *maketh* casum,



atque *and* tetendi *to bend*, quod *which* maketh *tensum* et *also* *tentum*, tutudi *to beat or pound* tunsum, atque *and* dedi *to give* quod *which* jure *by right* poscit *requires* datum; atque *and* momordi *to bite* vult *will have* morsum.

Gi, fit *is made* etum: as legi *to read* lectum; pegi *to fasten* que *and* pepigi *to covenant* dant *make* pactum, fregi *to break* fractum, quoque *also* tetigi *to touch* tactum, egi *to act* actum, pupugi *to prick* punctum; fugi *to flee* dat *makes* fugitum.

Li, fit *is made* sum: as salli, stans *standing* pro *for* sale condio *to season with salt*, makes *salsum*; pepuli *to drive away* dat *makes* pulsum, ceculi *to break* culsum, atque *and* fefelli *to deceive* falsum; velli *to pluck* dat *makes* vulsum; quoque *also* tuli *to bear* habet *hath* latum.

V. 171.

Mi, ni, pi, qui, formant *form* tum, velut *as* manifestum *is manifest* hic *here*. Emi *to buy* emptum, veni *to come* ventum, cecini *a from* cano *to sing* cantum, cepi *a from* capio *to take* captum, quoque *also* cepi *to begin* cœptum, rupi *a from* rumpo *to break* ruptum, quoque *also* liqui *to leave* lictum.

Ri, fit *is made* sum: as, verri *to brush* versum; excipe *except* peperi *to bring forth* young partum.

Si, fit *is made* sum: as visi *to go to see* visum; tamen *but* misi *to send* formabit *will form* missum, s *geminato s* *being doubled*; excipe *except* fulsi *to prop* fultum, hausi *to draw* haustum, sarsi *to patch* sartum, quoque *also* farsi *to stuff* fartum, ussi *to burn* ustum, gessi *to bear* gestum; torsi *to wreath* requirit *hath* duo *two* supines tortum et *and* torsum, indulsi *to indulge* indultum que *and* indulsum.

Psi, fit *is made* ptum: as scripsi *to write* scriptum, quoque *also* sculpsi *to engrave* sculptum.

Ti, fit *is made* tum: namque *for* steti *a from* sto *to stand*, que *and* stiti *a from* sisto *to make to stand*, ambo *both* ritè *by right* dant *make* statum; tamen *but* excipe *except* verti *to turn* versum.

Vi, fit *is made* tum: as flavi *to blow* flatum; excipe *except* pavi *to feed* cattle pastum; lavi *to wash* dat *makes* lotum, interdum *sometimes* lautum atque *and* lavatum; potavi *to drink* facit *makes* potum, interdum *sometimes* et *also* potatum; sed *but* favi *to favour* makes *fautum*, cavi *to beware* cautum; a *from* sero sevi *to sow* ritè *formes* you *may rightly* form *satum*; livi que *and* lini *to besmear* dant *make* litum; solvi *a from* solvo *to loose* solutum, volvi *a from* volvo *to roll* volutum; singultivi *to sob* vult *will have* singultum, veneo venis venivi *to be sold* venum, sepelivi *to bury* ritè *by right* sepultum.

Quod *a verb* that *dat* makes *ui*, *dat* makes *itum*: as domui *to tame* domitum; excipe *except* quodvis *verbum* every *verb* in *uo*, quia *because* semper *formabit* it *will always* form *ui* in *utum* *ui* in

utum; ut *as exui to put off* exutum; *deme except rui a from rui to rush* dans making ruitum; *secui to cut vult will have* sectum, *nequi to slay* nectum, *que and fricui to rub* frictum, *item also miscui to mingle* mistum, *et and amicui to clothe dat makes* amictum; *torrui to roast* habet hath tostum, *docui to teach* doctum, *que and tenui to hold* tentum, *consului to consult* consultum, *alui to feed* altum *que and alitum*; sic *so salui to leap* saltum, *colui to till* quoque *also* ocellui *to hide* cultum; *pinsui to pound or grind* habet hath pistum, *rapui to snatch* raptum, *que and serui a from sero to set in order* vult will have sertum, sic *so* quoque *also* texui *to weave* habet hath textum.

Sed *but* hæc *these* *verbs* mutant *change* *ui* in *sum* *ui* into *sum*: *nam* *for* *censeo to judge* habet hath censum, *cellui to break* celsum, *meto messui to reap* habet hath quoque *also* messum; *item* *also* *nexui to knit* nexum; sic *so* quoque *also* *pexui to comb* habet hath pexum.

*Xi*, *fit* *is* *made* *etum*; *as* *vinxi to bind* vinctum; *quinque* *sic* *abjiciunt* *n* *cast* *away* *n*; *ut* *as* *finxi to form or fashion* fictum, *minxi to make* water mictum; *adjice* *add* *pinxi to paint* dans *giving* pictum, *strinxi to bind fast* strictum, *quoque* *also* *riuxi to grin* rictum.

*Flexi to bend*, *plexi to twist*, *fixi to fasten*, *dant* *make* *xum*; *et* *and* *fluo to flow* fluxum.

#### V. 209.

QUODQUE COMPOSITUM SUPINUM *every* *compound* *supine* *formatur* *is* *formed* *ut* *as* *simplex* *the* *simple* *supine*, *quamvis* *although* *eadem* *syllaba* *the* *same* *syllable* *non* *stet* *does* *not* *continue* *semper* *always* *utrique* *to* *them* *both*. *Composita* *the* *compounds* *a* *of* *tunsum* *to* *pound*, *n* *dempta* *by* *taking* *away* *n*, *make* *tusum*; *a* *of* *ruitum* *to* *rush*, *i* *media* *the* *middle* *letter* *i* *dempta* *being* *taken* *away*, *fit* *is* *made* *rutum*; *et* *and* *quoque* *also* *a* *of* *saltum* *to* *leap* *sultum*. *Composta* *the* *compounds* *a* *of* *sero* *to* *sow*, *quando* *when* *format* *it* *forms* *satum*, *dant* *make* *situm*.

Hæc *these* *supines* *captum* *to* *take*, *factum* *to* *do*, *jactum* *to* *cast*, *raptum* *to* *snatch*, *mutant* *a* *per* *e* *change* *a* *into* *e*; *et* *and* *cantum* *to* *sing*, *partum* *to* *bring* *forth* *young*, *sparsum* *to* *sprinkle*, *carptum* *to* *crop*, *quoque* *also* *fartum* *to* *stuff*.

Verbum *the* *verb* *edo* *to* *eat* *compositum* *being* *compounded* *non* *facit* *maketh* *not* *estum*, *sed* *but* *esum*; *unum* *one* *duntaxat* *only*, *comedo* *to* *eat* *up*, *formabit* *will* *form* *utrumque* *both*.

*A* *from* *nosco* *to* *know* *duo* *these* *two* *compounds* *tantum* *only*, *cognitum* *to* *know* *et* *and* *agnitum* *to* *know* *again*, *habentur* *are* *found*; *cætera* *the* *rest* *dant* *make* *notum*: *noscitum* *jam* *now* *est* *is* *nullo* *in* *usu* *not* *in* *use*.

#### V. 220.

VERBA IN OR, *verbs* *ending* *in* *or*, *admittunt* *take* *præteritum*

*their preterperfect tense ex posteriore supino from the latter supine, u verso u being turned per us into us, et and sum vel fui consociato being added; ut as a of lectu to be read lectus sum vel or fui I have been read, at but horum of these verbs nunc sometimes est there is deponens a deponent, nunc sometimes est there is commune a common notandum to be noted.*

Nam for labor to slide dat makes lapsus; patior to suffer passus, et and ejus nata its compounds, ut as compator to suffer together compassus, que and perpetior to endure formans forming perpassus; fateor to own dat makes fassus, et and inde nata its compounds, ut as confiteor to confess confessus, que and diffiteor to deny formans forming diffessus; gradior to step dat makes gressus, et and inde nata its compounds, ut as digredior to step aside digressus; junge add fatiscor to be weary fessus sum, metior to measure mensus sum, et and utor to use usus.

Ordior pro for texo to weave dat, makes orditus, pro for incepto to begin orsus, nitor to strive nisus vel or nixus sum, et and ulciscor to revenge ultus, simul also irascor to be angry iratus, atque and reor to suppose ratus sum, obliviscor to forget vult will have oblitus sum, fruor to enjoy optat chooseth fructus vel or fruitus; junge add misereri to have pity misertus.

Tuor to see et and tueor to defend non vult will not have tutus, sed but tuitus sum; adde add locutus a of loquor to speak, et and adde add secutus a of sequor to follow.

Experior to try facit making expertus; paciscor to make a bargain gaudet will formare form pactus sum, nanciscor to get nactus, apiscor to obtain quod which est is vetus verbum an old verb aptus sum, unde from whence adipiscor to get adeptus.

Junge add queror to complain questus, junge add proficiscor to go profectus, expergiscor to awake experrectus sum; et and quoque also hæc these, comminiscor to devise commentus, nascor to be born natus, que and morior to die mortuus, atque and orior to rise, quod which facit makes præteritum its præterperfect tense ortus.

#### V. 245.

Hæc these verbs habent have præteritum a præterperfect tense activæ of the active et and passivæ vocis of the passive voice: ceno to sup format tibi formeth you cœnavi et and cenatus sum, juro to swear juravi et and juratus, que and poto to drink potavi et and potus, titubo to stumble titubavi vel or titubatus.

Prædeo to dine prandi et and pransus sum; placeo to please dat makes placui et and placitus, suesco to accustom dat makes suevi quoque and also vult will have suetus.

Nubo to be married nupsi que and nupta sum, mereor to deserve meritus sum vel or merui; adde add, libet it pleaseth, libuit libitum, et and adde add, licet it is lawful, quod which makes licitum; tædet it wearith, quod which dat makes tædui et and

partesum ; adde *add* pudet *it shames* faciens *making* puduit *que and* puditum, atque *and* piget *it grieves* quod *which* tibi *format* forms *you* piguit *que and* pigitum.

## V. 256.

NEUTRO-PASSIVUM *a neuter-passive verb* format tibi *forms you* præteritum *its preterperfect tense* sic *thus* : gaudeo *to be glad* gavisus sum, fido *to trust* fisus, et *and* audeo *to dare* ausus sum, *no* *to be made* factus, soleo *to be wont* solitus sum.

## V. 259.

FUGIUNT *these verbs want* præteritum *the preterperfect tense*, vergo *to bend*, ambigo *to doubt*, glisco *to spread*, fatisco *to chink*, polleo *to be powerful*, nideo *to shine* : ad hæc *add* *to these* inceptiva *verbs inceptive* ; ut *as* puerasco *to grow towards* childhood ; et *and* passiva *verbs passive*, quibus *activa whose actives* carnere *want* supinis *their supines* ; ut *as* metuo *to be feared*, timeo *to be feared* : meditativa *omnia all* meditatires, præter *besides* parturio *to be in* labour, esurio *to be hungry*, quæ *duo which* duo *two* servant *keep* præteritum *their preterperfect tense*.

## V. 264.

HÆC *verba these* verbs *rare* *seldom* *aut or* nunquam *never* retinebunt *will have* supinum *their supine* : lambo *to lick*, mico micai *to glitter*, rudo *to bray as an ass*, tum *then* scabo *to claw*, parco peperci *to spare*, dispeasco *to drive from* pasture, posco *to require*, disco *to learn*, compeasco *to restrain*, quinisco *to nod the* head, dego *to live*, ango *to throttle*, sugo *to suck*, lingo *to lick*, ningo *to snow*, que *and* satago *to be busy*, psallo *to play on an instrument*, volo *to be willing*, nolo *to be unwilling*, malo *to be more willing*, tremo *to tremble*, strideo strido *to scream*, flaveo *to be yellow*, liveo *to be black and blue*, avet *to covet*, paveo *to dread*, conniveo *to wink*, fervet *to be hot*.

Compositum *a compound* a *of* nuo *to nod*, ut *as* renuo *to refuse* ; a *of* cado *to fall*, ut *as* accido *to fall upon*, præter *except* occido *to fall down*, quod *which* facit *makes* occasum, que *and* recido *to fall back* recasum ; respuo *to refuse*, linquo *to leave*, luo *to pay*, metuo *to fear*, cluo *to shine or to be famous*, frigeo *to be cold*, calveo *to be bald*, et *and* sterto *to snore*, timeo *to fear* ; sic *so* luceo *to shine*, et *and* arceo *to drive away*, *cujus* composita *whose compounds* habent *have* erciturum ; sic *so* nata *the* compounds *a of* grauo *to cry like a crane*, ut *as* ingruo *to invade*, et *and* quæcunque *neutra whatever* neuters *secundæ of the second conjugation* formantur *are* formed in *ui* ; excipias *you may except*, oleo *to smell*, doleo *to be in pain*, placeo *to please*, que *and* taceo *to hold one's peace*, pareo *to obey*, item *also* careo *to want*, noceo *to hurt*, jaceo *to lie down*, que *and* lateo *to lie hid*, et *also* valeo *to be in health*, caleo *to be hot* ; namque *for* hæc *these* verbs *gaudent* supino *have a supine*.



## SYNTAXIS TRANSLATED.

Page 113.

### FIRST CONCORD—NOMINATIVE CASE AND VERB.

A VERB Personal agrees with its Nominative Case in Number and Person, as—*To-morrow's life is too late, live to-day.*

The Nominative of Pronouns is rarely *expressed*, except for the sake of distinction or emphasis, as—*You have condemned: as if he said, (you and) no one else. You keep the nest, I praise the pleasant country's streams.*

When the persons are diverse, the Verb follows the more worthy, as—*If you and Tullia are in good health, 'tis well; I and Cicero are in good health. Noble praise, in troth, and rich spoils you are carrying off, you and your son! Of which I and mine feed in front of my own house.*

Page 114.

These Nominatives, *Men, We*, are often understood, as—*There, as men say, either the ungenial night is silent. We believe that deep rivers failed, and that floods were drunk up, when the Mede dined.*

A Noun, put in apposition with a pronoun of the first or second person, requires a verb of the first or second person. *Hannibal seek peace: that is, I, Hannibal. Three hundred have sworn: that is, we. The greatest part of poets (we) are deceived by a show of right.*

Verbs Substantive, as *I am, I become, I exist*; Verbs Passive of calling, as *I am named, I am called, I am said, I am styled, I am denominated*, and their like, as *I seem, I appear, I hear, I am thought*, have the same cases on each side of them, as—*God is the chief good. You are becoming an old woman and yet you wish to appear fair. I labour to be brief, I become obscure. Cato chose to be, rather than to appear, good. (My) tract on Friendship, which is intitled Lælius. Lælius, who is termed wise. You hear (are called) a subtle and knowing judge of the ancients. Very petty people are called dwarfs. Nature has given to all to be happy. If he will seek to be inscribed, Father of Cities, upon statues. There is no leisure to me to be an invalid. Athos is believed of yore to have been sailed over. It is not lawful for us to be so eloquent.*



## Page 115.

Also, almost all verbs admit an adjective after them, which agrees with the Substantive of the verb in case, gender, and number, as—*Believe that every day has broke upon you the last.*

Verbs of affirming and knowing have, on each side of them, a Nominative, when, what any one affirms, that he affirms not of another but of himself, as—*A good and wise man says that he is prepared for the deserving.* *Ajax asserted that he was the great grandson of Jove.* *Do you not know that you are the wife of invincible Jove?*

But not in the future of the infinitive, as—*Do you not know that you will be the wife of Jove?*

The verbs, *I seem, am heard, am said,* and the like, are wont to be used much oftener personally than impersonally, as—*The toga of Afranius is said to have fitted Menander.* *We seem to be about to winter in our Formian Villa.* Say not, therefore, *It is said that the toga fitted: it seems that we shall winter.*

Sometimes the sentence is the Nominative to the Verb, as—*To have learnt faithfully ingenuous arts, softens manners, and suffers them not to be savage.* *To will to be cured, was part of the cure.*

Sometimes an Adverb with a Genitive, as—*Partly (part) of the men fell in the war.*

## EXCEPTIONS.

When another verb, particularly if it be a verb of *feeling*, precedes, the verb is put in the infinitive and the noun in the accusative, as—*I rejoice that you have returned safe and sound.*

## Page 116.

Sometimes the former verb is omitted, as—*That I should desist, conquered, from my enterprise!* *That this sun should have risen so black to me!*

A verb placed between two nominatives of different numbers can agree with either of them, as—*The quarrels of lovers are the renewal of love.* *Their breast, too, becomes oaks.*

A noun of multitude, singular, sometimes is joined to a verb plural, as—*Whither are you rushing, O generous house?* *Part of them have departed.* *Part seeks seeds of flame, part cuts into pieces.*

## SECOND CONCORD—SUBSTANTIVE AND ADJECTIVE.

Adjectives, Participles, and Pronouns agree with their Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case, as—*A rare bird on the earth and very like a black swan.*

When the substantives are of different gender, the adjective follows the gender, and sometimes the number, of the more worthy, as—*Liber and Libera were born of Ceres. The man and woman are good. The king and queen are happy. Their comrades and king having been retrieved.*

Except, when they signify a thing not endued with life, when the adjective is put in the neuter gender, as—*The bow and arrows are good.* See above, p. 93.

*Page 117.*

Sometimes the sentence supplies the place of a substantive, the adjective being put in the neuter gender, as—*It having been heard that the King is going to Dover. Except that you were not together (with me) in other respects happy.*

Sometimes the infinitive is put for the substantive, as—*Your know (knowledge) is nothing. That sad live (living) of ours. To each is his own will, nor is it lived with one (the same) vow. It is sweet and beautiful to die for our country.*

The adjective is often put in the neuter gender without a substantive, as—*And we unbend serious (things) at a modest table.*

(These) are Elliptical—*A wolf is a sad (thing) to the stalls. An old man (serving as a) soldier is a sorry (thing). He is borne on in the huge Centaur: that is to say, ship. Pergamum, rased by the sword: that is, city. The Eunuchus was acted twice in the day: that is, the play of Terence (so called).*

Some are to be explained by the sense, as—*How fare you, my dearest of things?*—For this is spoken, not of a thing, but of a man.

Substantives are sometimes used adjectively, as—*Behold we just now seem to bring hero feelings.*

---

### THIRD CONCORD.—RELATIVE AND ANTECEDENT.

The Relative agrees with the Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, as—*Who is a good man? He who keeps the decrees of the Senators, who observes laws and rights.*—(See above, p. 93).

*Page 118.*

Elegantly, the sentence is put for the Antecedent, as—*I came to her in time, which is the principal of all things.*

Sometimes the pronoun *id* is prefixed to the relative, as—*He came in time, that which is most pleasing.*

A Relative placed between two substantives, of (referring to) the same thing, but of different genders and numbers, usually

agrees with the latter (substantive), as—*Men occupy that globe which is called the Earth. Thebes, which is the capital of Bœotia.*

Sometimes the Relative agrees with the personal pronoun, which is understood in the possessive (pronoun), as—*All (began) to speak all good things, and to praise my fortunes, who (because I) had a son endued with such a disposition.*—Where the personal pronoun *I* is understood in the possessive *my*.

This is, by the sense—*That he might give to chains the baneful monster, who, seeking to perish more nobly.*—For there the language is concerning Cleopatra.

The Relative *Qui*, put in apposition with the first or second person, requires a verb of the first or second person, as—*I, who march Queen of the Gods. Here am I who did it. What worthy rewards will you give to Nisus, who have deserved the first crown by my prowess? You are that Maximus, who alone restorest to us our state by delaying. We are they who admire Cicero.*

Page 119.

Sometimes the Antecedent borrows the case of the Relative, as—*The city which I build is yours. Who does not amid these things forget the evil (cares) which cares love has?*

Sometimes the Relative is put by attraction in the case of the Antecedent, as—*The people, whom you know, being judge.*

Sometimes the substantive, added to the Relative, borrows the case of the Relative, as—*Whose name is Iulus. To which husbandmen made the name amellus.*

Very often the Antecedent is put after the Relative, as—*What trade each man knows, in this let him exercise himself.*

Sometimes the Relative has after it the adjective of the Antecedent, and especially numerals, comparatives, and superlatives, as—*Archilochus, who poured forth first Parian Iambics: Say not, Archilochus, the first, who poured forth Parian Iambics. Tarquinius Superbus, who last reigned at Rome. Obey the advice which now, most excellent, the old Nautes gives. I, O queen, will never deny that you deserved (well) in those things which, very numerous, you can recount, nor will it grieve me to remember Elisa (Dido).*

This is Elliptic—*Wish it only, which is your virtue (such is your virtue), you will take by storm: that is, considering the virtue, which is yours.*

Page 120.

If a substantive is put between the Relative and the verb, the Relative is governed by the verb, or by some other word, which is placed with the verb in the sentence, as—*Grace is absent from a favour, which delay retards. Whose deity I adore.*

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF NOUNS.

When two substantives, of different sense, come together, the latter is put in the genitive, as—*The love of money increases, as much as money itself increases.*

This genitive is sometimes changed into a dative, as—*He is father to the city, and husband to the city.*

Sometimes into an adjective, as—*Herculean labour, for, labour of Hercules.*

An adjective and pronoun, put in the neuter gender, without a substantive, sometimes requires a genitive, as—*A little of money. Through the open (places of) streets. You keep the rectitude of your mind. I gave (sent) this (dispatch) of a letter to you. What of cause is there?*

But these (following) adjectives, first, midst, last, extreme, lowest, highest, upmost, remaining, rest, joined with substantives, are wont to be put for the first, middle, last, &c. part, as—*At the first fall of night, shut your house. Those themes (lessons) Janus (the street), from top to bottom, teaches. The first of the play: that is, the first part, or beginning of the play. Midnight: that is, the middle part of the night. And, in like manner, the highest (part of the) citadel, the lowest (part of the) was, the rest (of the) crowd.*

## Page 121.

Sometimes a genitive is put alone, the former substantive being understood by ellipsis, as—*When you shall have come to Diana's: that is, temple. Hector's Andromache: that is, wife. Gisco's Hasdrubal: that is, brother. Glaucus' Deiphobe: that is, daughter. His Byrrhia: that is, slave.*

Two substantives of (referring to) the same thing are put in the same case, as—*Wealth is dug up, the incitements of (to) ills. Libethrian Nymphs, our love. And there was a great contest—Corydon with Thyrsis. We escape the rocks of Ithaca, Laertian realms.*

*Praise, blame, or the quality of an object, is put in the ablative, and also in the genitive of a substantive, but not without an adjective, as—A boy of ingenuous face, and ingenuous bashfulness. A man of no faith.*

*Opus and usus require an ablative, especially of the participle passive, as—Now is there need of courage, O Æneas; now is there demand for strength. Before you begin (a thing) there is need for it having been deliberated; and, when you have deliberated there is need of its being executed with dispatch.*

But *opus* sometimes seems to be put adjectively for necessary, as—*A leader and adviser is necessary to us. You will say that a thousand sestercies are necessary.*

Sometimes a nominative is put for a vocative, as—*You, O patrician blood. Cast your weapons from your hand, O my offspring.*  
Page 122.

Sometimes a vocative for a nominative, as—*Be more and more prosperous. Or, in that you, O clad in your trabea, salute the Prætor as one of your own (family).*

### GENITIVE.

The Genitive indicates the subject to which a thing belongs, as—*An oration of Cicero*; or, the person from whom it comes, as—*A wound of (from) Ulysses*; or, the cause for which it is done, as—*By anger for the virgin snatched away*; or, its quality, as—*A man of highest ability*; or, the object whither it tends, as—*Love of money*; or, the quantity, as—*A ditch of ten feet.*

### GENITIVE AFTER A NOUN.

Adjectives, which signify desire, knowledge, memory, fear, and their contraries, require a genitive, as—*The nature of men is greedy of novelty. Mind, conscious of right, smiles at the lies of fame. Be mindful of short life. Unmindful of kindness. Unskilled in affairs. Rude in war. Fearful of the gods. Reckless of himself.*

With very many others, which denote quality, as—*Sick at heart. Joyful in labour. Ripe in years. Late in studies. Amputated of his feet. Void of truth. Known for his parental disposition to his brothers*; or, (which denote) relation: as—*Master of himself. Having realized his vow. Fastidious of the land.*

Hither belong too Substantives of a cognate signification with those Adjectives, as—*Sure trust in my crop. Confidence in your race.*

Verbal Adjectives in *ax* govern a Genitive, as—*Bold in genius. Time devouring things. Tenacious of justice.*

Page 123.

Nouns Partitive, Numerals, Comparatives, and Superlatives, and some Adjectives put partitively, require a Genitive of a Substantive, from which, too, they borrow their Gender, as—*Take which of the two of these you prefer. The first of the Roman kings was Romulus. Of the hands, the right is the stronger. Indus, the greatest of all rivers. The eighth of wise men. We follow thee, O holy of the Gods.*



Sometimes the Adjective is understood, as—*You two will become of noble fountains: that is, one. Write him of your flock.*

They are used, too, with these Prepositions, *a, ab, de, e, ex, in, inter, ante*, as—*Ajax, the second hero after Achilles. One of you two is a deity. Thales was the wisest in the seven. First among all. First before all.*

*Secundus* sometimes requires a Dative, as—*Not second to any of the ancients in virtue.*

An Interrogative and its Redditive (reply) will be of the same Case and Tense, as—*Of what things is there no satiety? Of wealth.*

#### GENITIVE AFTER THE VERB.

*Sum* requires a Genitive as often as it means possession, duty, sign, part, or that which appertains to any thing, as—*The cattle belongs to Melibœus. It is (the part) of a young man to reverence his elders. All this is of your gift.*

Page 124.

But in the same sense are used these Nominatives, mine, thine, ours, yours, human, brutal, and the like, as—*It is not mine, to speak against the authority of the senate. That I please, is yours. To err is human.*

Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, and the like, require a genitive, the word *crimine* being understood—*He who accuses another of vice, ought to examine himself. He condemns his son in law of wickedness. He was acquitted of theft. Cæsar indicted Dolabella for embezzlement. He accuses me of my head (of a capital crime). Acquits me of my vow. Binds me to my vow. And Sisyphus, the son of Æolus, condemned to long labour.*

Also, verbs of advising govern the Genitive, as—*Adversity reminded (them) of religion.*

This Genitive is sometimes changed to an Ablative, either with a preposition, or without a preposition, as—*I thought you were to be admonished of that thing. If you are an unjust judge to me I will condemn you of the same crime.*

Both, none, one of the two, neither of the two, another, both, and the superlative degree, are joined to the Verbs of that kind, not except in the Ablative Case, as—*Do you accuse of theft, or adultery? Both, or of both of the two; Both, or of both; Neither, or of neither. You are accused of very many things at once.*

Page 125.

*Sum*, signifying the cause, is joined to participles in *duo* of the Genitive and Dative Case, as—*The royal sway was for preserving liberty. There is, too, that other labour for tending vines,*

I am busy, I commiserate, I have pity on, govern the Genitive, but *miseror* and *commiseror* the Accusative, as—*He is busied in his own concerns. I pray, pity so great labours; pity a mind bearing not worthy things. And pity your race. Either grieved pitying the poor, or envied the having (rich).*

I remember, I forget, I recollect, I recall to mind, take a Genitive or Accusative, as—*He remembers his given troth. It will be a pleasure hereafter to remember these things. It is the part of folly to see the faults of others, to forget its own. Whoever you are, henceforth forget the lost Greeks. I remember his desert toward me. If I rightly remember things heard.*

*Regno*, sometimes, is joined to a Genitive, as—*Daunus ruled rustic tribes.*

I gain possession of, is joined to a Genitive or Ablative, as—*The Romans gained possession of the standards and arms. The Trojans, having disembarked, gain possession of the wished-for sand.*

Page 126.

#### THE DATIVE.

The Dative indicates the object to which a Noun or Verb is referred directly, or that to which any thing is done or acquired by, or taken away from.

#### THE DATIVE AFTER A NOUN.

Adjectives, by which advantage, disadvantage, likeness, unlikeness, nearness, distance, pleasure, submission, or relation to any thing, is signified, require a Dative, as—*If you render that he be beneficial to his country, useful to the fields. A crowd grievous to peace, and hostile to placid quiet. Like to his father. The colour which was white is now contrary to white. Pleasant to his friends. Suppliant to all. Next to him, but next by a wide interval.*

Hither are referred Nouns compounded with the Preposition *con*, as—*A messmate, a comrade, a fellow-servant, a kinsman.*

Some of those, which signify likeness of mind, are joined to a Genitive, which (signify likeness) of body, to a Dative, as—*He (is) like you in manners, me in face.*

Common, foreign, exempt, and the like, are joined to a Genitive, Dative, and Ablative with a Preposition, as—*It is common to all animals. Death is common to all. This is common to me with you. Not foreign (or aliene) from design. Foreign from ambition. Not aliene from the studies of Scævola. It will be given to you to be exempt from this calamity. The wild fig is free from all. We are exempt from those evils. The land was made public (property) of the Roman people. Akin to this fault. The study of eloquence was not common to Greece, but peculiar to Athens.*

Page 127.

Another, is sometimes joined to an Ablative without a Preposition, as—*And do not think another than the wise and good, happy.*

Born, suited, ill-suited, useful, useless, vehement, fit, with many others, are joined sometimes to the Dative, sometimes to the Accusative with a Preposition, as—*Born for doing things (action). Born for glory. Useful for that object. The country of Ithaca is not suited for horses.*

Verbals (ending) in *bilis*, taken passively and Participles in *dus*, demand a Dative, as—*Penetrable by no star, an inert grove. O Julius, to be commemorated by me after none of my companions.*

THE DATIVE AFTER THE VERB.

All Verbs govern a Dative of the thing or person, which anything is gained by, or taken away from, as—*In that place of yours it is neither sown nor reaped for me. What chance took you from me? What you learn, you learn not for your master, but for yourself.*

Verbs signifying advantage or disadvantage govern a Dative, as—*You cannot do me good or harm.*

Page 128.

Except *juvo*, *ledo*, *delecto*, and certain others, which require an Accusative, as—*Rest greatly delights the weary. You hasten to remove what hurt the eye. By delighting the reader, and instructing him at the same time.*

Verbs of contending and comparing govern a Dative, as—*Let Amyntas alone contend with you. Let us fight against our love begun. Should he pine? and not compare himself with the greater crowd of the poorer?*

But sometimes they govern an Ablative with the preposition *cum*; sometimes they govern an Accusative with the prepositions *ad* and *inter*, as—*I compare Virgil with Homer. If he is compared to him, he is nothing. These things are not to be compared among one another.*

Verbs of giving and rendering require a Dative, as—*Fortune gives too much to many, enough to no one. He is ungrateful, who does not return a favour to one deserving well (of him).*

Sometimes an Accusative of the person, with an Ablative of the thing, as—*He presents the noble youth with this distinguished gift.*

Verbs of promising and paying govern a Dative, as—*Which I promise to you, and take upon myself, that I will observe most religiously. He paid the debt to me.*



Verbs of commanding and announcing govern a Dative, as—*Money collected rules or serves every one. Often see to it, what you say, and of what man, and to whom.*

Page 129.

Except *jubeo, rego, guberno*, which have an Accusative, as—*You will be poor! I will order my strong mind to bear this. The moon rules the months. God himself governs the world.*

Except, too, *tempero* and *moderor*, which (when) put for I impose bounds to, or I spare, have a Dative; (when) for I govern, (have) an Accusative, as—*He controls himself. The sun tempers all things with his light. He guides his horses, who will not restrain his passion.*

Verbs of trusting govern a Dative, as—*Both is a fault, to trust nobody, and every one. It is fit to commit nothing but what is mild to the empty veins.*

Verbs of obeying and resisting govern a Dative, as—*He who obeys God offers the best victim. It is fit to obey your parent, rather than your love. An affectionate son always obeys his father. Fortune resists slothful prayers.*

These Verbs, *nubo, vaco, studeo*, and *faveo, indulgeo, parco, gratulor* (I congratulate), *auxilior* and *medeor* (I cure), *irascor, adulor*, govern a Dative, as—*The husband marries (ducit) a wife; the bride marries (nubit) a husband. He is at home or at leisure (gives himself) to verses; and loves the Muses, and devotes himself to this alone. Since the one favours corn, the other Bacchus (wine). Indulge the rows. Spare the pious race. I am wroth with you; so (you reward) my loves! Atticus never fluttered Antony when in power. It is consulted by God, not only for universals, but for individuals. He will pardon his warts (foibles).*

Page 130.

These Verbs, *excuso, ignosco, persuadeo*, and *defendo, condono* (I pardon), *caveo* (I am on my guard), *minor*, and *invideo*, and *probo*, and some others, govern a Dative of the person, and Accusative of the thing, as—*He (began) to plead to Philip as an excuse his labour and mercantile engagements. You pardon many things to others, nothing to yourself. Keep ye off the solstice from the cattle. You will ward off the heat from the pregnant cattle. Mothers fear you for their damsels (lit. young animals, heifers, &c.). He threatened death to both. Does his father grudge the Roman citadel to Ascanius?*

*Sum*, with its Compounds, except *possum*, governs the Dative, as—*It is neither harm nor good to me.*

Verbs compounded with these Adverbs, *benè, satis, malè*; and with these Prepositions, *præ, ab, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in, inter*,

usually govern a Dative, as—*May the gods bless you! I will satisfy you. Who (because he) sported unseasonably on him occupied. This conduces to your praise. He lived with us. It is scented by my wife, what I am machinating. I prefer the most unjust peace to the most just war. I postpone money to fame. Since she can be obtruded on no one, they come to me. Meet the coming disease. The wall obstructs the windows. Danger impends over all. He was not only among (at) these things but over them.*

Page 131.

Not few of these change the Dative to another case, as—*One excels another in genius.*

*Est* (used) for *habeo* governs a Dative, as—*For there is to me (I have) a father at home, and an unjust stepmother.*

Like this is *suppetit*, as—*For he is not poor to whom there is a sufficient supply of things.*

*Sum*, with many other (verbs) admits a double Dative, one of the person and another of the thing, as—*The sea is the ruin of greedy sailors. Do you hope that will be a credit to you which you impute as a fault to me? He is to your mind; he is a care to you.*

A Dative of the thing is also elegantly added to other Verbs, as—*Virtue is neither given nor received as a gift. He puts out money to usury. He has a scruple about it. To make a trade of the Republic is most base. He sounds a retreat. He holds in contempt, scoffing, and derision.*

There are cases where this Dative, *tibi*, or *sibi*, or also *mih*, is added for the sake of elegance, as—*I stab this man to himself with his own sword. How, I pray, is Celsus? What do you want, woman?*

### ACCUSATIVE.

The Accusative indicates the object which suffers directly from an action.

Page 132.

#### ACCUSATIVE AFTER A NOUN.

An Accusative indicating a part is added to Verbs, Adjectives, and Participles, as—*As to his face and shoulders, like a god. Downcast as to her look she held her peace. He pricks up his ears, and trembles as to his limbs. In other respects a Greek. We are softened in our minds by placid art.*

#### ACCUSATIVE AFTER A VERB.

Verbs transitive, of whatever kind, whether Active or Dependent, require an Accusative, as—*Fly from an inquisitive man, for the same man is a prattler. First of all, fear God.*

Verbs Neuter have an Accusative of cognate signification, as—*She seems to be going, unaccompanied, a long journey. I dreamt a strange dream. He slaves a hard slavery. Obstinate to sport (in sporting) an insolent sport.*

There are, too, other Verbs, both Neuter and Passive, which, figuratively, (by a figure or idiom of speech), have an Accusative after them, as—*Nor does your voice sound a man (like a human creature), O a goddess, doubtless! The garden smells (of) violets. The sweet honey tastes (of) Hyblæan thyme. And the hard oaks will exude dewy honey. He dines on bought pot-herbs. Who feign (themselves) Curii, and live Bacchanals (revels). To rain flesh. He runs the Stadium (course of 600 feet). Who the Stadium having been traversed (having traversed the Stadium) was often victor at the Olympian games. I swear by the rough seas. He begged him that he would dance (imitate by dancing) the rustic Cyclops. He is moved (moves himself) now (like) a Satyr, now (like) a rustic Cyclops.*

Page 133.

Neuters sometimes receive a Passive form with a Nominative of cognate meaning, as—*Willingly this and every war will be warred. The third age is being lived.*

Verbs of asking, teaching, forcing, clothing, hiding, generally govern a double Accusative, one of the person, another of the thing, as—*We all implore peace of you. My excellent father accustomed me to this. I will unteach you those habits of yours. It is ridiculous for you to admonish me of that. What do you not drive mortal breasts to, O accursed hunger of gold! He puts on himself the shoes which he had before taken off. I have habituated my son that he should not conceal those things from me.*

Verbs of this kind also, in the Passive voice, have an Accusative after them, as—*You are demanded the entrails of an ox. Taught a better way. I was kept ignorant of this. We are admonished (of) many things in entrails. Which things Paris denies that he can be (says he cannot be) compelled to do, in order that he may reign safe and live happily. He is girded (he girds himself on) the useless sword. Flowers inscribed (with) names of kings. They feed on the arbutus, too, here and there, and the grey willows. To be assessed (at) a great extent of land. Would he despair to be crowned (at) the great Olympia?*

Page 134.

Appellative Nouns are added, generally with a Preposition, to Verbs signifying motion to a place, as—*They were going to the temple of Pallas.*

An Infinitive sometimes supplies the place of the Substantive,

as—*You will restore (to me) to speak (the speaking) sweetly: you will restore to smile gracefully.*

The Verb is sometimes left out—*Wherefore to me (should I have) fortune, if it is not allowed me to use it? (What!) you (rival) him in stinging?*

The Accusative is sometimes omitted, as—*Hannibal moved, that is, his camp—loosed (weighed), that is, anchor.*

Especially if it be a Pronoun, as—*The cars dash into the course, that is, themselves. He so much recoils from, and changes. The ditches have turned into solid ice. And he mingles with the van, nor is seen by any.*

Verbal Nouns sometimes govern the cases of their own verbs, as—*What is there to you a care for this? Hanno avoiding the camp.*

### ABLATIVE.

The Ablative indicates the condition or quality of a thing: that is, number, price, quantity, manner, instrument, cause, place, time, and the like.

Page 135.

#### ABLATIVE AFTER A NOUN.

Adjectives which belong to plenty or want sometimes require an Ablative sometimes a Genitive, as—*Rich in horses, rich in embroidered apparel, and gold. Rich in lands, rich in money put out to interest. Love is most fertile in both honey and gall. Free from guile. Blessed with influence. Poor in water. The king of the Cappadocians, rich in slaves, is poor in brass (money).*

Adjectives and Substantives govern an Ablative signifying the cause or form, instrument, or manner of a thing, as—*Pale through anger. In word, grammarian; in deed, a barbarian. Cæsar, a Trojan by extraction. Ennius, very great in genius; in art, rude. Pericles and Thucydides, majestic in language, frequent in aphorisms, concise in their condensation of matter.*

Worthy, unworthy, endued, deprived, content, banished, relying on, free, with Adjectives signifying price, demand an Ablative, as—*Loving whatever is worthy of a wise man and a good. Who (because I) had a son endued with such a disposition. The moles, deprived of eyesight, have dug their lairs. Agesilaus, lame of one foot. Depart, content with your lot. A mind free from terror. Purchaseable neither by purple nor by gold.*

Some of these sometimes admit a Genitive, as—*Unworthy of his great ancestors. Verses worthy of a goddess. An outcast from the realm.*



## Page 136.

Comparatives, unless they are expressed by *quam*, require an Ablative, as—*Silver is cheaper than gold; gold than virtues: that is, than gold (is); than virtues (are).* *O daughter, more fair than your fair mother! I put under you a better man than I am. I have seen no one more crafty than Phormio. Nothing is less steady than wind and water. What is more hard than stone? what softer than water? Yet hard stones are hollowed by soft water.*

The Ablative after a Comparative is sometimes elegantly omitted, as—*Youth is more ardent: that is, than is right. His toga flags down on him shorn too clownishly. He lives too sparingly; let him be called frugal. Their rarer use recommends (enhances) pleasures.*

Comparatives are sometimes expressed by *magis*, as—*Velleius (Paterculus, the historian), who flattered Tiberius, is rather eloquent than wise: that is, he is eloquent indeed; but not wise.*

Two Comparatives elegantly meet together, as—*Velleius is more eloquent than wiser (wise): that is, he is wise indeed, but not so renowned for wisdom as eloquence.*

The Comparative is sometimes contained in the Verb, as—*It is better to receive than commit an injury. I prefer (thy) ridiculous poems, than thee, O divine Philippic, of distinguished fame, who are rolled (up in the volume) the next from the first: (that is, the second Philippic of Cicero).*

Comparisons are often expressed by the prepositions *ante*, *inter*, *pro*, *præter*, *supra*, as—*O, Virgin, happy before others. Wise among few. Happy before us.*

## Page 137.

To Comparatives, when something happens contrary to expectation, the small words, *quam pro*, are wont to be added elegantly, as—*The battle was more severe, than for (might have been expected from) the number of the combatants.*

*Tanto*, *quanto*, *hoc*, *eo*, and *quo*, with some others, which signify the measure of excess, also *ælate* and *natu*, are often joined to Comparatives and Superlatives, as—*By so much the worst poet of all, as much as you are the best advocate of all. By how much the more waters are drunk, by so much the more are they thirsted after. Greater and greatest in age. Greater and greatest by birth (age).*

To Superlatives the Pronoun *quisque*, in the Singular Number, is joined, signifying each most excellent individual of that kind; but, in the plural, signifying the most excellent of different kinds, as—*Each best day flies the first to wretched mortals. If the most ancient of writings are ever the best. Instead of pleasant things, the gods will give (you) the fittest.*

To Superlatives are added the Particles *ut, ita*, with the Pronoun *quisque*, as—*In proportion as each one (a man) speaks best, so does he most fear the difficulty of speaking.*

Superlatives are elegantly expressed by *tam, quam; tantum, quantum; is, qui*; the Pronoun *qui* being added, as—*I am so mild, as (one) who is most lenient. I defer so much to him, as to whom (I defer) the most. The thing is agreeable, as (that) which is most (agreeable). He did it by that right by which a man (could) best (do it).*

Page 138.

To Superlatives the particle *quam* is added, the verb *possum* being sometimes annexed, as—*I will speak the most shortly that I can (as briefly as possible). I will speak the most briefly that I shall be able.*

#### ABLATIVE AFTER THE VERB.

Every Verb admits an Ablative, without a preposition, signifying the instrument, or cause, or manner of an action, as—*These strive to defend with darts, those with stones. The wolf with its tooth, the bull assails with its horn. It trembles both in heart and knees. He grew vehemently pale with rage. He dispatched the matter with wonderful expedition.*

To the Ablative of the manner is sometimes added a preposition, but usually with an adjective, as—*He wrote with great industry.*

To certain verbs is subjoined a noun of price in the Ablative case, as—*I do not purchase hope with a price. I would not have bought it with a farthing, or a rotten nut. That victory cost the Carthaginians the blood of many men. This man sold his country for gold.*

The value of an object is put in the Genitive, but the price which is either paid or asked (for it) in the Ablative, as—*Purchased for what? A small sum. How much then? Eight asses. To buy for a denarius (ten asses) what is worth a thousand denarii. What is not wanted is dear for an as (three farthings).*

*Vili, paulo, minimo, magno, nimio, plurimo, dimidio, duplo*, are often put by themselves, the word *pretio* being understood, as—*Wheat sells cheap.*

Page 139.

*Flocci, nauci, nihili, pili, assis, hujus, teruncii*, are added to verbs of valuing, as—*I weigh (esteem) him at a lock of wool, nor do I value him at this, who esteems you at a hair.*

These Genitives are excepted, put without substantives: *Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, tantidem, quantivis, quantilibet, quanticumque, &c.*, as—*You will be of so much value to others as you shall have been to yourself. Slaps (given to slaves when manumitted) are sold by me at a much higher price.*

Verbs of abounding, filling, loading, equipping, and those differing from these, are joined to an Ablative, as—*You abound in love, O Antipho. To be free from fault is the greatest comfort. Sylla filled all his soldiers with wealth. With what lies have most frivolous men loaded you! These are the arts with which boyish age is wont to be formed, instructed, and educated. Rescue yourself from this charge.*

Of which (verbs) certain sometimes govern a Genitive, as—*Cease at length your soft complaints. Abstain, he said, from anger and warm strife. They are sated with old Bacchus (wine) and fat venison. You think he is in need of neither a physician nor a keeper.*

*Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, dignor, muto, communico, supersedeo,* are joined to an Ablative, as—*Discharge thou well the duties of life; this will be to use thy present life, and to enjoy thy past. Whosoever we (are who) feed on the produce of earth. I, for my part, by no means think myself worthy of such an honour. He pulls down, builds, changes square things for round. I will make you partake in my table. It must be dispensed with (we must dispense with) a multitude of words.*

Page 140.

Verbs of sacrificing are joined to an Ablative, as—*When I shall make (an offering) with a cow-calf for my corn, do you come yourself. Grant me, that I may offer these (virtues) at the temples, and I shall be accepted (make a propitious sacrifice) with bread-corn.*

*Mereor* and *mereo*, with the adverbs *bene, male, melius, pejus, optime, pessime*, are joined to an Ablative with the preposition *de*, as—*He always deserved well of me. If I have deserved at all well of you.*

Some verbs of receiving, being distant, and of taking away, are sometimes joined to a Dative, as—*Concealed virtue differs little from buried indolence. Snatch yourself from delay.*

To any verbs an Ablative, taken absolutely, is added, as—*Augustus being Emperor, Christ was born; Tiberius being Emperor, (He was) crucified. I, that being either read or written (by me) which may delight me silent, am anointed with oil. Pericles being ruler at Athens, Sophocles, Euripides, Aristophanes, Poets; Phidias, Ictinus, and Callicrates, Sculptors and Architects; were considered illustrious.*

An Ablative absolute is sometimes used for *si, quamdiu, simulac, quoniam, quamvis*, as—*I being (if I am) your leader, you will be safe. Nothing (is) to be despaired (of) Teucer being (since Teucer is) leader, and Teucer being general (under the auspices of Teucer). (While) their king being (is) safe, there is one mind to all; being (when he is) lost, they have broken their faith. Tears fall, we being (although we are) unwilling.*

Page 141.

## CONSTRUCTION OF PRONOUNS.

The Genitives, *mei, tui, nostri, vestri*, are put when a person is meant, as—*He pines for regret of you. And part of you may lie hid shut up in my body. An image of us.*

*Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, are used, when an action or possession of a thing is signified, as—*He favours your desire. Our image: that is, which we possess.*

The Genitives, *nostri, vestri*, are used when the object at which a thing aims, is signified; (the Genitives) *nostrum, vestrum*, (are used) when the subject of which it consists is signified, as—*Love of us. A crowd of you. Let both of you, I pray, be mindful of us. After the manner of Lucilius, (a man) better than both of us two.*

These Possessives, *meus, tuus, suus, noster, and vester*, take these genitives after themselves, *ipsius, solius, unius, duorum, trium, &c. omnium, plurium, paucorum, cujusque*, and the genitives of participles and adjectives which are referred to the primitive understood, as—*I said that the republic was safe by my (the) exertions (of me) alone. Since no one reads my (the) writings of me fearing to recite them publicly. In our (the) memory of us all. Let my (the) bones of me dead repose softly! You have seen our (the) eyes of me weeping. We have seen your (the) breast of you an unsuspecting man.*

Page 142.

*Sui* and *suius* are Reciprocal, and are always reflected to that thing of greatest importance which has gone before in the sentence, as—*Peter admires himself too much; he spares his own errors. Peter earnestly implores you, that you would not desert him (himself). His own (citizens) ejected Hannibal from the city. His own pleasure attracts each. And Rome herself is falling by her own strength.*

These Demonstrative (pronouns), *hic, is, iste, ille*, are thus distinguished: *hic* indicates the nearest person to me; *is* (indicates) him of whom we have made mention; *iste*, him who is near you; *ille*, him who is removed from both of us.

*Hic* and *ille*, when they are referred to two things placed before (preceding) them, *hic* generally is referred (refers) to the latter, *ille* to the former (of them), as—*Whithersoever you may look, there is nothing but sea and air; the latter swelling with clouds, the former menacing with waves.*

*Hic* is sometimes put for *ego*, as—*If you would be willing to introduce this man: that is, me.*

*Is* and *idem* are often put with conjunctions on account of emphasis, as—*Man has memory, and that, too, infinite. There was in*



*Torquatus* (*Torquatus had*) much literature, and that not commonplace. They devote their labour to obscure objects, and those, too, not necessary.

*Idem* is used for *item*, and *ipse* for *etiam*, as—Nothing is liberal, which the same (also) is not just. Nothing profits, which the same (also) may not injure. To *Vespasian Titus* succeeded, who himself, too, was called *Vespasian*.

*Ille* increases the emphasis, as—Or that (great) ruler of *Olympus* permits. Not he timid to perish for his dear kinsfolk and country. Page 143.

*Ille* and *is* are elegantly placed in the beginning of a sentence, for the sake of expressing contrast or feeling, as—The Father himself, in the midnight of storms, wields the bolts with his flashing right hand, with which shock the mightiest earth trembles, beasts have fled, and abject fear has laid low mortal hearts through the nations. He smites with his blazing weapon either *Athos*, or *Rhodope*, or lofty *Ceraunia*. With what tears should he move the manes, with what words the deities? She, indeed, was floating, now cold, in the *Stygian* bark. When *Proteus* went, seeking from the wave his wonted grottoes; around him the dripping tribe of the vast sea, gambolling, scatters far and wide the briny dew.

*Ipse* is used for defining animals exactly, as—*Cato* died eighty-three years themselves (exactly) before me being consul (my consulship).

*Ipse* often means *ultra*, or *sponte*, as—The she-goats come (of) themselves to the milk-pails. Hither the heifers come (of) themselves to drink, through the meads.

*Ipse* is annexed to a personal pronoun, and, if the emphasis falls on the action, *ipse* is put in the nominative: if (the emphasis falls) on the suffering, *ipse* is put in an oblique case, as—I want not medicine; I myself comfort me. You have yourself conquered you: that is, no one else has done so. You have conquered yourself: that is, you have conquered him whom no one else was able to conquer.

To the pronouns *idem*, and *alius*, are added, *que*, *ac*, *et*, and, as in Greek, a dative, as—*Vesta* is the same as (which) earth (is). My life is the same, and my mind towards you is the same as it was. He who preserves the unwilling, does the same with the killing. That same king, who bought so ridiculous a poem so dearly, forbad, by an edict, that any one besides *Apelles* should paint him, or any other than *Lysippus* should mould brasses imitating the countenance of brave *Alexander*.

Page 144.

The interrogative *qui* is used adjectively, *quis* substantively, as—What king was there then at Rome? Who was then king at Rome?

To these words, *si, nisi, num, ne, ubi, unde, quo, quanto*, is added the pronoun *quis*, except for a certain emphasis, when *aliquis* is used, as—*If any shall have made bad verses against any, there is law and a trial. Let not any hurt any. Unless any thing detains you, listen. What did I wish? you will say, when any thing has hurt you. In proportion as a man is more crafty, so much the more suspected (is he).*

*Quod sciam* is put elegantly for *quantum sciam*, as—*No one, as far as I know, is at home.*

*Quisquis* is sometimes joined to a plural verb, as—*Then be ye far off, whoever tricks out his hair with art.*

---

### PASSIVE VERBS.

To passives is added an ablative of the doer, but with the preposition *a*, or *ab*, preceding it; and sometimes a dative (is added), as—*He is praised by these, blamed by those. Honest things, and not secret ones, are (that is, honesty and not secrecy is) desired by good men. Here I am a barbarian, because I am understood by no one.*

Page 145.

The other cases remain in the passive voice, which were (governed by the verb) in the active, as—*You are accused by me of theft. You will be held up to scorn. You will be untaught those manners of yours by me. You will be deprived of your office.*

*Vapulo, veneo, liceo, exulo, fio*, neutral passives, have a passive tense, as—*You will be beaten by your master. I prefer to be stripped by a citizen than to be sold by an enemy. Virtue is valued at a low rate by them all. Why should philosophy be banished from people at dinner? What will become of him?*

---

### VERBS IN THE INFINITIVE.

To very many verbs, specially if signifying a sense or a feeling, as—*Audio, dico, sentio, credo, promitto, simulo, spero*; also to participles and adjectives denoting a quality, verbs infinitive are added, and poetically (they are added) to substantives, as—*He will hear that citizens have whetted the steel. They said that bees have a part of the heavenly mind, and æthereal draughts. Do you perceive that mid-day is declining? Brutus promises that he will do it; he pretends to be (that he is) mad; he hopes that he will conquer. We believe that human bodies will one day be raised. Do you wish to be rich? wish (then) to have longed for nothing.*

*He was then worthy to be loved. First in spring to pluck the rose, and in autumn, apples. Snowy to be seen (look at). More brave to despise (in despising). Bold to endure all things. Undeserving to die. Fearing to be loosed. Lighter to be taken away. Cruel to forge any sort of calumnies against any body. It is time for you to be gone.*

Page 146.

But to verbs signifying intention or purpose, also, to verbs of asking, ordering, exhorting, trying, a subjunctive is added, with the conjunction *ut* in affirming, and the conjunction *ne* in denying and prohibiting, as—*That you may live, watch. My excellent father trained me to this, that I should avoid every fault, by marking it with examples. When he exhorted me that I should live sparingly, frugally, and content with that which he had acquired for me himself. Roscius prayed that you would assist him to-morrow at the Puteal. He forbade, by an edict, that any one should paint him beside Apelles.*

Except *jubeo*, which requires an accusative with an infinitive, as—*The Greek Aristippus, who ordered his slaves to fling down the gold in the middle of Libya.*

A participle sometimes discharges the office of an infinitive, as—*He perceived having fallen (that he had fallen) into the midst of the enemy.*

To these preterites, *memini, vidi, audivi*, and to some others, is sometimes subjoined an infinitive of the present tense, as—*I remember the oaks touched from heaven (struck by lightning) predicting this. For I remember beguiling long suns (days) with you. After that I saw you, O Aulus, bearing in your loose lap your knuckle-bones and nuts (toys), giving them away and sporting; (but) you, O Tiberius, counting them, morose, hiding them in crannies; I feared lest an opposite infatuation should distract you (both).*

Sometimes infinitives are placed alone by ellipsis, as—*Hence to scatter equivocal words into the crowd, and guilty to seek arms (against me): where is understood, he began.*

## GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

Page 147.

### GERUNDS.

Gerunds in *di*, have the same construction as genitives, and depend on certain both substantives and adjectives, as—*An innate love of having urges Cecropian bees. Æneas, on his lofty stern, now determined to go. The art of loving. The care of tilling.*

Gerunds in *do*, have the same construction as datives and ablatives, as—*Here is water well suited for drinking, bread for eating. What care should be used for keeping cattle. If he is not solvent, his surety must pay for him. The principles of writing are united with speaking. The disease is cherished and lives by concealment. The snake bursts with music. It has come to your ears by conversation.*

Gerunds in *dum* have sometimes the same construction as accusatives, as—*A place most glorious for pleading.*

When necessity is signified, gerunds in *dum* are placed without a preposition, the verb *est* being added, as—*We must pray for a sound mind in a sound body. He must watch who desires to conquer.*

Page 148.

Gerunds sometimes govern the cases of their verbs, as—*Especially since we must treat many things with new words. Since we must fear eternal penalties in death.*

Participles in *dus*, are often used in the place of gerunds, and are called *Gerundives*, as—*To be led by a reward to accuse men is next to larceny.*

*Gerundives* are used in the place of substantives, as—*Timotheus was skilled in ruling the state. The eye-lids are very well suited to open and shut the pupils. Caution is to be used in choosing friends. He is always hastening and overwhelmed in increasing his property. You will render your Latin style more copious by reading the writings of Cicero. Regulus, being captured by the Carthaginians, was sent to Rome (to treat) concerning exchange of prisoners.*

#### SUPINES.

The supine in *um* signifies actively, and follows a verb or participle, denoting motion to a place, as—*They come to see; they come to be seen themselves. Soldiers were sent to reconnoitre the citadel. Mæcenas goes to play, I and Virgil to sleep.*

The supine in *u*, signifies passively, and follows nouns-adjective, as—*The viper, baneful to be touched. That which is foul to be done is also base to be said. The philosopher will render you reasons (as to) what is better to be avoided, and (as to) what is better to be sought.*

Page 149.

It (this supine) follows also *opus, fas, nefas*, as—*Necessary to be said, lawful to be seen, unlawful to be written.*

## PECULIAR USAGE OF TENSES.

Instead of the present (tense) in dating letters, the imperfect and preterite are used, as—*I was dictating these things to you behind the mouldering fanes of Vacuna. I wrote these things the day before the ides, before daybreak.* Obs. In all these cases the reference is not to the writer, but to the reader.

Instead of the preterite (tense) the present is used, which is called the historical present, as—*Rome increases by the ruin of Alba, the number of her citizens is doubled, the Cælian mount is added to the city; Tullus takes it as the site of his palace, and there dwelt.*

The perfect (tense) is elegantly used concerning things dispatched at one effort beyond expectation, as—*The earth trembles, beasts have fled. If Brutus is safe, we have conquered.*

The perfect also elegantly expresses that which is wont to be done, as—*He who longs to reach the wished for goal in his course has suffered and done much (when) a boy. While their king is safe they have all one mind; when lost, they break their faith, and of themselves they tear in pieces the constructed honey, and dissolve the wattles of their combs.*

Page 150.

The plusquam-perfectum of the indicative sometimes supplies the place of the plusquam-perfectum of the subjunctive, as—*The trunk of the tree having fallen upon my brains (head), had carried me off, unless Faunus had warded off the blow with his right hand.*

The first future is used for courtesy instead of the imperative, as—*Nor will you labour to render word for word (if you are) a faithful translator.*

Two future events are expressed in three ways: if both will last for the same time, both are put in the first future (tense), as—*We shall be happy when, having left our bodies, we shall be exempt from desires. He will be ignorant to speak, who knows not to hold his tongue. I will say if I can.* Obs. Take care not to say: *I will say or do, si possum.*

If, when one (of the events) is finished, the other begins to happen, the latter is put in the first future, the former in the second future, as—*Not, quoth she, if you shall have burnt yourself, will you be equal in size. I shall not cease to be apprehensive of Carthage before I have learnt that it is destroyed. We shall then sing verses better when he shall have arrived. If times are cloudy you will be alone.*

If both will be dispatched together, both are put in the second



future, as—*He who shall have crushed Antony will have put an end to the war. He who shall have been well acquainted with either of them, will have been acquainted with both.*

The second future, is used courteously and modestly, for the first future, especially after a conjunction, as—*Nor, if writings are silent (as to) what you shall have done well, will you have gained a reward. You will not rightly have called him, who possesses many things, happy. I will not acquire, what I may either, as a miserly Chremes, bury in the ground, or squander as an ungirt (profligate) spendthrift. While we are speaking, the envious time will have fled. In vain will you have avoided that fault, if you have swerved per-versely to the other side.*

Page 151.

The perfect of the subjunctive expresses an opinion modestly; sometimes for an imperative, as—*I would, in my senses, compare nothing with a pleasant friend. I would believe that no other days (than these) shone on the first creation of the world, nor had any other tenour (than this). Dwell with yourself, and learn how slender a stock you have. O Varus, plant no other tree than the sacred vine.*

Between the first future, and the future in rus, there is this difference: the former expresses a thing, without doubt about to take place, the other (indicates) only a present intention, as—*They who live not, but who are ever about to live, will never live.*

The tenses of the infinitive are interchanged by the poets, as—*Prometheus is said to add to the primitive clay, a particle cut out from animals collected from all sides. And Amphion, the founder of the Theban citadel, is said to move (have moved) stones by the sound of his shell (lyre). If she may be able to have shaken the mighty Deity from her breast.*

---

Page 152. THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

To the absolute tenses absolute ones are subjoined; to the relative, relative ones. (*See above, p. 29*).

To the present, to the perfect definite, (translated in the English by *have*), to the future, and to the imperative, is subjoined the present of the subjunctive, when the event is still lasting, the perfect when it is over, the future in rus when it will take place hereafter, as—*There is no age which does not read your beautiful verses, O Publius (Virgil). (There is) no age which has not praised your verses; none which will not praise your muse. For he has seen what (things) are, what have been, and what will be. I will now write (to say) what I give, what I have given, and will give. Tell me, you, what he is doing, whither he has come, or is going.*

To the imperfect, to the perfect indefinite, and to the preterpluperfect, is added the imperfect of the subjunctive, when the question is concerning a thing contemporaneous; the preterpluperfect, when concerning a thing past; the future in rus, when concerning a thing future, as—*I was doubting, where I was, what I had done, what I was about to do. He asked, where he was, whence he had come, whither he was going. I had written (to say) why I was neither giving, nor had given, nor would give.*

To express a condition, serve *si, si forte, modo, nisi*, and the like.

Page 153.

A condition, if expressed simply, is put in the indicative; if you think it either true or likely, (it is put) in the present of the subjunctive; if neither true nor likely, in the imperfect or preterpluperfect of the subjunctive, as—*That I may admonish, if you at all want a monitor. But these, too, if any one engrafts them, or commits them changed to well-dug ditches, will have put off their wild temper. If, as much as I desired, I were also able to do. Not if I were wishing more, would you refuse to give. Not, O Mæcenas, if I were to wish for more, would you refuse to give. Not, O Mæcenas, if I had wished for more, would you have refused.*

---

#### ORATIO OBLIQUA.

It is called *Oratio obliqua* when any one recites what he or any one else has said.

In the *oratio obliqua* the principal topics are put in the infinitive, the parenthetical ones in the subjunctive, as—*Not, as a large number of people say, that it is not their own fault that they have not high-born and illustrious parents, would I so defend myself. Certainly you promised that the Romans hereafter, in the course of years, would hence arise, from the revived blood of Teucer, leaders, to hold the sea and all lands under their sway. (He told them) that he himself in the meantime, when the good Dido was not aware of it, and had no expectation that so great loves would be broken, would sound the approaches, and what was the softest time for speaking. A little afterwards he writes that he had at home five thousand cloaks; (adding) that he might take part or all.*

Page 154.

---

#### CONCERNING MEASURE, TIME, AND PLACE.

Measure, weight, or quantity of a thing, after adjectives or adverbs, is put in the accusative, after substantives in the genitive,

as—*Continuous ditches, each five feet deep. A wheel six digits thick. A ditch of fifteen feet. A crown of small weight.*

The measure of distance of an object at rest is expressed by an ablative of a substantive joined with an adjective, as—*He is as far as the poles asunder. Titan was in the middle, between the coming and passed night, and was distant from each by an equal space.*

*Obs.* In these, where we in English say *of*, the genitive is used; where in English the preposition is not used, the accusative; where we say *by*, the ablative (is employed).

Ordinals, too, (as well as Cardinals) very often express the measure of time and space, as—*Mithridates is now reigning the twenty-third year from that time. The Albans are at the twelfth mile-stone from the city.*

#### TIME.

They (nouns) which signify part of time are more frequently put in the ablative, as—*No mortal is always wise.*

But they which signify duration of time, more usually are put in the accusative, as—*Pericles was chief in power at Athens for forty years. Here it will now be reigned for three hundred entire years. He used to watch all night till the very morning; he snored all day. To have slept seven hours, is enough. Fifty years old. I studied for three years. Hannibal harassed Italy with various calamities for sixteen years. A boy of that age. Not more than three days. The third day before the Kalends. The day before the Kalends.*

Page 155.

#### SPACE.

Space, extent, and progress, after verbs, are put in the accusative; distance is put either in the accusative or ablative, as—*Then, having dined, we crawl three miles. The plain (of) Marathon is ten miles from the city.*

Also, *He is two days off*: where is understood *space*, or *by the space*; *march*, or *by the march*.

#### NAMES OF PLACES.

Every verb admits a genitive of the name of a town, in which an act takes place, provided it (the town) be of the first or of the second declension and singular number, as—*What shall I do at Rome? I cannot lie.*

These genitives, *humi, domi, militia, belli*, follow the regimen of towns, as—*Arms abroad are of little use, unless there is counsel at home. We were always together, in the field and at home.*

But if the name of the town be only of the plural number, or of the third declension, it is put in the ablative, as—*Colchian, or an Assyrian, bred at Thebes, or at Argi. I may love Tibur at Rome, Sicile, and Rome at Tibur.*



## Page 156.

To verbs signifying motion to a place, the name of the place is generally added in the accusative, without a preposition, as—*I went to Cambridge to get learning. Whither are you tending? My road is not to Cumæ, or to Baiæ. The Apostle Paul sent Epistles to Rome, to Corinth, to the Galatians, to Ephesus, to Philippi, to Colossæ, to Thessalonica, and to Timothy, Titus, and Philemon.*

In this way we use *domus* and *rus*, as—*Go home, full; evening is coming, go home, O she-goats. I will go into the country.*

To names of countries, mountains, country-houses, are generally prefixed prepositions, as—*Carrying Troy into Italy. I marched to the Amanus. They seem about to winter in the Formian villa.*

But islands generally follow the regimen of towns, as—*She herself goes aloft to Paphos. Apollo ordered (us) to settle at Crete.*

To verbs signifying motion from a place, is generally added the name of the place in the ablative without a preposition, as—*Unless you had before set out from Rome, you would now be leaving it.*

---

 IMPERSONAL VERBS.

These impersonals, *interest* and *refert*, are joined to genitives, except *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, and *cuja*, as—*It is the duty of the magistrate to protect the good. It is the interest of all, that it should be animadverted on the bad. It is not so much my concern as that of the State. It is your own business to know yourself.*

## Page 157.

These Genitives, too, are added, *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, quanticunque, tantidem*, as—*Of such moment is it to act honestly. It is greatly my interest to be a private person.*

Impersonals, put acquisitively, require a dative, as *placet, libet, licet, liquet*; but those which are put transitively, an accusative, as—*Good is done us by God.*

Thus, *juvat, delectat, oportet, fallit, fugit, praterit*, govern an accusative, as—*It delights me to go over the deep. Not to all men, what is allowed, is pleasing; nor does all men, what becomes, delight.* See above, p. 128.

But to these, *attinet, pertinet, spectat*, is properly added the preposition *ad*, as—*You wish me to say what appertains to you. It concerns all to live well.*

To these impersonals, *pœnitet*, *tædet*, *miseret*, *miserescit*, *pudet*, *piget*, is subjoined an accusative of the person with a genitive of the thing, as—*If he had lived to his hundredth year, it would not repent him of his old age. I pity you. I am grieved and ashamed of my brother. I was ashamed and sorry for you.*

Verbs which, in the active voice, govern a dative generally in the passive, become impersonals, as—*The bank is not well trusted. This age is favoured rather than envied.*

Page 158.

An impersonal verb of the passive voice can be elegantly used for each of the persons of both numbers, as—*They are silent for the night. He lives well with a little. They feed for the whole month in order. So much confusion is there in the fields. They had come to the threshold. We cannot live well, except we live virtuously.*

### CONSTRUCTION OF PARTICIPLES.

Participles govern the cases of the verbs from which they are derived, as—*Stretching both his hands to the stars, he thus speaks.*

To participles of the passive voice is sometimes added a dative, especially if they end in *dus*, as—*A great man is dead, and one to be feared by Otho. Chremes remains, who is to be won over, by prayers, by me.*

Participles, when they become nouns, often admit a genitive, as—*Greedy of what is another's, profuse of his own.*

Participles sometimes supply the place of a substantive, as—*Before the city was built, or to be built, (before its building or design). The destruction of the city Saguntum was the cause of the second Punic war.*

*Ezous* and *perous* signify actively, and require an accusative, as—*Hating the Trojans to a man. Hating all the female race.*

Page 159.

*Natus*, *prognatus*, *satus*, *cretus*, *creatus*, *ortus*, *editus*, require an ablative, and often with a preposition, as—*A good (woman) sprung from good parents. O sprung from the blood of the gods! From what blood sprung. Venus sprung from the sea affords the sea (favourable) to him sailing. Sprung from the earth. I was a nymph sprung from a great river.*

## CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

*En* and *ecce*, adverbs of shewing, are generally joined to a nominative, more rarely to an accusative, as—*Lo, Priam. Lo, four altars: Lo, two to you, O Daphnis, and two altars to Phœbus.*

*En* and *ecce*, (abverbs) of upbraiding, are joined to an accusative only, as—*Lo, his soul and mind.*

Some adverbs of place, time, and quantity, admit a genitive—  
Of place, as *ubi, ubinam, nusquam, eò, longè, quò, ubivis, hucine, &c.*, as—*Where in the world? Wheresoever ye live. He is found nowhere. It was come to such a pitch of impudence. Whither in the world is he gone? By no means at all.*

Of time, as *nunc, tunc, tum, interea, pridie, postridie, &c.*, as—*I could do nothing at that time but weep. They engaged the day before that day. Before the Kalends.*

Page 160.

Of quantity, as *parum, satis, abunde*, as—*He has always enough partizans who acts rightly. Enough eloquence, too little wisdom. We have heard enough of fables.*

Some admit the cases of the nouns whence they are derived, as—*He lives uselessly to himself. The Moors are next to Spain. Better or best of all. He delayed longer than was expected.*

Adverbs of difference, *aliter, secus*, and those two, *ante, post*, are often joined to an ablative, as—*Much otherwise. A little otherwise. Much before. A little after. He came a long time after.*

*Instar* and *ergo* have a genitive after them, as—*They build a horse like a mountain by the divine art of Pallas. To be rewarded on account of virtue.*

Adjectives, in the neuter gender, are placed adverbially, as—*Looking sternly. Smiling sweetly. The sun having just risen.*

To adverbs of difference and similitude, as, *æque, juxta, pariter, perinde, aliter, contra, secus*, are added the particles *ac* and *atque*, as—*He hurries his reader into the middle of the subject, not otherwise than (as if) well known (to him).*

*Si, ut, ne, ac, licet*, are sometimes understood, as—*A hungry Greek will go to the skies if you bid him. If you plunge it in the deep, it emerges more beautiful. Tell him to come to dinner. It is necessary that the possessor should be in health if he designs to use well the things he has amassed. Take care that you do nothing unworthy of yourself. As soon as Taygete has shewn her graceful face to the earth. Though you expel nature with a pitchfork, yet she will always return.*

Page 161.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Copulative and disjunctive conjunctions join similar cases, moods, and tenses, as—*Socrates taught Xenophon and Plato. He stands with his body erect, and looks down on the earth. He neither writes nor reads.*

Unless the principle of a different construction demands otherwise, as—*I bought a book for a hundred asses and more. He lived at Rome and Venice. Unless you had beguiled me loving, and were feeding me with false hopes.*

*Quam* is often understood, not expressed, after *amplius*, *plus*, and *minus*, as—*Not more than one night. For not more than the seventh summer is now being spent. The snow never lay less than four feet deep.*

## WITH WHAT MOODS OF VERBS CERTAIN ADVERBS AND CONJUNCTIONS AGREE.

*An*, *ne*, *num*, put dubitatively or indefinitely, are joined to a subjunctive, as—*It is no matter whether you have done it or recommended it. Go and see whether he is returned.*

Page 162.

*Cum*, as a conjunction of time, is joined to the indicative and subjunctive; as a conjunction of cause, to the subjunctive, as—*Easily we all, when we are well, give good advice to the sick. Teucer when he was flying from Salamis and his father. Since you sustain alone so many and so great concerns.*

*Dum* for *dummodo*, and *dum* and *donec* for *quousque*, concerning a future event, require a subjunctive, as—*Provided I may profit you. Until the third summer has seen him reigning. You will be dear at Rome till age desert you. Till you have repaired the temples.*

*But*, concerning a past event, they admit an indicative, as—*The stag, superior in fight, used to drive the horse from the common pasture, until he (the horse), inferior in so great a contest, implored the aid of man, and received the bit.*

*Ne*, in the sense of prohibiting, is joined to a subjunctive, as—*Do not do this. The year warns you not to hope for immortality (on earth).*

The conjunctions, *quin*, *quominus*, require a subjunctive after a negative preceding, as—*There is nothing which may not be spoilt by ill telling. Nor (is there) respite, from the year's either overflowing*

with apples, or with the produce of cattle, or the sheaf of the Cereal straw. Old age is no impediment to our pursuing the study of literature.

*Si* is joined to the imperfect and preterpluperfect of the subjunctive, as—*If Democritus were on earth, he would laugh. If you had not hurt (him) in some way, you would have died.*

Page 163.

*Ut* for *quam*, *postquam*, *sicut*, and *quomodo*, is joined to an indicative; but when it signifies *quanquam*, *utpote*, or the final cause, to a subjunctive, as—*How often the greatest talents lie hid in obscurity! Since we are (have been) in Pontus, the Ister has stood three times (frozen) with ice. (Such) as you are yourself, so you think every one is. How fares he? how does he remember us? Though power is absent, yet will is to be praised. You are not to be trusted, since you have so often deceived. I prithee, Davus, that he may return to his senses. He eats to live, not lives to eat.*

After verbs of fearing, *ut* denies, *ne* affirms, as—*O boy, I fear you will not be long-lived, and that some great man will strike you with an ague. Fearing to lose something from the amount or not to increase his property.*

*Ut*, after *adeo*, *ita*, *sic*, *tam*, and the like, requires a subjunctive, as—*No one is so wild that he cannot grow tame, provided only he lend a patient ear to instruction.*

*Ut*, after the impersonals *est*, *accidit*, *placet*, *restat*, *sequitur*, and the like, requires a subjunctive, as—*It is (possible) that one man may marshal his shrubs wider than another in his furrows. It remains, that I regulate and console myself with these principles.*

All words, in fine, such as *qui*, *quis*, *quantus*, *quotus*, *qualis*, *ut*, *ubi*, *cur*, put indefinitely, require a subjunctive, as—*For the prophet knows all things that are, that were, that follow soon about to come. Again and again look what sort of man you recommend. Is there any place where winters are more mild? I alleged many reasons indeed why I should escape excused. Believe ye me, having experienced, how great he rises on his shield, with what a whirlwind he hurls his spear. Do you write back word how many you wish to be (at table).*

Page 164.

*Qui*, when it can be resolved into *talis* or *talis qui*, requires a subjunctive, as—*There are some such as not to have. He is such as to be able to be conquered. I store and arrange such things as I may be able soon to bring forth. And fountains murmur with flowing waters, a thing such (so) as to invite light sleep.*

*Qui*, when it is joined to the verbs *sum*, *habeo*, *reperio*, or the adjectives *dignus*, *aptus*, *idoneus*, requires a subjunctive, as—*I*

have one (such as) to sound often into my purged ear. You have one (such as) to sit by your side, to prepare your fomentations. He who obeys modestly is worthy to rule in time. (He was) worthy to beg at the wheels of Aricia. The character of Lælius seemed to me fit to speak concerning friendship.

*Qui*, when it can be resolved into *ut ego, quamvis ego, quoniam ego, ut tu, quamvis tu, quoniam tu, ut ille, quamvis ille, quoniam ille*, and the like, requires a subjunctive, as—*I am greater than that fortune should be able to injure me. The wise man thinks that posterity, although he may never have any feeling of it, belongs to himself.* Where *cujus* is used for *quamvis ejus*.

*Qui*, signifying the cause, requires a subjunctive, as—*You are foolish for believing him. I have no cause to blame old age.*

Page 165.

### CONSTRUCTION OF PREPOSITIONS.

A preposition being understood, sometimes renders that an ablative be added, as—*I have you in the place of a parent.*

A preposition in composition sometimes governs the same case that it governed out of composition, as—*They shove the ships from the rock. I pass you unsaluted.*

Verbs compounded with *a, ab, ad, con, de, e, ex, in*, sometimes repeat the same prepositions with their case out of composition, and this elegantly, as—*He abstained from wine.*

*In*, for *erga, contra, ad*, and *supra*, requires an accusative, as—*She receives a (good) mind and benevolent disposition toward the Trojans. I should be sinning against the public weal. An heir is sought for the kingdom. The kingdom of Jove is over kings themselves.*

*Per*, of adjuring, is put figuratively, as—*I implore you by the Gods. I pray you by these tears and your right-hand.*

*Sub*, when it is referred to time, is generally joined to an accusative, as—*Just before the same time. Before cockcrow. Before the fall of Troy.*

*Super* for *ultra* is joined to an accusative, for *de* to an ablative, as—*He will extend his sway beyond the Garamantes and Indi. Asking oft many things concerning Priam, many things concerning Hector.*

Page 166.

*Tenus* is joined to an ablative, both singular and plural, as—*Up to the groin. To the breasts.*

But to the genitive only in the plural, and always then follows its case, as—*Up to the legs.*

A preposition is sometimes put between its substantive and adjective, as—*Through you also, my shame is extinct. On a green bough.*

Sometimes after its substantive, as—*No one is born without faults. Over the deck and oars, and the painted sterns of fir.*

*Cum* is put after the pronouns *me, te, se, nobis, vobis*; and sometimes after *qui, quibus*, as—*Mecum, tecum, quicum, quibuscum.*

### CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections, not rarely, are put without a case, as—*The hope of the flock, alas, she left, having yearned on the hard flint. What madness, plague on it!*

Nouns sometimes become interjections, as—*And cattle spoke, monstrous! Rivers halt.*

*O*, of exclaiming, is joined to the nominative, accusative, and vocative, as—*O jovial day of man! O too happy husbandmen, if they knew their own blessings! O fair boy, trust not too much to your beauty.*

Page 167.

*Heu* and *proh* sometimes are joined to a nominative, sometimes to an accusative, as—*Alas, piety and ancient faith. Alas, hated stock. By Jupiter, thou, man, drivest me to madness. By faith of Gods and men.*

*Hei* and *væ* are joined to a dative, as—*Woe is me, from what hope have I fallen!*

## PROSODIA TRANSLATED.

### DEFINITIONS.

#### *Page 169.*

Prosody is the part of Grammar which teaches the quantity (length) of syllables.

Time is the measure of pronouncing a syllable. A short time is marked thus—*Dominus\**; but a long one thus, as—*Contra*.

A Foot is the arrangement of two or more syllables according to a certain observation of Time.

A Spondee consists of two long syllables, as—*Virtus*.

A Dactyl, of one long and two short, as—*Scribere*.

Scanning is the legitimate distribution of the verse into its individual feet.

To scanning belong the figures, *Synalæpha*, *Ecthlipsis*, *Synæresis*, *Dieræsis*.

*Synalæpha* is the elision of a vowel at the end of a word before another vowel at the beginning of one (a word) following, as—*To-morrow's† life is too late: live to-day*. For *vita, vive*.

But *heu* and *o* are never cut off.

#### *Page 170.*

*Ecthlipsis* is, as often as *x* is cut off with its vowel (by) the following word beginning with a vowel, as—*A horrid, shapeless, huge monster, whose eye was taken away*. For *monstrum, horrendum*.

And sometimes *s*, as—*Horridū miles*, for *horridus miles*, and the like, in (the Poets) *Ennius* and *Lucretius*.

*Synæresis* is the contraction of two syllables into one, as—*Whether the hives should have been woven with pliant osier*: as if it had been written *alvaria*.

\* In this and other following Examples, the English is not given of Words occurring in other parts of the Grammar. The EXERCISE, in these cases, will be from the Latin, to supply the English.

† In these Examples, the English is given, (where it could be done without ambiguity), in order that from it the Scholar may supply the Latin.



So, here and there *abiētē, pāriētē, gēnū, flūviōrum*, as if they were written *abjētē, pārjētē, gēvōt, flūvjōrum*, &c.

Diacrasis is, when of one syllable are made two, as—*They ought to have unrolled their spindles. Evolvissē* for *evolvisse*; so, *silvā* for *silvā*.

Arsis is the raising, Thesis the falling of the voice.

Arsis or Ictus, in Heroic verse (Hexameters), falls on the first syllable of each foot; the other syllables of the foot are said to be in the Thesis.

After the completion of a foot a short syllable is sometimes lengthened by the power of the Ictus (or Arsis), as—*Poring in the breasts, he consults the panting entrails*: where *bus*, by nature short, is made long (by Ictus).

A Heroic verse, which is also called Hexameter, consists of six feet or metres; the fifth place requires a Dactyl, the sixth a Spondee, the other places (take) either the one or the other, just as we like best, as—*O Tityrus, you lying under the shade of the spreading beech tree*. Here the syllables *ti, tu, la, bans, teg, fa* are in the Arsis, the rest (are) in the Thesis.

Sometimes a Spondee after a Dactyl is found in the fifth place, as—*Dear progeny of the Gods; mighty increment of Jove*.

Page 171.

The last syllable of a verse is common, that is, may be either long or short.

An Elegiac verse, which is also called a Pentameter, consists of two parts; of which the former has two feet, either Dactylic or Spondaic, with (succeeded by) a long syllable: the second (part), too, has two feet, but only Dactylic ones, also with a long syllable, as—*Love is a thing full of anxious fear*.

---

## THE QUANTITY OF THE FIRST AND PENULTIMATE SYLLABLES.

The concurrence of two syllables is called Position.

A vowel before two consonants or a double consonant in the same word is long by Position, as—*Ventus, axis, patriso* I act like a father, *cujus*.

Except compounds, as—*Bijugus, quadrijugus, jurejurando*, and the like.

If a consonant ends the former word, and the following word begins with a consonant, the vowel preceding (the former consonant) is long by Position, as—*I am too great for fortune to hurt me:* where the syllables *jor*, *sum*, *quam*, and *sit* are long by Position.

A short vowel before a mute, if the liquid *l* and specially *r* follows it, is made common, as—*Patris, volucris*; but not in compound words, as—*Abluo* I wash away, *obruo* I overwhelm; and a vowel long by nature is not shortened, as—*Matris*, from *mater*; *acris*, from *acer*; *salubris*, from *saluber*.

A Vowel before a Vowel and before the letter *h*, in the same word, is short, as—*Deus, meus, tuus, pius, nihil*.

Except Genitives in *ius*, as—*Unius, illius*, where the *i* is found common, although in *alterius* and *utrius* it is always short, and in *alius*, and probably *solius*, always long.

Page 172.

To be excepted, also, are old genitives in *ai*, as *aulai*; genitives and datives of the fifth declension, where *e* between two *i*'s is made long, as *faciei*; in other cases it is not (long), as *rei, spei, fidei*; sometimes, too, the vocatives *Cai, Pompei*.

Often, however, a short vowel before another vowel coalesces with it into one long syllable, as *proinde, pröinde*; so, *dein, deinde, deest, deeram, reice* drive back, *deeraveram* I had strayed, from *dein, deinde, &c.* with some others, as *pituita*, phlegm.

*Fi* in *fo* is long, unless *e* and *r* follow together, as—*All things are now done which I said could not be done.*

*Dius, aer, cheu* have the first syllable long; *Diana*, common.

*Ohe*, the interjection, has the first syllable common, *cheu*, always long.

A vowel before a vowel in Greek words is sometimes long, as—*Say, Muses; Regard Laertes; The air is turned.*

And in Greek Possessives, as—*Nurse of Æneas; Orpheus of Rhodope.*

Every Diphthong in Latin is long, as—*gold, neither, muses*; except when a vowel follows: as—*To go before, burnt at the end, very large.* Sometimes, too, at the end of a word, as—*Islands in the Ionian.*

Compounds usually follow the quantity of their simples, as from *lego, legis*, I read, thou readest; *perlego*, I read through: from *lego*, I send; *legas*, thou sendest; *allego*, I allege: from *æquus*, fair; *iniquus*, unfair: from *potens*, powerful; *impotens*, powerless: from *solor*, I comfort; *consolor*, I console.

Except *interea, postea, antea*.

Excepted; too, are these long-syllabled words derived from short ones, as—*Dejero* I deny by oath, *pejero* I forswear, from *juro* I swear; *innuba* unmarried, *pronuba* a bridesmaid, from *nubo* I am married.

*Idem*, in the masculine, lengthens the first syllable and shortens it in the neuter, as—*By what a man sins, by the same thing he is punished.*

Page 173.

Derivatives have generally the same quantity with their Primitives, as *amator*, *amicus*, *amabilis*, with first short, from *amo*.

Excepted are, however, a few, which, derived from short-syllabled words, have their first syllable long, as *fomes* fuel, *fomentum* fomentation, from *foveo* I cherish; *humanus*, from *homo*; *imbecillus* imbecile, from *baculus* a staff; *jucundus*, from *juvo*; *jumentum* a beast of burden, from *juvo*; *junior*, from *juvenis*; *laterna* a lantern, from *lateo*; *lex legis*, from *lego*; *macer* meagre, but *macero* I pine; *mobilis*, from *moveo*; *nomus*, from *no-vem*; *persona* an actor's mask or person, from *persono* I sound (speak) through; *regula*, from *rego*; *rex*, *regis*, *regina*, from *rego*; *secius* otherwise, from *secus*; *sedes*, from *sedeo*; *suspicio* suspicion, from *suspicio* I suspect; *tegula* a tile, from *tego* I cover; *tragula* a beam, from *traho* I draw; *vox vocis*, from *voco*.

But many of these are to be explained by contraction, as—*Fomentum*, from *fovimentum*; *junior*, from *juvenior*; *mobilis*, from *movibilis*; where two short (syllables) coalesce into one long; as from *coago* I drive together, *cogo*.

*Se*, *de*, and *di*, before consonants in composition, are lengthened, except *dirimo* I sever, *disertus*.

There are some which, derived from long vowels, shorten the first vowel, as *arena* sand, *arista* ear of corn, from *areo* I am dry; *aruspex* soothsayer, from *ara* altar; *dicax* talkative, *maledicus*, *veridicus*, from *dico*; *ditio*, from *ditis*; *disertus*, from *dissero*; *dux ducis*, *educo-as*, from *duco*; *fides*, from *fido*; *frigor* a crash, *fragilis*, from *frango*; *lucerna* a candle, from *luceo*; *molestus* troublesome, from *moles* a mass; *nato* I swim, *natus*, from *nato*; *noto notas*, from *notu*; *posui*, from *pono*; *quater*, from *quatuor*; *sopor*, from *sopio* I lull to sleep; *vadum* a shallow, from *vado* I go.

And some others of both kinds, which are left to the studious to be observed by them in reading.

But, in some of these, this is particularly to be observed, that, when the conjugation or signification of the verb is altered, its quantity, too, is altered, as *sedo-as* I quell, active, from *sedeo-es* I

sit, neuter; so, *placo* I appease, from *placo* I please; from *lego-is*, is made *lego-as*; from *cado*, neuter, is made *cædo*, active.

Page 174.

Every dissyllable preterperfect has the first syllable long, as *legi, emi, movi, odi*.

Except *bibi, dedi, fidi* (from *finde*), *steti, stiti, tuli, acidi* (from *scindo*).

These preterperfects shorten the first long of their present—*genui, potui, posui*, from *gigno, possum, pono*.

Those which redouble the first syllable of the preterperfect have the first syllable short, as *cecidi*, from *cado*; *cecidi*, from *cædo*; *didici*, I have learnt; *sefelli, momordi, pependi, pupugi, tetendi, tetigi, totondi, tutudi*.

A dissyllable supine has the first syllable long, as *visum, latum, lotum, motum*.

Except *datum*, from *do*; *itum*, from *eo*; *litum*, from *lino*; *quitum*, from *queo*; *ratum*, from *reor*; *rutum*, from *ruo*; *satum*, from *sero*; *situm*, from *sino*; *statum*, from *sisto*; and *citum*, from *cieo, cies*: for, *statum*, from *sto*, and *citum*, from *cio cis*, of the fourth conjugation, have the first syllable long.

*Ne*, privative particle, is short in composition, as *nefas, nequep*; but when it is contracted, as from *ne homo, nemo*, or when it becomes a conjunction, it is lengthened, as *nequam* good for nothing, *nequidquam* to no purpose, *nequaquam* by no means.

*Pro* in composition is long, except *profundus* deep, *profugio* I escape, *profiteor* I profess, *proficiscor, procella, profanus, protervus* wanton, *perfecto, pronepos* great-grandson, and the like.

*Re* in composition is short, unless it is made long by position; but in *reliquiæ* relics, *religio*, and the præterites *reperit* he found, *repulit* he drove back, *retulit* he thrust back, *retulit* he brought back, it is long.

Words compounded of *bis, dis, tris*, are short, as *biceps* two-headed, *di-baphum* twice-dyed, *trivium* three-ways; except *bigæ* a car with two, and *trigæ* with three horses.

Page 175.

These are to be noted, *pridie, meridies, biduum* two days, *quotidie*: in all which the first *i* is long.

Nouns ending in *x*, and making the Genitive in *gis*, make the penultima short, as *remex* a rower, *remigis*.

Except *lex, rex*, making *legis, regis*, and *frugis* of fruit, from the obsolete *frux*.

The penultimate, too, of genitives in *icis*, from nominative *ex*, is short, as *vertex, verticis*.

The rest in *x* lengthen the penultima of the genitive, as *pax, pacis*; *cerveæ, radicis* root, *radicis*; *velox, velocis*; *lux, lucis*; *bombyx, bombycis*.

Except *nex* violent death, *necis*, and the words without nominatives, *nix, nivis*; *cruz, crucis*, cross; *pix, picis*, pitch; *nux, nucis*, nut; *trux, trucidis*, savage; and very many others derived from Greek, as *anthrax, anthracis*, charcoal; *climax, climacis*, ladder; *colax, colacis*, flatterer.

Adverbs in *tim* have the penultima long, as, *viritim*, man by man; *cateratim*, by troops. Except *affatim* abundantly, *statim* directly, *perpetim* speedily.

#### THE QUANTITY OF LAST SYLLABLES.

A short vowel before *sc, sp, sq, st, x, z*, is sometimes lengthened by the power of the *ictus*, as—*Hidden spoils and more triumphs from peace*; and very rarely remains short, as—*Lay it (hope) aside; every one is his own hope; but how narrow this is, ye see.*

A long vowel at the end, before a vowel at the beginning, of a word, is sometimes shortened, as—*And, O fair Iola, a long farewell, he said, farewell! You, O friend, I was unable to see. Thus, Is there the same beauty to it when cooked? But when that is away, which we long for, it seems to eclipse (everything).*

#### Page 176.

Words ending in *a* are long, as *ama, &c.\**

Except *puta* think, *ita* thus, *quia* because, *aja* on! Also all cases in *a* of whatever case, number, or declension they may be; except vocatives from Greek words in *as*, as—*O Aeneas, O Pallas*; and the ablative of the first declension, as—*By a muse.*

The Latin vocatives, *Atrida, O Atrides*; *Aloida, O Alcides*.

Except the names of letters of the alphabet, as *alpha, beta* (the names of the first and second of the Greek letters).

Words ending in *b, d, t*, are short, as *ab, ad, caput*.

\* Where &c. occurs, the remaining Examples are to be supplied by the Scholar.

In *c* are long, as *ac*, *sic*, and *hic* here, the adverb.

But three in *c* are short, as *fac* make it so (suppose), *nec*, and *donec*.

Sometimes *hic* and *hoc* are short, but only in the thesis: the ablative *hoc* is always long.

In *s* are short, as *mare* sea, *pene* almost, *lege*, *scribe*.

To be excepted are all words of the fifth declension in *e*, as *fide* by faith, *die*, with the particles from it, as *hodie*, *quotidie*, *pridie*, *postridie*; also *quare*, *quod* for what reason, *care*, *refert*, the impersonal, and if there are any like these.

Also second persons singular of verbs of the second conjugation, as *doce*, *more*.

Also monosyllables in *e* are long, as *me*, *te*, *se*; except the enclitic conjunctions, *que*, *ne*, *ve*, and *ce*, *te*, *pse*, *pte*, the affixes to pronouns, as *hicce*, *suapte*.

Also adverbs in *e*, derived from adjectives of the second declension, have the *e* long, as *pulchre*, *docte*, *valde*, for *valide* strongly.

To which are added *ferme*, *fere* almost; but *bene* and *male* are short.

*E* in *temere* at random, is always cut off in the best authors.

Page 177.

Lastly, those which are written by Greeks in *eta* are long by nature, of whatever case, gender, or number, as *Lethe* the river of oblivion, *Anchise*, *cete*, *Tempe*.

In *i* are long, as *domini*, &c.

Except *mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *ubi*, *ibi*, which are common; but in *necubi* nowhere, *sicubi* if any where, *ubinam* where? *ubivis* where you choose, *utinam* O that! *utique* yes truly, *i* is always short.

*Nisi* and *quasi* are also short.

Also 'datives' and vocatives of Greek words, whose genitive singular ends in *os* short, as—Dativ. *Minoidi* to the daughter of Minos, *Palladi* to Pallas, *Phyllidi* to Phyllis; Vocat. *Alexi* O Alexis, &c.

In *l* are short, as *animal*, &c.

Except *nil* contracted from *nihil*, *sal*, and *sol*.

*M* in *circum*, in composition, is sometimes short, as—*circumago*.

In *n* are long, as *Pleas*, Song of Victory; *Hymen*, Deity of Marriage, &c.

Except *fortan*, *forsitan*, *an*, *tamen*, *attamen*, *veruntamen* however, and *is*.

To these are added the words which suffer apocope, as *viden*; for *videsne?* *audin*, for *audisne?* Also, *exin* henceforth, *subin* now and then, *dein*, *proin*.

In *an*, too, from nominatives in *a*, as in the Nominative *Iphigenia*, *Egina*; Accusative, *Iphigenian*, *Eginan*. For in *an*, from nominatives in *as*, they are long, as Nom. *Aneas*, *Marsyas*; Accus. *Anean*, *Marsyan*.

Nouns in *en*, too, whose genitive has *inis* short, as *carmen*, *crimen*, *pecten*, *tibicen* a flute-player, Gen. *inis*.

Some, too, in *in* with *i*, as *Alexin*; and in *yn* with *y*, as *Icyn*.

Greek words, too, in *on* with *o* short, of whatever case, as Nom. *Ilion*, &c.; Accus. *Caucason*, &c.

Page 178.

In *o* are long, as *dico*, *virgo*, *templo* in a temple, *legendo*.

Except certain words, as *scio*, *nescio*, *volo*, *puto*, which here and there, among good authors, are found short; and many others which, in poetry of a lighter style or later age, are short.

But *cito*, *ego*, *modo*, *quomodo*, and *cedo* for *dic* or *da*, are always short.

*Duo* and *homo*, except in the *arsis* of the verse, are scarcely found long.

In *r*, are short, as *Cæsar*, *jubar* ray of light, &c.

But these are long, *far*, *Lar* Household God, *Nar* a river in Italy, *ver*, *fur*, *cur*, and *par* equal, with its compounds, *compar* compeer, *impar*, *dispar*.

Greek words, too, in *er*, which end to them (the Greeks) in *ηρ*, as *aer*, *crater*, *character*, *æther*, *soter* saviour: except *pater* and *mater*, which, among the Latins, have the last syllable short.

In *as* are long, as *amas*, *musas*, &c.

Except Greek words, whose Genitive ends in *dos* (not *-ntos*), as *Arcas*, &c.

And accusative plurals of nouns increasing in genitive, as *heros*, &c.

In *es* are long, as *Anchises*, &c.

Excepted are nouns of the third declension, which shorten the penultima of the genitive increasing, as *miles*, *militis*, &c.

But *aries* ram, *abies* fir, *paries* wall of a house, *Ceres*, Goddess of Corn, and *pes*, with its compounds *bipes* two-footed, *tripes*, &c., are long.

*Es*, too, from *sum*, with its compounds, is short, as *potes*, &c., to which *penes* (preposition) may be added.

Also neuter and nominative plurals of Greek words, as *cacothēs*, *heroes*, *lampades*, *Cyclopes* one-eyed giants, *Naiades* Nymphs of streams.

Page 179.

In *is*, are short, as *Paris*, &c.

Except oblique cases plural in *is*, which are long, as *music*, &c.; and *quis* for *quibus* from *qui*; to these may be added some ablatives, taken adverbially, as *foris* out of doors, *gratis* for thanks (gratis).

Also those which lengthen the penultima of the genitive increasing, as *Sammis*, &c.

To these add those which end in *is*, contracted from *eis*, whether Greek or Latin, of whatever number or case, as *Simois* the river of Troy, *Pyrois* made of fire, &c.

And all monosyllables, as *vis* force, *lis* strife, except the nominatives *is* and *quis*, and *bis* twice.

To these are added the second persons singular of verbs in *is*, whose second persons plural end in *itis*, the penultima long, as *audis*, *velis*, plural *auditis*, *velitis*.

*Is*, of the second person singular of the second future indicative and preterperfect subjunctive, is common, as—*amaveris*.

Also the penultima of the second person plural (of these tenses) is common, as *amaveritis*.

In *os* are long, as *arbos*, *honos*, *nepos*, &c.

Except *compos* competent, *impos* powerless, and *os ossis*.

And Greek words in *omicron*, as *Delos*, &c.

In *us* are short, as *famulus* an attendant, *regius* royal, &c.

Excepted are those which lengthen the penultima of the genitive increasing, as *salus* safety, *tellus* earth, *incus* anvil, *ius* law; making Genitive *salutis*, &c.



Long too are all words of the fourth declension in *us*, except the nominative and vocative singular, as Gen. sing. *manus*; Nom. Accus. Voc. plur. *manus*.

Page 180.

Add the monosyllables, as *crus, thus, mus, sus*.

And Greek words ending in diphthong *oec*, of whatever case, as —Nom. *Panthus, Melampus*; Gen. *Sapphus* of Sappho, *Clius* of Clio.

And the name *Jesus* to be adored by all godly men.

Words in *ys* are long, except in the thesis of the verse, as *Tethys* Goddess of sea, *Erinnys* Fury.

All in *u* are long, as *manu, &c.*; but *indu* and *nonu*, in Lucretius, for *in* and *non*, are short.

Lastly, in *y* are short, as *Tiphy* or *Tiphys* pilot of Argo, *moly* a panacea.

---

## FEET.

You may see the *Pyrrhich* hasten with two short syllables; the *Spondee*, on the contrary, stand still with two long. A long syllable attached to a short one is called an *Iambus*; but if the long precede a short, lo! a *Trochee*!

A *Dactyl* is made of a long and two short; an *Anapest*, of one long after two short. The *Tribrach* shortens three, the *Molossi* have lengthened (lengthen) as many. A long, closed in by two short, make an *Amphibrachys*; but a short interposed between two long, make an *Amphimacrus*. A *Baccheius* consists of a short and two long, and an *Anti-Baccheius* is the foot the reverse of it; in which one short is subjoined to two long.

A *Trochee* prefixed to an *Iambus*, gives thee, *O Choriambus*; but four short have generated (make) a *Procoleusmatic*. Let an *Ionic*, a *Majore* and a *Minore* follow. In the latter case, a *Pyrrhich* leads a *Spondee*, in the former it follows it.

Is a short mixed with three long? it is called an *Epitrite*. A long added as a companion to three short forms a *Pæon*. Who are you, *O Antispast*? let an *iambus* precede a *trochee*: if to these a long syllable is added, a *Dochmius* comes forth.

Page 181. CÆSURAS IN THE HEXAMETER.

Cæsura is the place in the verse where a word ends and the voice pauses a little.

In a heroic or hexameter the principal Cæsuras are five, of which unless the verse have one or more, it will be faulty.

*Penthemimeral* (Cæsura), that is, after the fifth half foot, the most common of all, as—*Tityre tu patulæ*, &c.\*

The *Hepthemimeral*, that is, after the seventh half foot, as—*Formosam resonare doces*, &c.

After the second dactyl, as—*In tenui labor* &c. *Aggeribus socer* &c. *Descendens, gener*, &c.

After the third trochee, as—*Orphei Calliopea*, &c. *Falleret indepremsus* &c.

After the third dactyl, as—*Cui non dictus Hylas puer*, &c.

To which add the Cæsura after the fourth dactyl, which, as used often by the Bucolic (Pastoral) Poets, is called the Bucolic Cæsura, as—*Ambo florentes ætatis* &c.

The Cæsura and Punctuation is beautifully varied according to the sense, as—*Nonne vides?* &c.

Page 182.

When there is a stop after the fifth dactyl, two monosyllables usually follow, or the same word is repeated which has lately gone before, as—*At Boreæ de parte trucidis cum fulminat*, &c. *Ipsæ considerent medicatis sedibus* &c.

Rarely, except in proper names, is the verse ended by a word longer than a trisyllable, as—*Dic mihi, Damata, cujum pecus ? an* &c.

\* These and the following single lines are given to the point where the rule applies: they are not given at full length, that, from the commencement, the Scholar may supply the remainder.

among the rules of the pentameter, the following are the most important.

**RULES OF THE PENTAMETER.**

The first half of the line is to be ended with a word.

Otherwise the verse is faulty, as—*Hæc quoque nostræ &c.*

An elision after the first half of the line is harsh, as—*Troja virum et &c.*

Neither half is well ended with a one-syllable word, except either an elision or another monosyllable precedes, as—*Non tamen est, &c. Præmia si studio consequor ista, &c. Invisis oculis litora lecta &c.*

A Pentameter is best ended by a two-syllable word, rarely by a four-syllable, more rarely by a three-syllable; therefore, do not imitate these which follow:—*Maxima de nihilo nascitur, &c. Et caput impositis pressit amor, &c.*

The couplet is accustomed to finish a sentence, or at least to end with a colon.

Page 183.

**ALCAIC VERSES.**

Ex.—*Virtue, ignorant of base defeat, shines with unsullied honour, nor assumes or lays down her fasces at the will of the popular gale.*

The two first verses of the (Alcaic) stanza begin better with a long than with a short syllable.

The third verse rarely begins with a short syllable.

The Cæsura after the fifth half foot is rarely neglected, except when an elision follows, as—*Mentem, &c.*; or, in compounded words, as—*Hostile aratrum, &c. Antehac nefas, &c.*

The third verse of the stanza cannot begin with a four-syllable word, or with two dissyllables, or with a monosyllable and trisyllable: these which follow are faulty:—*Tranquillitas, &c. Virtus piam, &c. Et nobiles, &c.*: except the last syllable of the quadrisyllable is cut off, as—*Rubiginem, &c.*

The third verse of the stanza is rarely ended by two dissyllables, very rarely by a quadrisyllable, never by a trisyllable and enclitic; these, therefore, which follow are less to be approved—*Pronos relabi, &c. Nodo coerces, &c. Pavana dicit, &c.*

Those which follow are all of good character—1. *Deprome*, &c. 2. *Declive*, &c. 3. *Spargent*, &c. 4. *Morem*, &c. 5. *Non erubescendis*, &c. 6. *Nunc in*, &c. 7. *Non Liber*, &c.

Page 184.

The fourth verse of the stanza reluctantly admits the final numbers of the pentameter, so that you can scarcely imitate those which follow:—*O Thaliarche merum*, &c. *Teque tuasque decet*, &c.

Nor the concluding numbers of the hexameter, as—*Me cichorea levesque*, &c. *Arvaque jungere quaerit*, &c.

These which follow are of good character:—1. *Composita*, &c. 2. *Concutitur*, &c. 3. *Sardaniae*, &c. 4. *Livia*, &c. 5. *Flumina*, &c. 6. *Aut digito*, &c.

### SAPPHIC VERSES.

*Whoever loves the golden mean, secure, is without the dirt of the squalid house; sober, he is without the envied palace.*

The penthemimeral cæsura gives a grace to the Sapphic, as—*Jam satis terris*, &c.

This verse admits only one other cæsura, viz. after the third trochee, as—*Mercuri facunde*, &c. *Concines majore*, &c.; for *Pertinax et*, &c., and such lines are bad.

The fourth verse of the stanza is termed Adonic, as—*Terruit urbem*.

Page 185.

### OTHER VERSES.

A Spondee, and two Choriambics, with an Iambic joined, give you the verse distinguished by the name of Asclepiades, as—*Mæcenae*, &c.

The same verse, if you take out one of the Choriambics, will be that (the verse) of Glycon, as—*Sic te*, &c.

Do you wish to sport with a Pherecratic verse? Let a dactyl be to you between two spondees, as—*Grato*, &c.

Phalæcus put a spondee in the first place, a dactyl follows, three Trochees (and affix) as—*Soluitur acris hyems, &c.*

If you ask the name (of this line) it is called a Hendecasyllable.

A Scazon halts with its last foot; if this were not so, it would render to you an Iambic verse with its trimeter numbers: now the sixth foot has a spondee, the fifth an Iambus, as—*Ovidi soluit, &c.*

### METRES.

The Metres of verses which consist of feet above two syllables, except Anapaests, are made of a foot a-piece; the rest (are made) of two feet a-piece; thus, the Dactylic Hexameter is made of six feet, the Trimeter Iambic is made of six feet also.

A verse, consisting of six metres, is called Hexameter; of five, Pentameter; of four, Tetrameter; of two, Dimeter; of one, Monometer.

A verse which wants one syllable, is called Catalectic; one which wants none, Acatalectic; one which wants a whole foot, Brachycatalectic; one which has a syllable too much, Hypercatalectic.

Two successive feet are called a Dipodia, and sometimes a Syzygy.

Page 186.

### MIXED VERSES.

Verses which are formed of two verses of different kinds are called mixed, as—*Soluitur acris hyems, &c.*, which is termed an Archilochian, and consists of a Dactylic Tetrameter, and a Trochaic Dimeter Brachycatalectic.

Mixed verses, when the last syllable of their first part is common, and, although it ends in a vowel, is not cut off by a vowel following, are called Asynartate, as—*Findunt Scamandri flumina, &c.* where the Pyrrhic *mina* occupies the place of an Iambus, and—*Fervidiore mero, &c.* where *o* in *mero* is not cut off (by the vowel *a* following it).

CONCERNING THE VERSES OF PLAUTUS AND  
TERENCE AND LATIN ACCENTS.

Concerning the verses of Plautus and Terence, this is particularly to be noted:—Those who tread prosaic stories with the comic buskin, in order that you may think, what they say, to be taken from common life, vitiate the iambus with the spondaic rhythm; (thus) instead of (saying) *commodavi* &c., they say *commendavi* &c.

And, as they lengthen short syllables, so they shorten syllables long by position, but not by nature; and especially in the first foot of the verse, as in an Iambic Trimeter—*Propter hospiti* &c.

LATIN ACCENTS.—The accent is never in the last place, except in monosyllables.

In words above two syllables, the accent is on the penultima, if the penultima is long by nature, as *amare, curarum*. If the penultima is short, the antepenultima is accented, as *Tullia, Gallia*.

Page 187.

But in four-syllable words, when one long follows three short, the first is accented, as *mulieres*.

In the second dipodia of a Trimeter, the comic writers took great care that the *ictus* should not fall on the last syllables, (which are without accent), except for a certain peculiar grace of emphasis, as—*Scelesta ovem*, &c.

Besides Iambics and Trochaics, Terence uses Cretics, Bacchiacs, and Choriambics; but each only once, and never in a dialogue.

---

CONCLUDING FEET IN PROSE.

In prose, the feet which close the sentence most harmoniously are a Cretic and Double Trochee, as &c. A trochee and anti-baccheus, as &c. A Dochmiac, as &c. A Tribach and Trochee, as &c. Two Cretics, as &c.

---

DIFFERENCE OF WORDS.

The acanthis sings in the field, but the acanthus flowers in the garden. The maple is in the woods; the spirited horse wins at Olympia. The general who bears arms on his shoulder is borne on the shoulders of his horse. The gad-fly stings the horses; a refuge is opened to the wretched. The sculp-

tor embosses; he who keeps things hidden, conceals. You will sing with your voice; on! lead your dogs, unless your temples are white with age. The woven toils are spread; the brazen helmet shines. Cover your head with a helmet; the bears are taken in toils.—(Page 188.)—Cedo makes cessi; cado, cecidi; cædo, cecidi. The club strikes, the nail fixes, and the key opens. You till fields, you spin threads with distaffs, you filter liquids. You strike in close fight with the sword, you fall by a spear thrown from far. That you a companion may please your companion, put on courteous manners. Consult your teachers; so you consult yourself (your own good). His own desire often hurts one desirous of gain. Verses are sung, while temples are dedicated to God. He despairs to loose, who has cut the knot with a sword. You dissemble what you have, and seemle what you have not. He educates his whelps, that he may shortly lead them out into the fields. If you have no money, you eat dry fare; you are a rare guest. You will ill trust him, O Ponticus, whose credit is bad. The sea often deceives him who relies too much on the calm surface. Fruits are born on trees, fruges in fields. Sun puts to flight clouds; irreparable time flies. In woods seek hares; in words, graces. He is not valued by me at a penny, who does not value you at a penny. Touch the lyre with your fingers, while I trace the furrow with a plough. You would prefer to pluck good apples from a good apple-tree, to bruising in vain bad apples with your jaw. Merchandize is sold and pay comes, gained by labour. O boy, do you wish to shine? haste, strive by deeds! She who is red, being daubed with paint, has forgotten shame. I wait for Fabius, who is covered with a long robe. Os, oris commands, but os, ossis is gnawed by the mouth. It is for the wife to bear children and obey; (it is) for the husband to provide. If you wish to be hanged, you will not pay your debts. The javelin is hurled; the ball is round; pila is a column. What that good man says, is our interest to know. Harrows rub corn; thistles hurt the fallow. The vas (bail) pays the capital, the præis only (pays) the interest for his friend. Vas, vadis is surety. Vas, vasis, foams with wine. If you wish to cross the waves of the sea, use sails.

FINIS.

LONDON:

W. M'DOWALL, PRINTER, PEMBERTON-ROW, GOUGH-SQUARE.

•







THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

PHYSICS DEPARTMENT

PHYS 441

LECTURE 1

1.1

1.2

1.3

1.4

1.5

1.6

1.7

1.8

1.9

1.10

1.11

1.12

1.13

1.14

1.15



